სოხუმის უნივერსიტეტი
Sokhumi University

ემა კილანავა, ფიქრია თორია, მაია აღაია
Emma Kilanava, Pikria Toria, Maia Aghaia

ზმნის დროები მოქმედებით და ვნებით გვარში

The English Verb: Tense and Voice

გამომცემლობა „უნივერსალი"
თბილისი 2008

წინამდებარე სახელმძღვანელო მოიცავს ინგლისური ენის გრამატიკის ყველაზე აქტუალურ პრობლემებს, კერძოდ, ზმნის ასპექტისა და დროის ფორმების გამოყენებას მოქმედებითსა და ენებით გვარში, აგრეთვე, ირიბ თქმასთან დაკავშირებულ საკითხებს. სახელმძღვანელო შედგება რამდენიმე ნაწილისგან, რომელთაგან თითოეული მოიცავს თეორიული ხასიათის მასალას კონკრეტულ გრამატიკულ კატეგორიასთან დაკავშირებით და, ამასთან ერთად, სხვადასხვა სახის სავარჯიშოებს, რომლებიც დაეხმარებიან სტუდენტებს ამა თუ იმ ლინგვისტური პრობლემის სწორად გააზრებასა და აქტიურ გამოყენებაში.

წინამდებარე სახელმძღვანელო განკუთვნილია უმაღლესი სასწავლო დაწესებულებების (ინსტიტუტების, უნივერსიტეტების) უცხო ენათა ფაკულტეტების სტუდენტებისთვის. ასევე სახელმძღვანელოთი წარმატებით შეუძლიათ ისარგებლონ ინგლისური ენის სპეციალიზირებული სკოლების უფროსკლასელებმა და საერთოდ ყველამ, ვისაც სურვილი აქვს საფუძვლიანად დაეუფლოს ინგლისური ენის გრამატიკას.

Editors:

Doctor of Philological Sciences, Professor

Rusudan Enukidze

Doctor of Philological Sciences, Professor

Maia Miresashvili

Reviewer:

Professor

Tamar Bakuradze

რედაქტორები:

ფილოლოგიის მეცნიერებათა დოქტორი, პროფესორი

რუსუდან ენუქიძე

ფილოლოგიის მეცნიერებათა დოქტორი, პროფესორი

მაია მირესაშვილი

რეცენზენტი:

პროფესორი

თამარ ბაკურაძე

© Emma Kilanava, Pikria Toria, Maia Agaia, 2008

გამომცემლობა „უნივერსალი", 2008

თბილისი, 0179, ი. ჭავჭავაძის გამზ. 19, ☎: 22 36 09, 8(99) 17 22 30
E-mail: universal@internet.ge

ISBN 978-9941-12-304-7

წ ი ნ ა ს ი ტ ყ ვ ა ო ბ ა

წინამდებარე სახელმძღვანელოში განხილულია ინგლისური ენის გრამატიკის აქტუალური პრობლემები. სტრუქტურული თვალსაზრისით სახელმძღვანელო დაყოფილია ნაწილებად: თითოეული მათგანი ეძღვნება განსაზღვრულ გრამატიკულ მოელენას. ყოველი ნაწილის სავარჯიშოებს წინ უძღვის თეორიული ხასიათის განმარტება, რომელიც მოცემულია მარტივი და გასაგები ენით, რაც ხელს უწყობს სტუდენტის მიერ გრამატიკული საკითხის გააზრებასა და ათვისებას. სავარჯიშოები განლაგებულია ერთგვაროვანი პრინციპით: თავდაპირველად მოცემულია ანალიტიკური ხასიათის სავარჯიშოები, რომლებიც უზრუნველყოფენ გრამატიკული მოელენის სწორად გაგებას; მას მოჰყვება სავარჯიშოები, რომლებიც განამტკიცებენ შესწავლილ წესებს; ყოველი ნაწილი ბოლოვდება სათარგმნი სავარჯიშოებით ქართულიდან ინგლისურ ენაზე და აგრეთვე შემოქმედებითი ხასიათის სავარჯიშოებით, რომლებიც განუვითარებენ სტუდენტებს ზეპირმეტყველების ჩვევებს.

სახელმძღვანელოში განსაკუთრებით ფასეულია მთარგმნელობითი ხასიათის სავარჯიშოები (ინგლისურიდან ქართულად და, პირიქით, ქართულიდან ინგლისურად), რომლებიც, სახელმძღვანელოს აეტორების პედაგოგიური გამოცდილებიდან გამომდინარე, ეხმარება გრამატიკული (და ლექსიკური) მასალის ეფექტურ ათვისებაში ქართულ ენაზე მოაზროვნე სტუდენტებს, რომლებიც მომავალში აპირებენ ინგლისური ენის გამოყენებას თავიანთ პროფესიულ საქმიანობაში (პედაგოგიურ, მთარგმნელობით და ა.შ.).

გარდა ამისა, ასეთი ხასიათის სავარჯიშოები შეიძლება გამოყენებულ იქნას კონტროლის მიზნითაც, განსაკუთრებით იმ შემთხვევაში, როდესაც ქართულ ენაში არსებობს სრულად სხვა გრამატიკული ფორმები აღნიშნული სახის ლინგვისტური მოელენების გამოსახატავად.

სავარჯიშოებში მოტანილი წინადადებები და ნაწყვეტები აღებულია თანამედროვე ინგლისური და ამერიკული მხატერული ლიტერატურიდან. ზემოაღნიშნულ ფაქტს აქვს შემეცნებითი მნიშვნელობა ქვეყანათმცოდნეობის თვალსაზრისითაც, რადგან იგი მიმართულია ამა თუ იმ გრამატიკული წესის არა მარტო შესწავლასა და განმტკიცებაზე, არამედ ინგლისური ენის იდიომატიკის ათვისებაზე (სიტყვის ფართო გაგებით), ურთიერთობისა და ქცევის წესების გაცნობიერებაზე ინგლისურენოვანი გარემოს განსაზღვრულ სასაუბრო სიტუაციაში.

The Use of Tense-Aspect Forms

The category of tense in English expresses the relationship between the time of the action and the time of speaking. Accordingly there are three tenses in English – the present tense, the future tense and the past tense which refer actions to present, future and past time.

Besides these three tenses there is one more tense in English, the so-called Future in the Past. The distinctiveness of this tense lies in the fact that the future is regarded not from the stand-point of the time of speaking (the present) but from the point of view of some moment in the past. Each tense is represented by four verb forms involving such categories as aspect and perfect.

Consequently there are sixteen tense forms in English:

four present tense forms (the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous, the Present Perfect, the Present Perfect Continuous);

four past tense forms (the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous, the Past Perfect, the Past Perfect Continuous);

four future tense forms (the Future Indefinite, the Future Continuous, the Future Perfect, the Future Perfect Continuous);

four future in the past tense forms (the Future Indefinite in the Past, the Future Continuous in the Past, the Future Perfect in the Past, the Future Perfect Continuous in the Past).

The category of aspect shows the manner in which the action is presented, i.e. whether the action is perfective, imperfective, momentary, iterative, durative, etc.

In English the category of aspect is constituted by the opposition of the continuous aspect and the common aspect. The forms of the continuous aspect describe an action as a concrete process going on continuously at a definite moment of time, or characteristic of a definite period of time (*is writing, was writing, will be writing, has been writing*). The forms of the common aspect denote the action in a most general way and are devoid of any specific aspectual meaning (*writes, wrote, will write, has written*).

The category of perfect is constituted by the opposition of the perfect to the non-perfect.

The perfect forms denote action preceding certain moments of time in the present, past or future:

Nick has done his homework and is playing football now.

The non-perfect forms denote actions belonging to certain moments of time in the present, past or future.

She came home late yesterday.

The Present Indefinite Tense

The Present Indefinite is formed with the help of the infinitive without the particle ***"to"***.

In the third person singular the ending ***-s*** (*ends, sits, brings*) or ***-es*** (if the verb ends in ***-s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -tch, -x, -z, -o***) is added (*watches, dresses, meshes, fixes, waltzes, goes, reaches*).

Verbs ending in ***-y*** preceded by a consonant change the ***"y"*** into ***"i"*** and the ending ***-es*** is added for the third person singular (*studies, marries, copies*).

However, when the ***"y"*** is preceded by a vowel in the third person singular only the ending ***-s*** is added (*stays, toys, pays*).

The verbs ***"to go"*** and ***"to do"*** and their compounds (*to undergo, to overdo, etc.*) take the ending ***-es***: *go – goes, do – does*. In the latter case the root vowel is changed [du:] → [dʌz].

The third person singular of the verb ***"to have"*** is ***"has"***.

The interrogative and the negative forms are built up by means of the auxiliary verb ***"do"*** in the Present Indefinite and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle ***"to"***.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I learn	Do I learn?	I do not (don't) learn
You learn	Do you learn?	You do not (don't) learn
He (she, it) learns	Does he (she, it) learn?	He (she, it) does not (doesn't) learn
We learn	Do we learn?	We do not (don't) learn
You learn	Do you learn?	You do not (don't) learn
They learn	Do they learn?	They do not (don't) learn

There are some verbs that form their Present Indefinite in a different way.

They are: ***"to be"*** and ***"to have"***.

"To be"

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I am / I'm	Am I?	I am not / I'm not
You are / You're	Are you?	You are not / You're not / You aren't
He is / He's	Is he?	He is not / He's not / He isn't
She is / She's	Is she?	She is not / She's not / She isn't
It is / It's	Is it?	It is not / It's not / It isn't
We are /We're	Are we?	We are not / We're not / We aren't
You are / You're	Are you?	You are not / You're not / You aren't
They are / They're	Are they?	They are not / They're not / They aren't

"To have"

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I have / I've	Have I?	I have not / I haven't / I've not
You have / You've	Have you?	You have not / You haven't / You've not
He has / He's	Has he?	He has not / He hasn't / He's not
She has / She's	Has she?	She has not / She hasn't / She's not
It has / It's	Has it?	It has not / It hasn't / It's not
We have / We've	Have we?	We have not / We haven't / We've not
You have / You've	Have you?	You have not / You haven't / You've not
They have / They've	Have they?	They have not / They haven't / They've not

When the verb ***"to have"*** has a modal meaning or when it is used as part of a phraseological (group-verb) predicate it makes its interrogative and negative forms with the auxiliary verb ***"to do"***:

When do you usually have dinner?

On Sunday he does not have to go to the office because it is his day off.

The Use of the Present Indefinite Tense

The Present Indefinite is used to denote:

1. Habitual or repeated actions (with adverbs or adverbial phrases: ***always, sometimes, often, usually, seldom, generally, occasionally, frequently, every week, every year, every day, twice a day, three times a week, hardly ever, rarely, from time to time, as a rule, regularly, ever, never***):

She doesn't eat in the evening.

We sometimes visit them.

It seldom snows in our country.

2. Actions and states characterizing a person or thing:

Nick sings and plays the guitar well.

Pete learns English.

They live in Georgia.

3. Universal truths, something which is eternally true; a statement of fact:

The Enguri flows into the Black Sea.

Water boils at 100 degrees centigrade.

Cats catch mice.

The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.

We grow wiser as we grow older.

4. A succession of actions going on at the moment of speaking:

a) *She climbs the tenement stairs very slowly, takes off the duffle coat and puts it in her tartan case, then combs her hair forward and tosses it back again.*

b) *He enters; walking firmly and soberly he crosses the room, stops, looks round, then goes to the washstand and begins to wash his hands.*

5. A future action which is part of a prearranged program:

When does the meeting start?

Our train leaves at 5 o'clock tomorrow.

At 10 o'clock we arrive at our village.

6. A future action in adverbial clauses of time and condition after the conjunctions ***when, till, until, before, after, as soon as, as long as, if, unless, on condition that, provided, in case, even if***:

It will break my heart when they go.

I'll introduce him just as soon as we get to the hall.

I shall stay here till I die.

I hope you'll spend an evening with us before you go back.

His wife will not reconcile with him unless he stops drinking.

If it rains we shall put off our picnic.

However, in object clauses introduced by the conjunctions ***"when"*** and ***"if"*** the Future Indefinite is used to denote future actions:

I don't know when we shall get the telegram from him.

I'm not sure if he will succeed.

I wonder if he will recognize me.

7. Actions going on at the present moment with verbs of possession, perception, mental perception, being, etc. not used in the Present Continuous: ***be, have, know, remember, understand, think, believe, mean, seem, realize, need, want, wish, like, love, hate, belong, see, hear, feel, smell, etc.***:

I wish you all the best.

What do you think of my new book?

I know what happened yesterday.

This house belongs to Mr Smith.

Do you see anybody in the street?

8. Past actions:

a) in newspaper headlines, in the outlines of novels, plays, films, etc.:

Angry Voters Give Blair a Shock.

Blunkett Presses EU over Asylum.

Tory Resigns to Nurse his Wife.

Agatha Christie transports us to the banks of the Nile, and into the heart of a landowner-priest's household She gives us a pleasing picture of Ancient Egyptian family life as seen by Renisenb, a young widow. The unfamiliarity of the scene only makes the excellence of Mrs Christie's psychology stand out more strongly.

b) in narratives or stories to express past actions more vividly (the so-called historic present):

One day Tim Culver brings Martha Grace a new treat. He knows of her appetite.

At ten o'clock, feeling uneasy, I put aside my book and take what's left of the coal to the front of the grate. Ash falls down and glows between the bars. I lift and lower the door-latch quietly. Out in the hall I feel the cold on my face and neck

Other uses of the Present Indefinite Tense

1. It is used, chiefly with the verb ***"say"***, when we are asking about or quoting from books, notices or very recently received letters (Thomson, Martinet, 1986, 160).

What does that notice say? – It says, "No Parking".

What does the book say? – It says, "Cook very slowly".

Shakespeare advises us not to borrow or lend.

2. It is used, with the verbs ***to forget, to hear, to be told***, to denote past actions.

I forget the name of the play but there's a good comedy on at the Theatre Royal next week.

I hear you are getting married soon.

We are told she graduated the University last year.

3. The Present Indefinite can be used for dramatic narrative, i.e. when describing the action of a play, opera, etc. and is often used by radio commentators at sports events, public functions, etc. (Thomson, Martinet, 1986, 160).

Blanche sits in a chair very stiffly After a while the blind look goes out of her eyes and she begins to look slowly around. A cat screeches. She catches her breath with a startled gesture. Suddenly she notices something in a half-opened closet. She springs up and crosses to it, and removes a whisky bottle. She pours a half tumbler of whisky and tosses it down.

Exercise 1. Comment on the use of *the Present Indefinite.*

1. Maureen often gives dinner parties at home. She lays the table, puts the cutlery in the right place, sets out the plates and puts a clean white napkin at each plate. 2. Some people spend more money than they receive. 3. The school year in Britain begins in September. 4. Some people don't drink alcohol at all. 5. If you want legal advice in Britain, you go to a solicitor. 6. He dresses and behaves in a very careless, often disgusting way. 7. This book throws a great deal of fresh light on the history of the period. 8. Famous entertainers suffer from a lack of privacy.

9. The earth moves around the sun. 10. I always brush my teeth in the lavatory. 11. Many people believe that coffeine counteracts the effects of alcohol. 12. Different people see the same ghost, at the same time or at widely different times. 13. If they catch you, they will kill you. 14. True friends want nothing from you and don't expect any special favours. 15. The woman I can see standing outside in the pouring rain reminds me of Klaus, the German boy. It is the expression on her face: she looks so desolate, so utterly unloved. People hurry past her as quickly as possible; if someone does smile, I watch her hesitate for a moment. Then she looks away. 16. In this admirable fable the ant spends a laborious summer gathering its winter store, while the grasshopper sits on a blade of grass singing to the sun. Winter comes and the ant is comfortably provided for, but the grasshopper has an empty larder: he goes to the ant and begs for a little food. Then the ant gives him her classical answer. 17. "How do you feel now, Bill?" – "As weak as water". 18. "I'm all right." – "Are you, by God. You don't look it." 19. He steals in, takes the dagger from the silver table, and returns to the study window. He slips off his shoes, climbs in. Then he slips out again and goes off He makes for the station, rings up from there. 20. "Are you married, detective Carella? Do you quarrel sometimes?" 21. Occasional parties are thrown, and sometimes we hire the village bus for a Sunday bullfight; otherwise we keep ourselves to ourselves. 22. She never talks to him. 23. Servants are so tiresome. They gossip, and talk among themselves. And then it gets round – and all the time there's probably nothing in it at all.
24. You know Moms. She swears that it was my picture in the frame when she was doing the packing, but Moms gets so excited when we travel.

Exercise 2. Write the following verbs in *the 3rd person Singular of the Present Indefinite*. Read them aloud.

a) To ask, to speak, to work, to put, to light, to greet, to break, to grip, to stop, to puff, to get, to flirt, to blurt, to cut, to tap, to bath, to grasp, to drink, to fight, to rough, to last, to rest, to roast, to laugh, to sleep, to leap, to leak.

To bake, to take, to type, to bite, to poke, to pipe, to invite, to hope, to cope, to make, to like, to plate, to paste, to stake, to spite, to swipe.

b) To burn, to learn, to turn, to plan, to ban, to calm, to seam, to dream, to brim, to steam, to rim, to boil, to spoil, to drill, to spill, to spell, to smell, to ring, to lag, to bring, to sing, to cling, to nag, to brag, to drag, to flog, to bid, to dab, to dib, to drab, to stab, to load, to forbid, to plead, to mouth.

To dine, to pine, to drone, to tone, to phone, to time, to come, to tame, to smile, to pile, to state, to tile, to robe, to describe, to bribe, to ride, to bide, to decide, to live, to love, to crave, to leave, to stave, to weave, to bathe, to loathe.

c) To lay, to stay, to bray, to pay, to pray, to prey, to see, to agree, to foresee, to decree, to glow, to show, to blow, to stow, to snow, to boo, to taboo, to ski, to stew, to sew, to brew, to crew, to queue, to rue, to sue, to construe, to ensure, to toe, to tiptoe, to tie, to die, to lie, to cure, to lure, to pure, to mure.

d) To study, to cry, to dry, to try, to pry, to fly, to ply, to spy, to steady, to levy, to magnify, to stray, to embody, to dirty, to pity, to go, to echo.

e) To pass, to dress, to mess, to press, to stress, to miss, to kiss, to cross, to push, to crush, to brush, to mesh, to lash, to mash, to fish, to leash, to reach, to teach, to watch, to catch, to bleach, to stitch, to preach, to search, to lunch, to match, to fetch, to fix, to coax, to mix, to box, to relax, to fox, to buzz, to waltz.

To dance, to prance, to glance, to lance, to place, to face, to race, to brace, to pace, to mince, to slice, to promise, to rinse, to practice, to please, to tease, to crease, to advise, to close, to rise, to raise, to praise, to revise, to devise, to seize, to freeze, to breeze, to rage, to stage, to cage, to age, to gauge, to emerge, to surge, to bridge, to sledge, to pledge, to grudge, to smudge, to nudge, to rouge.

Exercise 3. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative.

Models: *A. They speak English well.*

Do they speak English well?

They do not speak English well. (They don't speak English well).

B. He is a prolific writer.

Is he a prolific writer?

He is not a prolific writer. (He isn't a prolific writer).

1. They watch TV in the evening. 2. He smokes ten cigarettes a day. 3. People praise him. 4. Teachers are devoted to their work. 5. He never argues with his parents. 6. Pete goes in for sports. 7. Rugby is his favourite sport. 8. She is a bookworm. 9. It often snows in winter. 10. They sometimes visit us. 11 You are seldom at home in the evening. 12. I mind my own business. 13. They often interfere with my work. 14. The milkman brings them milk every morning. 15. They are in London now. 16. My mother feels well today. 17. He sends you his love. 18. My father approves of my hobby. 19. They often drink coffee together. 20. You help the deprived and the sick. 21. The customers complain about the bad service. 22. They teach their children foreign languages. 23. Brian often tells lies. 24. People invest their money in an undertaking. 25. He prefers to travel by plane. 26. You are always in a hurry. 27.There is always much noise in the corridor during the break. 28. These children are very bothersome. 29. Factories pollute water and air. 30. Music pleases the air. 31. I put on weight easily.

Exercise 4. Find subjects and attributes in the following sentences and put questions to them. Remember that in interrogative sentences with questions relating to the subject or its attribute the auxiliary verb *"to do"* is not used.

Model I: *They return home late.*

Who returns home late?

Model II: *Pete drives his car recklessly.*

Who drives his car recklessly? (Which of them drives his car recklessly?)

Model III: *Pete's mother teaches French.*

Who teaches French?

Whose mother teaches French?

Model IV: *Two students live near the Institute.*

Who lives near the Institute?

How many students live near the Institute?

Model V: *Glass breaks easily.*

What breaks easily?

1. Mary works at an office. 2. The Enguri runs into the Black Sea. 3. My friends often invite me to their house. 4. The leaves turn yellow in autumn. 5. Thousands of people take part in anti-war demonstrations every year. 6. A housewife's work is never finished. 7. A faint heart never wins a fair lady. 8. Barking dogs seldom bite. 9. Bees make honey. 10. Three or four swallows make their nests in our garden every spring. 11. She often breaks my heart. 12. He is very precise about doing his duty. 13. They believe in God. 14. Their children sometimes break toys. 15. You judge people by appearance. 16. Ann and Nelly help their mother about the house. 17. Two or three students of our group miss their lectures every day. 18. The early bird catches the worm. 19. His behaviour makes his wife angry. 20. Mr Smith's wife teaches at our college. 21. Two trucks collect garbage in our street every morning. 22. Fresh air, fruit and vegetables promote good health. 23. Many scientists receive grants for their achievements. 24. He lets people down. 25. Everybody trusts him. 26. Twenty students take part in the competition. 27. It takes him a week to finish this book. 28. Our new teacher speaks three foreign languages.

Exercise 5. Put as many special questions as possible to the following sentences.

Model: *A good teacher treats his pupils with respect.*

a) Who treats his pupils with respect?

b) How does a good teacher treat his pupils?

c) Whom does a good teacher treat with respect?

d) What kind of teacher treats his pupils with respect?

e) What does a good teacher do?

1. At the age of 16 pupils leave school. 2. Once or twice a month Ann goes to the theatre. 3. Pete' father usually shops in the supermarket. 4. People travel to see other countries and continents. 5. Commercial television gets its money from advertising. 6. Nearly all schools work five days a week. 7. She has got two bottles of champagne in the fridge. 8. In nursery schools children learn simple games and songs. 9. The academic year in Britain begins in September. 10. A chef cooks in a restaurant or hotel 11. The children go to bed at 11 o'clock every night. 12. He has a bath once a week. 13. Her husband is from Algeria. 14. Not all the countries allow free speech in the newspapers. 15. Wild flowers grow wherever the soil is not cultivated. 16. When people move into a house, they sometimes have problems. 17. My brother works as a personnel manager at a big farm. 18. Northern Ireland occupies one sixth of the territory of the United Kingdom. 19. His parents are mean. 20. Children in their teens go through a physical and emotional development. 21. We earn more than our neighbours. 22. It seldom rains in this part of the world. 23. My son doesn't want to give up his job. 24. They are at home now. 25. There are far too many lazy men nowadays. 26 The postmen keep their letters for one street together.

Exercise 6. Put disjunctive questions to the statements given below.

Models: *a) His sister lives in London. – His sister lives in London, doesn't she?*

b) They are in the garden now. – They are in the garden now, aren't they?

c) Your parents don't approve of your behaviour. – Your parents don't approve of your behaviour, do they?

1. You aren't angry with me. 2. Carol doesn't drive a car. 3. She is a good model. 4. Voles, shrews and lemmings live in the tundra. 5 Aunt Martha lives near Marble Arch. 6. Most British families only go to restaurants on special occasions. 7. You don't go in for sports. 8. It is not very cold today. 9. The trees grow well. 10. He goes there by train. 11. It doesn't often snow in your country. 12. Your sister likes to watch football matches. 13. Children ask many questions. 14. There are a lot of cars in the streets. 15. I am on duty today. 16 This rule isn't difficult. 17. His mother is old. 18. They have English classes three times a week. 19. Your Granny bakes delicious cakes. 20. The teachers aren't busy today. 21. They have a bath every day. 22. You drink coffee. 23. There is so much craziness in the world. 24. Most people aren't particularly interested in the economy. 25. Nick's parents are on pension. 26. I am right. 27. They have a good time in restaurants. 28. There is no time to lose. 29. There are so many lovely flowers in your garden. 30. Your boss isn't in the office. 31. His manager meets important visitors every day. 32. The hardware shops sell household tools. 33. They don't treat their neighbours with respect. 34. He is a legitimate son.

Exercise 7. Put alternative questions to the statements given below.

Models: *a) The bell rings at eight. – Does the bell ring at eight or at nine?*

b) You are married. – Are your married or single?

1. The University courses usually last for years. 2. She lives far from the University. 3. His car is five years old. 4. He studies English at Glasgow University. 5. The milkman brings them milk very early. 6. The children are in the garden. 7. At the weekend John eats in restaurants. 8. A kennel is a shelter for a dog. 9. They go to the theatre occasionally. 10. There are five children in their family. 11. Generally I clean my room once a week. 12. His flat consists of five rooms. 13. She spends much money on clothes.14.A perilous journey is dangerous. 15. These shoes are expensive. 16. An antonym to "deep" is "shallow". 17. These people speak English. 18. A sty is a place where pigs are kept. 19. He gets up at 7 o'clock. 20. A number of whales is a school. 21. It seldom rains in Africa. 22. Spiteful people are malevolent. 23. The capital of Kenya is Nairobi. 24. He has relatives in Brazil. 25 They sometimes leave the key to their flat with the Smiths. 26. After lunch the girl plays tennis. 27. People read serious newspapers for their news. 28. Maureen often gives dinner parties at home. 29. Edna spends Saturday morning doing jobs around the hours. 30. A dishonest man is deceitful. 31. People eat too much nowadays.

Exercise 8. Supply *the Present Indefinite* of the verbs in the box.

look, come, drop, think, call, recognize, put, make, pay, carry, not listen, smell, select, flow, mend, qualify, howl, keep, hold, do, deal, not have, buy, need, believe, remind, take, not take, boil, seem, provide, stop, not eat, avoid, travel, disapprove, work, suffer, have

1. Wolves 2. Aunt Lucy three cats in the house. 3. Where she the money from? 4. She rubbish anywhere and never it in the bin. 5. A newspaper its money from the price people for it and also from the advertising it 6. Summer excellent opportunities for swimming. 7. Let's go for a walk as soon as it raining. 8. Everybody here you in high regard, just as I 9. She paying when she on public transport. 10. You as an architect. 11. The Gypsies the bear to be a brother to man. 12. They her for a grown-up person. 13. A cobbler shoes. 14. The river Nile into the Mediterranean. 15. All small things and old toys them of their childhood. 16. An ironmonger in iron and hardware. 17. They supper at home. 18. She to be okay, as far as I can tell. 19. Your daughter music lessons in the morning or in the afternoon? 20. Water at 100 degrees centigrade. 21. Chess for the ability to plan moves and threats several steps ahead. 22. How long it to paint such a picture? 23. Many communities now of cell or car phone use. 24. Universities usually students on the basis of "A" level results and an interview. 25. My wife in the evening.

26. He is so obstinate. He to his friends. 27. The cake delicious. 28. Sara coffee on her way to work every Monday. 29. Many people a professional help to overcome an addiction. 30. A pessimist on the dark side of things. 31. Colliers in a coalmine. 32. At least 500 million people in the world from hunger.

Exercise 9. Supply *the Present Indefinite* of the verbs in the box.

(not) cost, feed, make, break up, sell, borrow, consist, talk, warm, cry, come, contain, (not) have, (not) be, walk, change, lead, phone, expect, catch, take, (not) seem, come, take part, export, lay, snow, differ, represent, have, not drive, last, sleep, rise

1. A cat mice. 2. The sun in the east. 3. You often a taxi to get to the office. 4. Students books from the library. 5. We in expeditions. 6. They flowers in the streets. 7. We sometimes them. 8. Hallucinations to work like that. 9. How your husband to avoid her? 10. He only on deck when she is in the cabin. 11. He in his sleep. 12. Schools for the summer holidays in July. 13. A clown people laugh. 14. University courses normally three years. 15. Underground tunnels consist of tunnels dug into deposits of coal or minerals. 16. Women always to a man who can 17. The baby always after breakfast. 18. A chameleon colour to conform to its surroundings. 19. Rainy weather to gloominess and depression. 20. Many developing countries food to pay back their debts 21. A diplomat his country at an embassy. 22. Land tortoises mainly on plants. 23. Tobacco the drug nicotine. 24. Hardwood from broadleaved trees. 25. Cultures not only in their beliefs but also in what they value. 26. Mr Williams usually his dog early in the morning. 27. Hens eggs. 28. His camera much. 29. You ill. 30. George dinner in a restaurant. 31. Carol a car. 32. It often in your country? 33. You a good time in your country?

Exercise 10. Supply *the Present Indefinite* of the verbs in the box.

change, fall, not know, come, hate, be, take, smoke, shine, shake, throw. scream, take, use, complain, blame, not cost, share, not drink, make, leave, receive, have, stay, hear, happen, suggest, have, treat, destroy, move, live, reflect, switch, bang, run, find

1. You how to solve these problems. 2. People the famous with a mixture of reverence and brutality. 3. Love the course of people's life. 4. A tornado is a terrifying wind, which everything in its path. 5. For the man who in a preindustrial world time at a slow and easy pace. 6. The moon because it some of the sunlight that on it. 7. In some parts of the world the ground from time to time. 8. The lady off the light, the door, the necklace

down the passage and 9. He no jokes at his own expense. 10. When they guests they meals in the living room. 11. The bus quickly. 12. My wife so much cosmetics. 13. She never about anything. 14. They always joys. 15. She her husband for the misadventure. 16. My husband coffee in the evening. 17. What you so different? 18. The office of your conduct? 19. If you the truth about my father, please, let me know. 20. Where he from? 21. It's just that I so lonely, sir! Everybody me. 22. The Smiths often out late? 23. At nine-thirty Mr Geoffrey Raymond someone in here asking for money. 24. What next? 25. Captain Paton the same way – through the window. 26. Sometimes life hold of one. 27. Their house fifty thousand dollars. 28. He too much? 29. The term "economic expansion" something desirable and benevolent. 30. The British a reputation for being cold and reserved.

Exercise 11. Use *the Present Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. "You (to be) a Devonshire girl?" "No, sir." "So it (not to be) your farm?" "My aunt's, sir." "And your uncle's?" "He (to be) dead". "Who (to farm) it, then?" "My aunt, and my three cousins." "How you (to like) it after Wales?" "I (not to know), sir." "I suppose you (not to remember)." "Oh, yes! But it (to be) different." "I (to believe) you. How old you (to be)?" "Seventeen, sir." "And what (to be) your name?" 2. She wrinkled her brows in a puzzled frown. "I (not to think) I (to understand)." "Well, think, and see if the most religious people (not to be) those who (to feel) that this life (not to give) them all they (to want). I (to believe) in being good because to be good is good in itself." "Then you (to believe) in being good?" 3. "What's an ideal husband like, Evelyn?" "He (to shave), (to let) his wife spend his money, and (not to be) a bachelor." 4. "Mummy, why it (to rain)?" "To make things grow. To give us apples, pears, corn, flowers." "Then, why it (to rain) on the pavement?" 5. "You (to save up) money for a rainy day, dear?" "Oh, no! I never (to shop) when it (to rain)." 6. "The man your sister (to be going) to marry (to be) rich?" "Not much! Every time mother (to talk) about the wedding father (to say): Poor man!" 7. Dogs especially (to look up) to their owners, which (to make) them feel important and needed. 8. "Willie, how you (to define) ignorance?" "It's when I (not to know) something and somebody (to find) it out." 9. A dolphin (to look) like a big fish with a smile. Actually, dolphins (to belong) to the same group of living creatures that humans (to do): mammals.

10. Nancy (to get) to work at about 8.45. She (to work) fixed hours. She (to have) a nine-to-five job. 11. She's a flirt, and (not to care) who (to know) it. 12. Pregnant women (to crave) for strange things. 13. How dolphins (to communicate) with one another? 14. What a dolphin (to look) like? 15. A woman is dying. Her body (to feel) very bad. She (to hear) the doctor say that she is dead. Then she (to begin) to hear a very loud noise in her ears. She (to feel) like she is

moving or falling. She (to think) she outside of her real body. From far away she (to watch) the doctors and nurses try to save her. She (to try) to get back into her real body, but she can't. Then she (to see) the faces of family and friends who died before her. They (to come) to help her. They (to tell) her not to worry. She (to begin) to feel better.

Exercise 12. Use *the Present Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. At a college examination a professor said: "The question (to embarrass) you?" "Not at all, sir", replied the student. "It (to be) the answer that (to bother) me." 2. "Our economic professor (to talk) to himself. Yours ?" "Yes, but he (not to realize) it. He (to think) we're listening".
3. "My wife (to have) the worst memory ever heard of". "She (to forget) everything?" "No, she (to remember) everything". 4. Your husband (to remember) your wedding anniversary?" "No; so I (to remind) him of it in January and June, and he (to give) me two presents". 5. "What you (to give) your husband when the dinner (not to suit) him?" "His coat and hat". 6. "A husband (to lead) a dog's life", said Mr Allen. "That's right", agreed Mrs Allen. "He (to growl) all day and (to snore) all night." 7. "What (to be) the products of the West Indies?" "I (not to know)." "Come, come! Where you (to get) sugar from?" "We (to borrow) it from the next-door neighbour." 8. It (to mean) that you still (not to be) ready? 9. Who (to be) the man who sometimes (to sit) next to you in the bus? 10. When the Mexican (to do) his job, I (to want) you to give the money to him. 11. And you (to think) the Lord (to be going) to abandon me when I (to be) on his business? 12. How we (to know) a radio wave (to be) a signal? If it is, how we (to decode) what it (to mean)? 13. I can't go home before I (to hear) from his own lips that he (to be) all right. 14. You (to consider) him a rich man, doctor? 15. If he (not to trust) their judgment, he (to replace) them. 16. My father (to ask) me why I (not to read) English newspapers.
17. What your father (to ask) you to do? 18. He (to get up) when he (to feel) like it and (to spend) the rest of the day doing what he (to want). 19. Jen (to nod), and (to pick) the tiny gray terrier up. It (to hide) its face between her large blouse-held breasts and (to whimper).
20. Ghosts usually (to inspire) fear when they (to appear). Many people (to believe) that ghosts (to be) evil creatures, which (to harm) living people. 21. "Bothered with time-wasting callers, are you? Why you (not to try) my plan?" "What is your plan, Mrs Jones?" "Why, when the bell (to ring), I (to put on) my hat and gloves before I (to press) the button. If it (to prove) to be some one I (not to want) to see, I simply (to say) "So sorry, but I'm just going out!" "But suppose it's some one you (to want) to see?" "Oh, then I (to say), "So fortunate I've just come in."

Exercise 13. Use *the Present Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. Who (to tie) a bag of apples at the neck with string? 2. It (to seem) queer to be writing letters

to somebody you (not to know). 3. Classes (not to begin) until Monday morning. 4. There (to be) three other girls – a Senior (to wear) spectacles. Salie (to have) red hair and a turn-up nose and (to be) quite friendly. Julia (to come) from one of the first families in New York. They (to room) together. Salie (to think) everything is funny. Julia (to be) bored at everything. She never (to make) the slightest effort to be amiable. She (to believe) that if you (to be) a Pendleton, that fact alone (to admit) you to heaven without any further examination. 5. The English instructor (to say) that my last paper (to show) an unusual amount of originality. 6. How my program (to strike) you, Daddy? 7. Where you (to think) my novel (to be)? In the wastebasket. 8. How a dying man (to feel)? 9. The tobacco industry (to spend) vast sums on medical research.

10. Smoking (to bring) many psychological benefits, (to relieve) stresses of everyday life, (to provide) constant consolation. 11. When people (to smoke)? 12. If you (to boast) you (not to watch) TV, it's like boasting you (not to read) books. 13. A person seldom (to go) on a hike alone. 14. Why he (to suspect) a trap at every turn? What you (to call) such a person? 15. What we (to say) of a person who (to watch) television from noon to night? 16. He regularly (to visit) the library? 17. He (to belong) to a new school of thought in linguistics. 18. When a girl (to talk) about the things I (not to know), I just (to keep) still and (to look) them up in the encyclopedia. 19. It (not to seem) polite to ignore everybody. 20. People (to accept) happiness as a matter of course. The world, they (to think), (to owe) them everything they (to want). 21. It (not to matter) whether the girls (to be) stupid or not so long as they (to be) pretty. 22. Judy was a person who (to feel) and (to understand) nature.

Exercise 14. Use *the Present Indefinite* of the verb instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. If Arnold (to be) in the house when you (to ring) I'll talk in a conventional way. 2. When the time (to come) if there (to be) anything anyone can do here, you bet your bottom dollar we'll do it. 3. If you (to funk) it tonight it'll be worse tomorrow. 4. If you (to let) us, we'll come back when supper (to be) over. 5. If you (not to find) a house soon I shall have to reconsider my position. Why, if you (to go) on like this we shan't be married for years. 6. When he (to go) I (to hope) you'll take his place, Mr Mackintosh. 7. If there (to be) a cat, I'll put out poisoned fish.

8. If you (to leave) here about five, you'll get there about half-past five. 9. You (to suppose) Gennaro'll be there when we (to get back)? 10. If you (not to stop) laughing, I'll break your bloody head open. 11. Maybe I'll come to a place like this when I (to be) dead. 12. I'll let you know when I (to hear) from Ed. 13. You will get much better results if you (to take care) always to be polite, patient and kindly. 14. When I (to reach) there I shall become a hermit and get enlightenment. 15. You'll get five years in Borstal if you (not to give) me a straight answer.

16. I'll be here for half an hour before the next bloke (to come up). 17. If things (not to happen),

I'll make them happen. If anybody (to ask) me to go anywhere, I shall accept. 18. Will you have a chance to talk with her before she (to go) on the witness stand? 19. If you (not to come) quick, nurse, I shall run out there. 20. If you (not to leave) Currito alone, I'll kill you. 21. While you (to be) in town, Bill, we'll just wait here. 22. When she (to be) calmer I'll talk to her. 23. If you (not to go) to Baru I'll have you all put in prison. 24. Do go in and talk to father until I (to come back). 25. We'll just have to wait here until someone (to come) along. 26. The Healer won't last forever, and when he (to go), I shall return. 27. "It's a surprise for Paula". "She'll overcome when she (to see) me". 28. You know what you'll be when you (to be married) to me, don't you?

Exercise 15. Express solidarity using *So/Neither (Nor) do (am, have) I. So/Neither (Nor) does (has, is) he.*

Models: *a) My husband gets home from work late. (My husband) – So does my husband.*

b) My son doesn't eat fruit. (I) – Neither do I.

c) They are very tired. (I) – So am I.

d) I am not in the right mood for a country walk. (We) – Neither are we.

1. We have dinner at four o'clock. (They) 2. He doesn't eat much. (I) 3. Nick is in Canada now. (Pete) 4. I depend on my parents. (I) 5. He doesn't live in the real world. (His wife) 6. We remember his hospitality. (We) 7. I am grateful to them. (Nick) 8. She works in a shop. (Her friend) 9. She's absolutely devoted to her mother. (Her sisters) 10. We put a lot of trust in him. (They) 11. We are fond of your children. (My neighbours) 12. My children don't break toys. (My son) 13. I feel cold. (We) 14. Nelly isn't married. (Ann) 15. Nick's wife is pregnant. (My wife) 16. I am not good at mathematics. (My sister) 17. I don't put much sugar in my tea. (I)
18. He isn't a very hard-working student. (Pete) 19. I don't feel sleepy. (We) 20. My watch is slow. (Mine) 21. Her hens don't lay eggs. (Our hens) 22. He is proud of his children. (All parents) 23. You travel a lot. (My friends) 24. I don't approve of his behaviour. (We) 25. I'm not against him. (We)

Exercise 16. Express solidarity using *So/Neither (Nor) do (am, have) I.* For the models see the previous exercise.

1. He doesn't tell anyone his secret. (I) 2. She is scared by that dog. (My child) 3. Every Sunday he watches birds in the forest. (His children) 4. I admire Bill's courage. (Everybody) 5. Jimmy doesn't smoke. (Pete) 6. He isn't married. (I) 7. Andy gets drunk at parties. (Bob) 8. I don't want to achieve immortality through my work. (My friends) 9. They are different from their parents. (We) 10. I love travelling. (My wife) 11. I am not sure what he means. (Jan) 12. James doesn't

ever phone them. (We) 13. She doesn't believe in love at first sight. (I) 14. I blame the parents for badly behaved kids. (I) 15. Larry often fails exams. (All his friends) 16. I don't trust this government. (My colleagues). 17. Paul feels that something is wrong. (Simon) 18. I don't recognize the man who is looking at us. (I) 19. Faith goes to the library very often. (My daughter) 20. I don't approve of young girls smoking. (My husband) 21.My little son believes in Santa Claus. (All children) 22. The Browns watch TV till late at night. (The Smiths) 23. Mary cooks well. (Her sister) 24. He is so carefree. (All young people) 25. His daughters dance well. (My son) 26. My children go in for music. (My child)

Exercise 17. Put indirect questions to the sentences, using the following phrases: ***I wonder , I want to know , Can you find out for me ? I don't know ..., Do you know ? Will you ask ? I'd like to know , Would you inquire ?***

1. How often does your car break down? 2. When does the swimming pool open? 3. How many courses does your dinner usually consist of? 4. Why do people marry? 5. How long does your lecture last? 6. Where does the US president live? 7. What do you regret doing in the past?
8. What do teenagers spend a lot of money on? 9. What is he famous for? 10. What does a gynaecologist specialize on? 11. Where does Tbilisi stand on? 12. How old is your father?
13. What do you think of Mozart's music? 14. What role does music play in your life?
15. Where do the Cup Finals take place? 16. What does a fishmonger deal in? 17. How do you get to the Institute? 18. How long does it take you to get there? 19. Why are you sometimes late for classes? 20. How does that doctor treat diseases? 21. Where does your sister teach? 22. Why does Ann look upset? 23. Why does your son smoke so much? 24. What is the weather like in England? 25. What kind of clothes do they prefer? 26. What do you do if you are bored?
27. How many parks and stadiums are there in Tbilisi?

Exercise 18. Put indirect questions to the sentences using the instructions of the previous exercise.

1. At what age do American children start and finish school? 2. What are the stages of school in the USA? 3. Why do people have to get up early on weekdays? 4. How much time does it take you to have your breakfast? 5. How many lessons do schoolchildren have a day? 6. How do people usually spend their days off? 7. Why does your father prefer travelling by car? 8. What does the term "potatocoach" mean? 9. What are the advantages of e-mail? 10. Why are nuclear power stations dangerous? 11. What illnesses does obesity lead to? 12. How often do you go for a walk? 13. How does your neighbour earn his living? 14. What do you think of commercials? 15. How many newspapers does your family subscribe to? 16. What does a "tabloid" mean?

17. When is Ann's birthday? How old is she? 18. How long does it take you to get dressed? 19. What do they usually have for breakfast? 20. What time do they come home? 21. Why do you think that teaching is a noble profession? 22. How many cats has she got? 23. How much does he weigh? 24. Where does she come from? 25. Why don't you ever listen to your parents? 26. How often do you visit your parents? 27. How far does he live? 28. How well does she speak English?

Exercise 19. Put indirect questions to the sentences using the instructions of the previous exercise.

1. Do you find this rule difficult? 2. Does the teacher give you a lot of homework to do? 3. Are there angels in heaven? 4. Are sweet things bad for our teeth? 5. Is Nick married? 6. Is she upset about her failure at the exam? 7. Is Mozart your favourite composer? 8. Do you think that his behaviour is eccentric? 9. Do you like the way she behaves? 10. Are all the stories published in the newspaper true? 11. Are you for or against cloning people? 12. Do the Georgian sportsmen take part in the Olympic Games? 13. Are there many holidays in Georgia? 14. Does a florist deal in flowers or fruits? 15. Are they angry with me? 16. Do you understand how serious it is? 17. Is his wife pretty? 18. Do you believe in your government? 19. Does she deserve her success? 20. Are they in love? 21. Have they got many relatives in the country? 22. Have you got a nice view from the window? 23. Do you often miss classes? 24. Has she much work today? 25. Do they speak English fluently? 26. Isn't smoking harmful for health?

Exercise 20. Put indirect questions to the sentences using the instructions of the previous exercise.

1. Do you have any time to spare during your working day? 2. Are you fond of camping? 3. Do you often go to the cinema? 4. Does it ever snow in Africa? 5. Is there life on Mars? 6. Do people use TV intelligently? 7. Do commercials annoy you? 8. Does Pete read any newspapers in English? 9. Does Pete wake up himself or does an alarm clock wake him up? 10. Do they do morning exercises regularly? 11. Do you often see each other? 12. Does she often quarrel with her husband? 13. Is he often late for classes? 14. Does she go in for skating? 15. Are Agatha Christie's books popular with the readers? 16. Does he often come to school late? 17. Does the bill include services? 18. Does she often praise her children? 19. Do carpenters make things from wood or metal? 20. Does maize grow in Georgia? 21. Do you believe in love at first sight? 22. Does he often visit you? 23. Are his grandparents old? 24. Do they allow the children to stay out at night? 25. Does your cat catch mice? 26. Do you ever regret anything? 27. Has she a son or a daughter?

Exercise 21. Enlarge on the following statements using the words in brackets.

1. People take his opinion into consideration because he is rolling in money. (talk) 2. My teacher keeps discipline in the classroom. (not, believe) 3. The UK is a highly developed industrial country. (produce) 4. It's useless to try our department store. (not, sell) 5. Travelling by air is most convenient. (reach) 6. I don't think she is in love with me. (flirt) 7. The climate in Los Angeles is dry. (not, rain) 8. Ann is a keen theater-goer. (know) 9. It often snows in winter. (know) 10. Planes make men nervous. (not, travel) 11. Their parents come back home late. (not, have) 12. My mother never throws away old socks. (use) 13. His father is too stingy with his money. (not, lend) 14. People celebrate the New Year wholeheartedly. (begin) 15. He does not have enough money for the trip. (stay) 16. You do not have many books at home. (work) 17. She lives far from the Institute. (take) 18. Don't waste so much money. (not, grow) 19. Nobody likes being criticized. (discourage) 20. She never mentions his good fortune. (keep) 21. My sons' favourite sport is football. (play) 22. Pollution kills everything that is alive. (depend) 23. My mother gets up at six o'clock every day. (go) 24. Her brother does not like reading. (prefer) 25. I am fond of sports. (make) 26. In winter the sun sets early. (rise) 27. We have no piece at home because of our children . (turn) 28. We rely on her truthfulness. (not, stoop) 29. These ideas are not original .(descend) 30. My mother has terrible trouble getting to sleep. (not, drink)

Exercise 22. Complete the sentences using the following words and phrases.

to get there soon, to go to the office, to feel lonely, to go back to France, to try to be nasty, to knock on the door, to settle the account, to find out about the debt, to want, to put to somebody properly, to prefer to live with somebody, to love, to obey the doctor's orders, to have to spare, to marry somebody, to die, to cook breakfast, to go on like this, to feel chilly, to ring up, to care to join somebody at brunch, to start anything, to catch together, to be free, to gamble away one's fortune

1. I'll close up this matter before 2. You'll make her hear if 3. You'll only get hurt if 4. I shan't keep you here until nine unless 5. He'll understand if 6. I shan't stand in her way if 7. I'll certainly join you for coffee before 8. The Old Man will boil me in oil if 9. You'll be very welcome if 10. I'll be as warm as toast if 11. We shall never save the house unless 12. We shall be obliged to take proceedings unless 13. You'll be cured in six months or a year at most if 14. We'll all be killed if 15. I'll finish it if 16. We'll go home straightaway if 17. I will do my best to make her a good and loving husband if 18. Shall I take you round the house while ? 19. It'll make my blood boil if 20. I shall be buried here when 21. I'll be with you as soon as 22. You'll be here after 23. I'll borrow

a couple of aspirins 24. I'll have a place laid for you 25. The mistress'll raise Cain if

Exercise 23. Complete the sentences using the following words and phrases.

to hold one's tongue, not to do something, to see one's name in the Sunday papers, to get hold of, to select one whose mind and tastes are in harmony with, to give way to that brute of a soldier, to be shot at, to mention somebody's name, to keep damp, not to pay the rent, to come to tea, to die, to pay, to lose one's good looks, to want, to be as old as grandfather, to tell somebody, to tell somebody what to do, to grow older, to come again, to insist on telling somebody, to live as long as, to be imitation, to come back

1. What will happen if 2. Cook will be quite excited when 3. He won't know it unless 4. They will do anything they can for you if 5. I shan't go till 6. I'll break your neck if 7. I'll have that piano tuned before 8. I'll do it if 9. I will marry you when 10. He will begin this horror again tomorrow if 11. Who will talk if 12. The sprouts will take root in the pot if 13. Mother will have much pleasure if 14. I'll tell you quickly enough if 15. Don't shoot unless 16. You'll see things different when 17. I shall run over the list of my female friends till 18. One loses everything when 19. I'll teach him all I know when 20. I'll ask for your opinion when 21. I shall kick the bucket long before 22. I'll make his bones rattle when 23. It won't be long before 24. You think you'll never get over

Exercise 24. Complete the sentences using the following words and phrases.

to allow, to make drunk, to catch red-handed, to leave, to get back home, to come to the turn on the left, to go away, to have to stay, to settle down, to get though talking, to spend the money, to get back, to see something, to get there, to be married, to be too late, to be drained, to be over, to hear the news, to see somebody, to graduate the University, to mention somebody's name, to be time to settle down, to tell off

1. They won't complain if 2. I'll believe it when 3. You'll be dead before 4. I'll send a message for you when 5. We'll wait till 6. I'll ask you to marry me as soon as 7. I shan't be able to type your letters if 8. I'll knock you down if 9. I'll see you home if 10. You know what a spot we'll be in if 11. I shall die if 12. I won't forget you when 13. I shall speak to them before 14. We shall wait till 15. You'll remember how you sucked away a mother's life when 16. You'll have to earn your living when 17. You'll find a hill when 18. He won't marry a poor girl when . 19. We shall need the money when 20. There'll be newspaper reporters there before 21. It will be the best land on the place

when 22. He'll drop dead when 23. You'll be as sober as a judge by the time 24. You'll do some thinking after

Exercise 25. Complete the following sentences.

1. I shall complain if 2. It won't hurt you if 3. What will happen if 4. What will he do after 5. You'll feel much better after 6. I'll be back in an hour if 7. He'll be a champion if 8. You'll break the vase if 9. They will thank us if 10. What will you do before 11. I won't leave unless 12. Your mother will have a fit if 13. Will you wait till ? 14. I won't speak to him until 15. He'll change his mind when 16. I shall teach you a lesson if 17. You will put on weight if 18. They will laugh at you if 19. I shall not believe it unless 20. The child will cry until 21. We shall set out as soon as 22. She will recognize me as soon as 23. We shall switch on the light after 24. They will think it over before 25. Nick will not pass the test unless 26. I shall keep to my bed while 27. I shall not lend you my book unless

Exercise 26. Give Georgian equivalents to the following proverbs. Use them in short situations of your own.

1. A cat in gloves catches no mice. 2. Birds of a feather flock together. 3. Still waters run deep. 4. A stitch in time saves nine. 5. Who keeps company with the wolf, will learn to howl. 6. A still tongue makes a wise head. 7. Faults are thick where love is thin. 8. Fine words dress ill deeds. 9. Fine feathers make fine birds. 10. Empty vessels make the greatest sound. 11. There is one good wife in the country, and every man thinks he has her. 12. Every heart knows its own bitterness. 13. Misfortune never comes alone. 14. Charity begins at home. 15. Strike while the iron is hot. 16. Every man has a fool in his sleeve. 17. Every cloud has a silver lining. 18. All is not gold that glitters. 19. Too many cooks spoil the broth. 20. The tongue is not steel, yet it cuts. 21. If you want a pretence to whip a dog, say that he ate the frying pan. 22. What soberness conceals, drunkenness reveals. 23. The early bird catches the worm. 24. Idleness rusts the mind.

Exercise 27. Give Georgian equivalents to the following proverbs. Use them in short situations of your own.

1. Who chatters to you, will chatter of you. 2. Salt water and absence wash away love. 3. Hasty climbers have sudden falls. 4. If a donkey brays at you, don't bray at him. 5. He runs with the hounds and hunts with the hare. 6. Hope is the last thing that we lose. 7. When poverty comes in at the door love flies out of the window. 8. Men make houses, women make homes. 9. What belongs to everybody belongs to nobody. 10. Never hit a man when he's down. 11. Misfortunes

never come singly. 12. Make hay while the sun shines. 13. One rotten apple decays the bushel. 14. Marriage makes or mars a man. 15. A good beginning makes a good ending. 16. Fortune favours the brave. 17. The fool thinks he is wise, but the wise man knows himself to be a fool. 18. Many hands make light work. 19. The end crowns the work. 20. Every shoe fits not every foot. 21. Man proposes, God disposes. 22. When two friends have a common purse, one sings and the other weeps. 23. Marry in haste, repent at leisure.

Exercise 28. Give Georgian equivalents to the following proverbs. Use them in short situations of your own.

1. A close mouth catches no flies. 2. Every man has his weak side. 3. Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise. 4. We never know the value of water till the well is dry. 5. Two in distress makes sorrow less. 6. Velvet paws hide sharp claws. 7. A rolling stone gathers no moss. 8. One love drives out another. 9. One good turn deserves another. 10. New brooms sweep clean. 11. It's not the gay coat that makes the gentleman. 12. A little body often harbours a great soul. 13. He that mischief hatches, mischief catches. 14. He who scrubs every pig he sees will not long be clean himself. 15. Money often unmakes the men who make it.
16. Familiarity breeds contempt. 17. With time and patience the leaf of the mulberry becomes satin. 18. As the old cock crows, so does the young. 19. What the heart thinks the tongue speaks. 20. Every ass loves to hear himself bray. 21. Absence makes the heart grow fonder. 22. Pride goes before a fall. 23. Time cures more than the doctor.

Exercise 29. Translate the following sentences into English using the verbs in *the Present Indefinite* where necessary.

1. არგენტინელებს არ უყვართ თავიანთი ქვეყნიდან გასვლა. თუ მაინც მოუწიათ, პარიზს, ლონდონს ან ბრიუსელს არჩევენ. არც თაეიანთ შვილებს აგზავნიან შეერთებულ შტატებში სასწავლებლად. 2. რას აპირებ მერე? არ ვიცი. რას ნიშნავს არ ვიცი? მაშ ვინ იცის? როგორ შეგიძლია ასეთი გულგრილი იყო?
3. ბედნიერება სიზმარს ჰგავს. სანამ მიხვდები, რომ ბედნიერი ხარ, უკვე გაგეღვიძება. 4. არაფრის თქმას არ ვაპირებ. ძალიან დაეიღალე და მეძინება.
5. ენდი ყოველ გაკვეთილზე უკანა მერხზე ზის? 6. ჩვენ დილით გვიყვარს სეირნობა. ნიკას კი არა. დილაობით მას ძილი ურჩევნია. 7. სპორტის რომელ სახეობას მისდევთ – კრივს თუ ჭიდაობას? 8. – მაგრამ არსებობს სიყვარული? – კითხვას უსვამს მწერალს მაკა. – რა თქმა უნდა არსებობს, – სერიოზულად პასუხობს მწერალი. 9. მაპატიეთ, მაგრამ მე თქვენი არ მესმის და ამიტომ არ დაგეთანხმებით. 10. რომელ საათზე წვება თქვენი ეაეიშვილი? – ძალიან გვიან.

მას დამე უყვარს წიგნების კითხვა. 11. ჯონი ხშირად რჩება გვიანობამდე ამხანაგებთან? მშობლები რას ეუბნებიან? 12. ეარ მეათე კლასში და ეპირებ სწავლის გაგრძელებას უცხო ენების განხრით. კეირაში ორჯერ ინგლისურის მასწავლებელთან დაედიეარ. 13. თვალს ვადევნებ და ძალიან მეამაყება, რომ ასეთი შეილი მყაეს, მაგრამ მისი კარიერის განეითარებაზე დიდად არ ეზრუნაე და ამას ყოველთვის პირდაპირ ეეუბნები. 14. არ ეიცი, შეიძლება, მიყეარხარ კიდეც, მაგრამ სიყეარული პასუხისმგებლობაა. მე კი არ ეარ დარწმუნებული, რომ მზად ეარ ამ პასუხისმგებლობისთვის. 15. სკოლის მოსწაელეებმა ზუსტად იციან, ვინ არის მტერი და ვინ გმირი. უნდათ, როცა გაიზრდებიან, გმირები გახდნენ და მტრებს პასუხი გასცენ. 16. რას გულისხმობ? ეკითხება ბონდო. – მართლა არაფერი იცი ჩემს შესახებ? – პასუხობს ანა. 17. უილმორი ნუ დაგაეიწყდება, ძეირფასო. შენი მეგობარი არაფრით არის ჩეენზე უკეთესი. მასაც ისეეე აწეალებს საგანძურზე ფიქრი, როგორც მე ან ზუგინს. დამიჯერე, სესილ, მან გაცილებით მეტი იცის განძზე, ეიდრე შენ გგონია. 18. რას აკეთებს ნიკო გაკეეთილების შემდეგ? ის პირდაპირ სახლში მიდის თუ მეგობრებთან ფეხბურთს თამაშობს? 19. როგორც წესი, მას არ გააქვს საიდუმლოება ოჯახის გარეთ და მე მას ეენდობი. 20. რატომ სვამს ანა ამდენ წყალს? რატომ არ აქცეეს დედამისი ამას ყურადღებას?

Exercise 30. Translate the following sentences using *the Present Indefinite* of the verb where necessary.

1. ეს მცენარე შაეი ზღვის სანაპიროზე კარგად ხარობს. 2. ჩემს უფროს ეაჟს წიგნების კითხეა ძალიან უყვარს, უმცროსი ეაჟი კი – კითხეას ეერ იტანს. ის სპორტს მისდევს. 3. ყოველ საღამოს ნიკო პარკში დარბის, ბევრს ეაჯიშობს, რომ მუდამ ფორმაში იყოს. 4. სოხუმში ხშირად წვიმს, მაგრამ ქარი იშვიათად იცის. თბლისში კი, პირიქით, იშვიათად წვიმს, სამაგიეროდ მუდამ ქარი ქრის.
5. ეინ იცის, კობა სად ცხოვრობს? – ნინომ, ის მისი მეზობელია. 6. არაეინ იცის, სად დადის პეტრე ყოველ საღამოს, მაგრამ მე ეფიქრობ, იგი ანას ხედება.
7. ბენი, რატომ ტოეებ ყველგან შენს მობილურ ტელეფონს? მერე მუდამ ეძებ.
8. ყოველ დღე ორი საათის განმაელობაში ის ახალ სიტყეებს სწაელობს და ამიტომ მას კარგი ლექსიკური მარაგი აქეს. 9. რას ნიშნაეს ეს გამოთქმა?
10. რატომ აცდენს მერი ასე ხშირად ლექციებს? – ის ხშირად აეადმყოფობს.
11. მას არაეისი სჯერა მას შემდეგ, რაც ყეელაზე ახლო მეგობარმა უღალატა.
12. შენ მშობლებთან ერთად ცხოვრობ? – არა, მაგრამ მათთან ყოველ შაბათ-

კვირას დავდიეარ. 13. – როგორ გრძნობ თაეს ახლა? – არაფერს არ ეუჩიეი. როდესაც რაღაცას ეუჩიეი, მაინც არავინ არ მისმენს. 14. როდესაც ჩემი პატარა ვაჟი საშინაო დაეალებას ღამით ასრულებს, უამრაე შეცდომას უშეებს.

15. მამათქეენი სამსახურიდან როდის ბრუნდება სახლში? – გეიან, რადგან ჩეეულებრიე ძალიან ბეერს მუშაობს. იგი ძალიან კეალიფიცირებული თანამშრომელია და დირექტორი ყოეელთეის რაღაცას აეალებს. 16. მე ის კაცი ძალიან კარგად მახსოეს. მას ისეთი სახე აქეს, რომელსაც ასე იოლად ეერ დაიეიწყებ. 17. ეს პროფესორი ქიმიას არ ასწაელის ჩეენს ინსტიტუტში. ის ფიზიკოსია. 18. ქალებს ძალიან უყეართ მაღაზიებში სიარული, ჩემს დას კი არა. მას საოჯახო საქმეების კეთება ურჩეენია. 19. ფოსტალიონი თაეის სამუშაოს დილით ძალიან ადრე იწყებს. 20. ჩეენ ანის დედას კარგად ეიცნობთ, მაგრამ არ ეიცნობთ მამამისს. 21. ქალაქში გირჩეენიათ ცხოერება თუ სოფელში? – სოფელში ეამჯობინებ ცხოერებას. 22. მე ეიცი, რომ ეცდები, მაგრამ რა ექნა, სხეანაირად არ შემიძლია. 23. რას ფიქრობ ჩემს საქმროზე? მოგწონს ჩემი არჩეანი? 24. ეის ეკუთენის ეს ფირმა (ot own, to run)? 25. ინგლისში ხშირად წეიმს? – დიახ, საკმაოდ ხშირად და ამიტომაც კლიმატი ნესტიანია. 26. მისი ქმარი დილიდან საღამომდე მუშაობს, არასოდეს არ სცალია. სამაგიეროდ კარგ ფულსაც აკეთებს (to earn money). 27. ავტობუსები ჩეენს სოფელში ყოეელ ერთ საათში დადიან, მაგრამ 9 საათის შემდეგ არც ერთი ავტობუსი არ დადის.

28. ეს სახლი ჩეენ არ გეეკუთენის (to belong). ჩეენ მას ექირაობთ. ის ჩეენს შორეულ ნათესაეს ეკუთენის. 29. ყოეელ გაკეეთილზე მაწაელებელი 5 მოსწაელეს გაკეეთილს ეკითხება და დანარჩენ მოსწაელეებს ბეერ კითხეას უსეამს. 30. ნუ ყეირიხარ! ჩეენ კარგად გეესმის, ყურს არ გეაკლია.

The Past Indefinite Tense

The form of the Past Indefinite is the same for all persons.

The regular verbs form the Past Indefinite by adding *-ed* or *-d* (if the verb ends in *-e*) to the stem of the verb (the infinitive without the particle *"to"*):

to work – worked, to borrow – borrowed, to ask – asked, to open – opened, to escape – escaped, to use – used, to like – liked.

Verbs ending in *-y* preceded by a consonant change the *-y* into *i* before adding *-ed*:

to study – studied, to cry – cried, to copy – copied.

But when the verb with a final *-y* is preceded by a vowel the *-y* does not change and only *-d* is

added to the stem of the verb:

to play – played, to obey – obeyed, to stay – stayed, to enjoy – enjoyed.

If a verb ends in a consonant preceded by a short stressed vowel represented by a single letter, the final consonant is doubled:

to stop – stopped, to plan – planned, to wrap – wrapped, to dub – dubbed, to shrug – shrugged, to permit – permitted, to thin – thinned.

Final ***-r*** is doubled if it is preceded by a stressed vowel:

to occur – occurred, to deter – deterred, to confer – conferred, to refer – referred.

But: *to offer – offered, to differ – differed, to murmur – murmured, to flatter – flattered, to alter – altered.*

Final ***-r*** is not doubled when preceded by a diphthong:

to appear – appeared.

The final ***"l"*** is doubled if it is preceded by a short vowel, stressed or unstressed:

to expel – expelled, to compel – compelled, to travel – travelled, to revel – revelled. But: *to conceal – concealed, to reveal – revealed.*

Irregular verbs form the Past Indefinite by a change in the word itself:

to sing – sang, to meet – met, to make – made, to lose – lost, to write – wrote, to do – did, to put – put.

The interrogative and the negative forms are formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb ***to do (did)*** and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle ***"to"***.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I asked (sold)	Did I ask? (Did I sell?)	I did not (didn't) ask (sell)
You asked (sold)	Did you ask? (Did you sell?)	You did not (didn't) ask (sell)
He (she, it) asked (sold)	Did he (she, it) ask? (Did he (she,	He (she, it) did not (didn't) ask
We asked (sold)	it) sell?)	(sell)
You asked (sold)	Did we ask? (Did we sell?)	We did not (didn't) ask (sell)
They asked (sold)	Did you ask? (Did you sell?)	You did not (didn't) ask (sell)
	Did they ask? (Did they sell?)	They did not (didn't) ask (sell)

There are a few verbs, which form the Past Indefinite differently from the way described above. They are ***"to be"*** and ***"to have"***.

"To be"

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I was	Was I?	I was not (wasn't)
You were	Were you?	You were not (weren't)
He (she, it) was	Was he (she, it)?	He (she, it) was not (wasn't)
We were	Were we?	We were not (weren't)
You were	Were you?	You were not (weren't)
They were	Were they?	They were not (weren't)

"To have"

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
had / 'd for all persons	had I? etc	had not / hadn't for all persons

When the verb ***"to have"*** has a meaning other than ***"possess"*** or when it is used as part of a phraseological (group-verb) predicate or when it has a modal meaning, ***"to have"*** forms its interrogative and negative in the ordinary way with the auxiliary ***"to do"***:

Did you have a good time at the party?

We didn't have to wait for him long.

The Use of the Past Indefinite Tense

The Past Indefinite refers actions to past time quite cut off from the present, that is, these actions are in no way connected with the present. The past reference of the context can be shown:

a) by various adverbials of time pointing to the past, for example: ***yesterday, the day before yesterday, last year (week, month), that year (Sunday), three years ago, an hour ago, in 1985, on the 3rd of May, the other day.***

b) by some other past actions (denoted by the verb in the Past Indefinite or Past Continuous):

What did she say when you told her that?

As he read the telegram he stiffened visibly.

Whenever we saw her, she always urged us to eat.

The Past Indefinite is used:

1. To state simple facts in the past.

The poor captain did not know what to do.

Rowena was tall and very beautiful.

She waited until Heyward went, and then turned to the Indian.

The lady aroused my curiosity.

The doctor did not ask me about my wound.

The Past Indefinite, never the Present Perfect, is used in questions beginning with ***"when"***, because it implies a certain moment in the past. The answer can be either in the Past Indefinite or in the Present Perfect, depending on the situation:

When did he leave?

- He left an hour ago.

- He has just left.

Likewise, the Past Indefinite, not the Present Perfect, is used in questions beginning with ***"where"*** because in such questions the reference to some past moment is implied:

Where did you meet Pete?

The implication is: when you were at the place where the action was performed.

2. To denote facts; habitual, recurrent actions in the past.

Every weekend he took his family out for a drive.

He often put his hand to his head, pulled down the corners of his mouth, and shammed pains he did not feel.

Note: In English there are special means of expressing a permanent recurrent action in the past. They are: ***"used to + infinitive"*** and ***"would + infinitive"*** stem:

In my youth I used to take a cold shower in the morning, now I never do.

He didn't use to ring me up last year and now he does.

When at school he was a real TV-fiend. He would sit in front of it for hours forgetting his food or sleep.

3. To denote a succession of past actions:

Then we went back for luggage, loaded the car again and set off down the hill.

Polly dried her eyes and went over to the looking glass. She dipped the end of the towel in the water-jug and refreshed her eyes with the cool water. She looked at herself in profile and readjusted a hairpin. Then she went back to the bed again and sat at the foot.

4. To denote an action which occupied a whole period of time which is now over. The period of time is usually indicated in the sentence by means of adverbial phrases with the prepositions ***"for"*** or ***"during"***:

We waited for the bus for half an hour.

He read that book during weeks.

Exercise 1. Comment on the use of *the Past Indefinite* in the following sentences.

1. Talking of one thing and another we watched the day decline, we dined, and then we sat out

again on deck under the stars. 2. "Mr Rooney bought that watch from this store", Cutter said. "He bought it approximately six weeks ago". "What did I pay for it?" Rooney asked. "I'd have to look it up on your books to tell the exact price", Cutter said. 3. Now she was nearly dead with fatigue. She got up and went to bed. She took a sleeping-draught. 4. The urban reforms in China began in 1984. 5. Henry I ruled the country for thirty-five years. 6. When we were children our father often worked on the night-shift. 7 Kitty blushed deeply and, she knew not why, tears suddenly filled her eyes. She covered her face with her hands. 8. In a moment she heard a heavy step on the creaking stairs. Townsend came in and shut the door behind him. 9. A feeling of languor crept over Mrs Rymer. The figures of the doctor and the nurse grew hazy. She felt blissfully happy and very sleepy. The doctor's figure grew bigger. 10. That evening Julian cooked supper for Amanda, and they ate it off a tray in front of the fire. 11. "I saw the doctor today about my loss of memory." "What did he do?" "He made me pay him in advance." 12. He lighted another cigarette, ruefully put away Miss Caesar's folder, and got back to work again. 13. She said she formed her friendship among books. 14. John Carpenter became the first $ million winner on the American show in 1999. 15. The porter led them along a corridor and opened a door. Then he set his unstable candle down on a toilet-table and asked at what hour they were to be called in the morning. 16. Presently a taxi stopped outside one of the underground stations and a man of thirty-five paid his fare and made off down one of the small streets. 17. He pressed the bell at the office window inside and it was a long time before he heard footsteps cross the empty room and saw a shadow cloud the frosted glass of the window. 18. Poor Fanny! She sang little, and looked beautiful through that inappropriate hymn. Above her stood Harry – mercifully in a dark suit and dark tie, looking almost handsome. 19. So one evening we had our tea together, and 'Awkins lit the lamp and we all sat in to cards. Jeremiah Donovan came in too, and sat down and watched us for a while. Though he was a shy man and didn't speak much, it was easy to see he had no great love for the two Englishmen Well, like that in the story, a terrible dispute blew up late in the evening between 'Awkins and Noble.
20. There was a long silence. We went on looking at each other. Nobody moved in the hall. I swallowed; my hand moved to my throat. 21. She laughed and held me still and kissed me. I responded as well as I could. 22. Equally, of course, the inquest revealed nothing that the public did not already know. 23. On 24 March 1603 James Stuart ascended the English throne. 24. I arrived in Dublin on the evening of the 5th of August, and drove to the residence. 25. Jim's mam screamed as soon as the copper mentioned her name.

Exercise 2. Write *the Past Indefinite* of the following verbs. Read them aloud.

I. to ask, to work, to stop, to crop, to snap, to stab, to rub, to cram, to nag, to rib, to scrub,

to sack, to smug, to smudge, to span, to splash, to clash, to sponge, to spoil, to broil, to drill, to squander, to spurtle, to spur, to spy, to cry, to employ, to squash, to square, to squeal, to cross, to squib, to stable, to staff, to stage, to starve, to steam, to stain, to stew, to stimulate, to tolerate, to want, to rot, to stipulate, to stir, to fur, to blur, to gum, to gun, to gull, to accord, to actuate, to grant, to account, to accost, to act, to add, to gleam, to stove, to crave, to air, to stare, to analyze, to strand, to land, to mend, to nest, to net, to pad, to part, to start, to pat, to pelt, to pilot, to plot, to post, to roast, to mount, to mound, to mould, to lament, to ground, to grade, to decide, to gloat, to capitate, to capitalize, to abate, to abuse, to alloy, to play, to advance, to absorb, to announce, to pronounce, to annul, to travel, to towel, to gravel, to level, to marvel, to grim, to grin, to arm, to cram, to tire, to stare, to attempt, to attend, to attain, to authorize, to advocate, to baby, to pry, to stay, to bray, to belly, to marry, to bury, to bully, to prey, to pray, to clay, to spray, to cruise, to bruise, to crutch, to clench, to dash, to dart, to decay, to decease, to increase, to disease, to defeat, to demand, to delude, to demote, to dent, to deposit, to grit, to bat, to bet, to fit, to flit, to delay, to decry, to fortify, to gratify, to obey, to stay.

II. to read, to arise, to write, to bear, to break, to build, to bend, to begin, to flee, to bleed, to blow, to breed, to burst, to cast, to catch, to choose, to cling, to cost, to creep, to cut, to spit, to split, to spread, to spring, to steal, to strike, to swear, to rise, to run, to saw, to say, to see, to seek, to sweep, to swell, to swim, to swing, to take, to teach, to tear, to throw, to wear, to wind, to shoot, to hear, to hide, to hold, to kneel, to keep, to lay, to lend, to lie, to lose, to pay, to ride, to ring, to dig, to drive, to eat, to fall, to feel, to fight, to fly, to forget, to freeze, to give, to go, to grind, to grow, to hang.

Exercise 3. Refer the actions of the following sentences to the past. Use the phrases in brackets.

1. My friend lives in the Ukraine. (in Russia, five years ago) 2. I work in the Insurance Company. (in the Oil Company, two years ago) 3. The children are in the garden. (in the gymnasium, three hours ago) 4. I don't speak Italian. (Chinese, then) 5. I have dinner at 4 o'clock. (on Monday, at 5 o'clock) 6. We receive letters from Nick regularly. (from our relatives, last year) 7. Mr Harris is a prosperous businessman. (a poor worker, ten years ago) 8. I don' buy cheap clothes. (expensive clothes, last year) 9. They drive to the office three times a week. (five times a week last year) 10. My son sleeps till 12 o'clock. (till 10 o'clock, on Tuesday) 11. Little Lizzie cannot write yet. (read, some months ago) 12. My daughter dreams of becoming a doctor. (an actress, in her childhood) 13. Does he believe in early rising? (last year, when he went to school) 14. Harry usually goes to work by bus. (to walk, yesterday) 15. Mary

usually wakes up early. (late, on Sunday) 16. Tom doesn't usually have dinner at home. (at the restaurant, last month) 17. She usually drinks coffee before going to the office. (tea, yesterday) 18. They always take a cold shower. (a warm shower, yesterday) 19. They date twice a week. (once a week, last year) 20. This winter is too cold. (last winter, warm) 21. He doesn't go to the concerts because of the baby. (because of the exams, last year) 22. As a rule he does his morning exercises in the yard. (in the room, last winter) 23. His wife doesn't use much cosmetics. (dye her hair, before she got married) 24. Their father doesn't approve of girls smoking. (wearing short skirts, two years ago) 25. I don't earn as much as you do. (enough to provide for my family, three years ago) 26. Mr Brown is not at the office. (last Monday) 27. I have two sons and a daughter. (only two sons, two years ago) 28. He teaches his son to ride. (to swim, last month) 29. Do you help your mother to cook? (to tidy up the flat, yesterday) 30. Are you angry with me? (then)

Exercise 4. Refer the actions of the following sentences to the past. Use the phrases in brackets.

1. It often rains in April. (last year, in October) 2. He listens to the audio on the way to the office. (last year, after work) 3. Do you travel to the Institute by the underground? (by bus, last year) 4. I go in for sports, as I want to be fit. (in my childhood, my parents) 5. The film starts at 9 o'clock (at 8 o'clock, on Sunday) 6. Does your husband smoke? (when you married him) 7. I cook for the family. (My mother-in-law, when I was in the maternity home) 8. This man knows three foreign languages. (only two foreign languages, when I got acquainted with him) 9. I am not well today. (ill, last week either) 10. Is the teacher busy now? (free, then) 11. Is that city big? (when you first visited it) 12. This dress is old. (new, last year) 13. Pete and Nick are diligent students. (lazy, at school) 14. Jack can drive a car. (last year) 15. Our boss meets foreign delegations once a month. (twice a month last spring) 16. We don't eat meat, we are vegetarians. (Three years ago) 17. John is usually late for classes, as he always misses an eight-o'clock bus. (last year) 18. Our lives are lively this year. (monotonous and uneventful last year) 19. I sit next to Jane in class. (next to Lizzie, at the last lesson) 20. I think I know what is good for myself. (then) 21. He doesn't understand women. (in his youth) 22. The Professor says that I am good at mathematics and do well in English too. (last year) 23. We don't write many exercises in class. We write much at home. (two years ago) 24. There is some butter on the plate. (some cheese, an hour ago) 25. This policeman wears plain clothes. (a uniform, last week) 26. This happens nearly every day. (two days ago) 27. Are you sure that he is innocent? (then) 28. My grandparents have got a cat and a dog. (last year, only a dog) 29. My mother does the washing in our family. (yesterday, I)

Exercise 5. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative.

1. The sound continued. 2. Her mother sat on the porch waiting. 3. She saw him in the street. 4. There was no hurry about delivering the message. 5. I needed something to cling to. 6. Her mind played her a trick. 7. Rosalind lay tense and still on the porch. 8. Strange sharp cries came from the birds. 9. He was a slow, silent man. 10. They had dinner at three. 11. The men had a smoke in the yard. 12. Rosalind heard her moving about in the darkness. 13. They had a piano in the country house. 14. He went heavily through the house. 15. Rosalind began to run. 16. A delicious notion came into her mind. 17. She was a creator of light. 18. There was a sensation of boldness. 19. He had his sister with him. 20. We had the jolliest time at the table. 21. I only ran four miles.

Exercise 6. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative.

1. We went out there one day. 2. Bob had the horse in the stable. 3. She is the nicest girl I've ever seen in my life. 4. He made a fool of himself. 5. They introduced themselves. 6. I told about our place down at Marietta. 7. He grabbed the paste brush out of Fred's hand. 8. It was cold outside 9. Outside it rained. 10. They came home from school late. 11. Will grew a little angry. 12. Mr Mathers had one child. 13 Mr Mathers had a lot of money. 14. He owned some coal mines. 15. He sat in the room upstairs thinking. 16. Kate laughed at him. 17. Tom is always such a devil to think up things. 18. There were old people by the fireplace. 19. There was the same shy sarcastic gleam in her eyes. 20. He had a rest in Kobuleti that summer. 21. They left everything at home. 22. The dogs followed at her heels.

Exercise 7. Put disjunctive questions to the statements given below.

1. It was glorious to be there alone. 2. In the morning Rosalind arrived at eight. 3. There was an illusion produced. 4. She felt herself being lifted. 5. The gulls turned and twisted in the air. 6. She belonged there. 7. Walter did not come home from the factory. 8. He lighted a cigarette but did not smoke. 9. Suddenly he wanted to sing. 10. He did not think of her. 11. Now she was near him. 12. They sat together in the car. 13. They were not his children. 14. His wife stood very near. 15. An hour passed. 16. Walter remembered many things. 17. They danced wildly. 18. He did not know what to do. 19. It was the song the Negro sang. 20. There were no dull household sounds. 21. Some of the girls were shy. 22. Then she grew very still. 23. They did not sleep at night. 24. Her body trembled violently. 25. I did all the talking. 26. You came home to tell me something.

Exercise 8. Put disjunctive questions to the statements given below.

1. That evening he drove back to Hertfordshire on his motorbike. 2. On their wedding day he was ecstatic. 3. They met for the first time in a pub. 4. Ross didn't send her flowers. 5. It took a lot of guts to go and thank him in person. 6. He didn't remember seeing that striking girl. 7. Love changed him completely. 8. When you heard you'd got the job you were very happy. 9. It broke his heart when she left him for another man. 10. Business was not bad this time last year. 11. She did not tell him he was useless. 12. Walt used to joke. 13. She was in floods of tears when she heard it. 14. It was an epoch in history. 15. He congratulated his rival on his victory. 16. They didn't abuse your hospitality. 17. There was a tiny office with a stove and a desk in a corner. 18. All day he sat in his office. 19. The man did not look at Rosalind. 20. She trembled a little. 21. He was not a dull citizen of a dreary town. 22. She felt relaxed. 23. She saw him as through the large end of a telescope. 24. Rosalind became weary of thinking. 25. He was not shrewd. 26. The whole city seemed to reach upwards.

Exercise 9. Make out alternative questions to the sentences. Use the models.

I.

My son was ten years old last year (2)

Was my son ten or twelve years old last year?

Was my son ten years old last year or two years ago?

II.

My teacher translated ten stories into English (3)

Did my or her teacher translate ten stories into English?

Did my teacher or my sister translate ten stories into English?

Did my teacher translate ten stories into English or into German?

1. The boys played football on Sunday (2). 2. I saw him yesterday (2). 3. Nick was at school last year (2). 4. Pete told me about his examinations (2). 5. The children were excited (1). 6. Old Edward King was small of stature (2). 7. George went to his room after dinner (2). 8. The woman sat up in her chair (3). 9. I watched the race calm (3). 10. He was interested in history (1). 11. Will felt like crying (2). 12. He had dinner at 5 o'clock (2). 13. My parents managed to buy a drugstore (2). 14. The dogs caught two rabbits (3). 15. It was a foolish thing to do (1). 16. A laugh broke from the doctor's lips (2). 17. Alice blamed Ned Curie for what had happened (2). 18. You slept badly last night (3). 19. For two days Donald lay in bed (3). 20. Nick worked eight hours at a stretch (3). 21. My neighbors sold me flowers (2).

Exercise 10. Put as many special questions as possible to the following sentences.

1. He found a squarrel on the tea table. 2. Jerusha travelled for four hours in a train yesterday. 3. She wanted to write a letter first just to get acquainted. 4. Mrs Lippett told Jerusha how to behave all the rest of her life. 5. Mr Greene stood on the outside. 6. In the end room I came across the Munnings. 7. The man from the office appeared at his shoulder. 8. I read indecision on all their faces. 9. They all walked behind him along the corridor. 10. I sold a picture to Maisie in Sydney. 11. He went down in the lift and along the foyer to the hotel's restaurant. 12. He whipped off the glasses with a theatrical flourish. 13. The two girls looked at each other. 14. Alice worked in the dry goods store from eight in the morning until six at night. 15. With a long lean hand he stroked his half grown beard. 16. The doctor dropped heavily back into his chair. 17. He forgot the presence of the farmer. 18. The mirror on his knees caught the rays of the departing sun. 19. He got to the door of the livery barn at eleven o'clock. 20. She was a slender narrow-hipped woman. 21. The heavy dragging footsteps rang loudly on the wooden stairs. 22. The mother rarely spoke to the daughter. 23. In the morning she crept away to sit on the step at the side of the house. 24. In the upper part of the house there were five rooms. 25. Rosalind thought about him sometimes. 26. She took off her hat and laid it on the porch beside her.

Exercise 11. Put as many special questions as possible to the following sentences.

1. My husband won the money in a lottery. 2. His children nursed him kindly during his illness. 3. She left school when she was fourteen. 4. The chief looked visibly disturbed. 5. He walked with lowered eyes. 6. He got back last night. 7. Joseph, the barman, came to me for orders. 8. They heard the voice of the cook in the kitchen. 9. He was at home the whole day. 10. One day I received a telegram from my landlady. 11. He gave everything he had to Dr Drake. 12. He went to some precautions to make certain he couldn't be traced by the police. 13. The advertisement appeared on the fifth of May. 14. When he was 24, he married one of his fellow-students. 15. In Kansas City Walt met another artist. 16. The Titanic sank because it hit a huge iceberg. 17. The bus stop was at the end of the street. 18. My friends were there yesterday. 19. He had breakfast at 8.30. 20. My mother went to the post office yesterday. 21. Tom King laughed good-naturedly. 22. Before the race I went over to the paddocks to see. 23. They rented ten acres of poor stony land on Grigg. 24. For ten or fifteen minutes Mary sat on the stone beneath the tree in the orchard. 25. The widow ran through the front gate waving her arms wildly. 26. There was a kind of power in Melville Stoner that frightened her.

Exercise 12. Express solidarity, using *So/Neiher (Nor) did/was/had I.*

1. My mother decided to leave the town. (My father) 2. Joe wanted to be an artist. (My brother) 3. He helped at home with the domestic chores. (Nick) 4. Joe didn't feel selfish and mean.(I) 5. I wasn't tired at the end of the day. (I) 6. Joe didn't have any regret about his life. (Liza) 7. I found it very difficult to be plunged into city life. (Joe) 8. The first question was not difficult. (The second question) 9. We were sure we had been here before. (They) 10. You thought those stories were true. (They) 11. I didn't go to the party last night. (I) 12. Andy got drunk at Anne's party. (Joe) 13. She didn't have time to eat breakfast. (We) 14. She wasn't pretty. (Her sisters) 15. We drank coffee an hour ago. (They) 16. Old Mrs Forrest was slightly indisposed. (Old Mr Forrest) 17. Eleanor, he knew, was at the wedding. (Charlotte) 18. It was a shock to me to find that Father didn't have any principles. (Mother) 19. Her frank selfishness appealed to him. (The righteousness of the others) 20. Hour by hour he saw the past being irreparably spoiled. (she) 21. When he was out of the house he felt compunction. (She) 22. He didn't want to throw himself away on some girl that wasn't up to him. (His brother) 23. So I decided to follow my own instincts. (I)

Exercise 13. Supply *the Past Indefinite* of the verbs in the box.

open, peer, turn, walk, make, settle, pick, dial, take, hear, drink, climb, start, drive, wind, catch, terminate, get, ride up, enter, see, think, survey, lapse, shrug, turn, wear, have, flutter, swoop down, swing, marry, narrow, hold, fall, adjust, take, spend, tell, dab, acquire

1. He in behind the steering wheel, the car, and slowly down the driveway. 2. The jay noisily from branch to branch, until he was almost even with Mason's shoulder. 3. Sheriff Barnes the door. A blond, studious-appearing young man in the early thirties owlishly from behind horn-rimmed spectacles. 4. Sergeant Holcomb on his heel and away, showing his silent disgust. 5. Mason the receiver and Paul Drake's voice at the other end of the line. 6. They the cool water, bending over the rock basin. 7. The road up the sides of the long canyon, turning and twisting on itself like a snake in pain. 8. Through the windshield Mason occasional glimpses of purple mountains. 9. He Perry Mason with slightly protruding eyes. 10. Waid into silence with an amused smile flickering at the corners of his mouth. 11. Mason his shoulders and away. 12. He spectacles and sort of tired eyes. 13. Della Street the car skillfully through the late afternoon traffic. 14. The man she must be twenty years older than she is. 15. Mason's eyes in thoughtful speculation. 16. Mrs Winters carefully her glasses, the newspaper picture from Mason, and it up so that the western light full upon it. 17. Mason the interview by raising his hat with elaborate

politeness. 18. I you drive up and maybe that was the bus I was looking for. 19. We our honeymoon there. 20. And you no attempt to find out the name of the man? 21. Mrs Sabin back in her chair. 22. Mrs Sabin to her feet. 23. The up on the elevator with him and his private office. 24. She her sister she was going to Sabin's residence to talk with the son. 25. He up his telephone and a number. 26. Della Street at her eyes with a lace-bordered handkerchief. 27. Along about that time, she the reputation of being narrow-minded and strait-laced, and a poor sport.

Exercise 14. Supply *the Past Indefinite* of the verbs in the box.

be, nurse, ask, see, invite, accept, feel, put, ring, free, enter, hand, take, stand, keep, speak, read, soak up, wear, think, surge, show, open, change, begin, run, lead, thrust, drag, find, stare, seem, get up, hear, go, look, arrive, mention, dance, shake, make, sit, catch

1. At that moment the butler with a telegram on a salver which he to Lord Yardly. 2. The telephone and she to answer it. 3. She finally me directly, and I no reason to refuse when she it like that. 4. He ill for some days, and they him kindly. 5. She a chair and on it to reach into the cupboard over the built-in wardrobe for the shoe-box in which she all her and Christie's savings. 6. But as she spoke Christie to cry helplessly, collapsing against her. 7. To the right the river between the mills and warehouses of the town; and to the left the footpath under the bridge and beyond. 8. He his hand into his pocket and out a fistful of notes. 9. The police Walter Streeter slumped across the dining-table. 10. He at William Stainsforth's face, his cruel, crafty face, which to be always in shadow. 11. He to the street door and out. 12. A wave of panic up in Walter Streeter. 13. The fist postcard a picture of York Minster. 14. About ten days later another postcard, this time from Berwick-on-Tweed. 15. The whole of that day they never once what had happened, any of them. 16. They her red-handed with the forty-one calibre shells. 17. The words across the television screen. 18. Esme her head. 19. When he had gone she herself a pot of tea, and quietly at the kitchen table, a little dazed. 20. Mr Curry promptly at eight – she his alarm clock and then the pips of the radio news. 21. When she her mouth to question him more closely, he the subject. 22. When she him to stay and share the lamb casserole with her, he so quickly that she guilty. 23. He not novels or biographies or war memoirs, but his encyclopedia. 24. His mind everything, but particularly of a zoological, geographical or anthropological nature. 25. He a cream linen jacket and straw hat with a black band. 26. She of going home, of turning the contents of Mr Curry's room out onto the pavement. 27. He on checking all the long distance charges.

Exercise 15. Supply *the Past Indefinite* of the verbs in the box.

bid, carry, have, put on, prepare, flip, reach, experience, get over, be, leave, seem, go, force, give, catch, write down, walk, hold, stare, feel, rise, send, write, regret, throw, pass, take up, not seem, bring, come, awake, look, shake, see, say, quicken, catch up, slam, stagger, sink, sit, blush, take, go, let

1. He a regretful farewell to the dressed peacock. 2. Somehow her tale conviction. 3. When she fourteen, still hardly able to read or write, she school, and as she incapable of further training she into service. 4. Sarah Ruth just food in the pot and it boil. 5. Another hour before he his electric instrument. 6. It was two fifty. I a shower, a clean clothing and otherwise myself for encountering Diana. 7. He the pages quickly, feeling that when he the one ordained, a sign would come. 8. Her mother to mind his attention to the girl as long as he a basket of something with him when he 9. When Oliver eventually , weak, thin and pale, he anxiously around the room. 10. He with lowered eyes, and sitting down, he his head in his hands and at the floor. 11. Blunt his head. "I never him after dinner", he 12. Not long after this she a glimpse of Debbie in the bathroom preparing to have a shower. 13. The man a hopeless shrug. 14. The door behind me, revealing the fat jogger herself. 15. I the address in my notebook. 16. He his pace until he with Joseph. 17. Alan himself to smile at her and nod his head. 18. Alan a curious sinking in the pit of his stomach. 19. He to his feet. 20. Kitching to the chair on the other side of the desk. 21. Alan the blood leave his face. 22. He to his feet, ashamed to find his legs shaking. 23. Who that miserable letter to Kitching? 24. Perhaps whoever that wretched letter already it. 25. Alan and Dorothy beside the stream. 26. She crimson. 27. He a deep breath. 28. We by bus to Kilmarnock. 29. I over the shock at last.

Exercise 16. Use *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. Cole (to walk) to the front of the garage and (to heft) the rusted padlock in his hand, pulling a couple of the screws that (to hold) the hasp to the door loose. He (to pull) again and the hasp (to fall) into his hand and he (to drop) it to the floor, (to kick) it to one side. 2. He (to glance) up and down the cinder road, (to push) his fingers into the gap between the doors and (to tug). 3. The door (to open) a fraction and then (to jam) against a packed wedge of dirt. Cole (to kick) at the dirt with his foot and (to pull) the door back another foot or so. 4. Back in the centre of the city, he (to book) into a hotel, (to pay) over the odds for a bottle of Jameson and finally (to fall) asleep At work next day, he (to bark) at anyone who as much as (to glance) in his direction. 5. Cole (to snap) the lighter closed in his fist, and (to jump) forwards and (to ram) the gun into

Stamp's mouth, (to ride) the momentum until Stamp (to crack) his head on the floor. The gun (to fall) loose and Cole (to scramble) to pick it up, then (to ram) it back into Stamp's mouth, (to crack) teeth. 6. Colin suddenly (to stand) up, (to lean) against the boards and (to stagger) into the crowd, followed by Bert. 7. A violent battering at the door of the inn (to recall) him to his soberer senses. He (to fly) to the window, (to pull) the shutters open, and (to look) out. In the faint dawn he (to see) below him a mob of men. 8. He (to rise) and (to stand) behind her; he (to touch) the black hair. She (to make) no movement or sign. He (to pull) out two or three combs and (to let) the whole mass tumble about his hands. 9. She (to come) back then, (to put) down the candlestick, and (to tiptoe) across the room until he (to meet) her. 10. In the morning he (to breakfast) without seeing her, but as he (to have) business in the world that (to give) him just an hour longer at the inn before he (to leave) it for good and all, he (to go) into the smoke-room and (to find) her. She (to greet) him with curious gaze. 11. Suddenly a very odd impulse (to sweep) over him. He (to want) to go after her – to reassure her – he (to have) the strangest feeling that she (to be) in danger. The impulse (to die) down, and he (to feel) ashamed. 12. He (to ring) and when the maid (to come) (to tell) her to bring in hot coffee. It (to be) brought She (to butter) a roll. He (to shrug) his shoulders and (to begin) to eat. 13. "If it (to be) cold Monday evening, why he (not to light) a fire?" "He (to do)," Sergeant Holcomb (to say). "There's no evidence to show that he (not to do)". 14. "And when you (to pay) the money?" "I (to pay) that on the evening of Wednesday the seventh at a New York hotel." 15. For a few seconds the woman (to hesitate) there on the bank, then she (to turn) and (to fleed) along the path, away from the bridge, stuffing banknotes into her bag as she (to go). Behind her she (to hear) the deep splash as Christie (to plunge) into the river, and she (to quicken) her pace to a stumbling run. 16. He (to smile), (to bow) again and (to withdraw). 17. Talking of one thing and another we (to watch) the day decline, we (to dine), and then we (to sit) out again on deck under the stars. 18. There and then shrill cries (to burst) upon them. The cat (to leap) from the garden to the window-sill; there (to be) a thrush in its mouth, shrieking. The cat (to pause) on the sill, furtive and hesitant. Without a thought Oppidan (to plunge) forward, (to seize) the cat, and with his free hand (to clutch) what he could of the thrush. 19. Hubert (not to look) up. The water (to slide) and (to slide) away before his eyes; Minnie's fingers (to play) in his hair, (to run) carelessly over the nape of his neck. He (to feel) suddenly a positive hatred for this woman. 20. There (to be) things men (to do) on Saturday nights. Work (to be) at an end for the week and money (to jingle) in pockets. Young workmen (to eat) in silence and (to hurry) away, one by one, down into the town. 21. One of them (to see) her purse on the table. He (to go) to it, (to remove) the change purse, and (to start) to take out the bills. 22. He (to feel) that the name (to mean) something personal to him.

Exercise 17. Use *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. The fishing season (not to open) until the sixth, and Fremont Sabin never (to fish) before the season (to open). 2. "And you (to ask) him whether he (to recognize) Mr Sabin's voice?: "Yes, he . He (to know) it (to be) Sabin with whom he was talking." 3. He (to go) to meet the last train, but when she (not to come) he (to grow) suddenly frightened. 4 That evening Julian (to cook) supper for Amanda, and they (to eat) it off a tray in front of the fire. 5. What he (to say) when he (to bring) the parrot home? 6. What you (to mean), Nick, when you (to ask) me if I (to know) Payson's reputation? 7. She (to walk in), (to make) no other reply to Elizabeth's greeting than a slight movement of the head and (to sit down) without a word. 8. They (not to tell) me that they (to want) to injure you physically. 9. Gregory (to see) her the first time as he (to enter) the large dining-room at seven. 10. It somehow (to give) me the impression that he (not to be) keen on Florence. 11. I (to forget) all about this conversation until the night before he (to leave). 12. When Arnold (to reach out) and (to snatch) the glasses from his eyes, Babcock (to rise) from the chair, (to grasp) at empty air, and barely (to steady) himself against the side of the bench, short of falling. 13. He (to go) back to his table. His whisky glass (to be) empty, but he (to shake) his head when Alex (to look) at it questioningly. 14. Charlie (to get up). He (to take) his coat and hat and (to start) down the corridor. Then he (to open) the door of the dining-room and (to say) in a strange voice, "Good night, children". 15. During the long journey the passengers (to become) friendly and (not to hide) anything from each other. 16. Edie (to go) over and (to bend) down to kiss her. 17. There (to be) silence in the room. Eddie (to sit) down and (to begin) putting on his shoes. 18. The judge (to be) very angry, he (to open) the window and (to throw) the box out. 19. He (to know) exactly when he (to want) to go. 20. Eddie (to sigh) and (to turn) around and (to sit up), rubbing his hair with his hands. 21. It shows how little I (to know) Jeeves in those days that I (not to go) a bit deeper into the matter with him. 22. He (to confess) that he (to like) her but still that he (not to trust) her – not yet. 23. He (to close) his eyelids and (to fall asleep) at once. 24. You must be more careful, James. You (to hear) what Grandma (to say)? 25. He (to pour) himself out a glass, (to light) a cigarette and (to sit down) on the edge of her bed. She (to move) a little to give him more room. He (to accept) the situation as perfectly natural. 26. Julia (to give) them a wistful look before she (to shake) her head in refusal. 27. The sound of his voice and the words (to tell) her who it (to be). It (to be) the blushing young man whose name she (not to know). 28. She (to sweep) up and down the room. They (to have) a small flat at Buckingham Gate and there (not to be) much space, but she (to do) her best. She (to throw up) her hands to heaven. 29. "I wonder if he is going to say anything". She (not to answer). She (not to know) what he (to mean).

Exercise 18. Translate the following sentences into English using the verbs in *the Past Indefinite* where necessary.

1. ნატომ უარყოფის ნიშნად თავი გააქნია, სახეზე ცხვირსახოცი აიფარა და ატირდა. ძმებმა ერთმანეთს გადახედეს. 2. დედაჩემმა დარეკა, ნახევარ საათს მელაპარაკა, მაგრამ ზურა საერთოდ არ უხსენებია. 3. იკამ მოშორებით გააჩერა მანქანა, გადმოვიდა და მოგვიახლოვდა. 4. კაფეში შევედი და ცარიელ მაგიდას მივუჯექი. ცუდ გუნებაზე ვიყავი. საცარ სიცარიელეს ეგრძნობდი. 5. სახლში ძალიან დაღლილი მივედი, მაშინვე ლოგინში ჩაეწექი, მაგრამ ვერაფრით ვერ დავიძინე. 6. რატომ არ მიპასუხე გუშინ საღამოს, როდესაც დაგირეკე? შინ არ იყავი? – როგორ არა, მაგრამ ტელეფონი გაფუჭებული იყო. 7. წერილი გუშინ მიიღეთ? ვინ მოიტანა? რატომ მაშინვე არ გადმომეცით? 8. პეტრემ მხრები აიჩეჩა და ქალს გაკვირვებულმა გადახედა. 9. მარიამმა ამოიოხრა, ჩაიდანი წყლით აავსო და გაზქურაზე შემოდგა. 10. თენგიზი დააფიქრა ლადოს ნათქვამმა, რომელიც ძალიან ჰგავდა სიმართლეს. 11. რომელ სასტუმროში გაჩერდით, როდესაც ლონდონში ჩახვედით? 12. რომელ საათზე დაიწყო ფილმი? 13. სახლში იყავით, როდესაც მიწისძვრა მოხდა? – დიახ, და ძალიან შეშინდით. 14. ეს ის ქალაქია, სადაც დაიბადეთ და ბავშვობა გაატარეთ? – დიახ, მე ამ ქალაქში დავიბადე, მაგრამ ბავშვობა აქ არ გამიტარებია, რადგან ჩვენი ოჯახი ორი წლის შემდეგ საცხოვრებლად მეზობელ ქალაქში გადავიდა. 15. კიდევ ათიოდე წუთი ვისაუბრეთ, რაღაც დეტალები დავაზუსტეთ და ერთმანეთს დავემშვიდობეთ. მეორე დღეს მუშაობა უნდა დამეწყო. 16. გიამ კარზე დააკაკუნა და ფრთხილად შეაღო. 17. დიასახლისმა ღრმად ჩაისუნთქა და ცრემლნარევი ხმით დაიწყო თხრობა. 18. მე და ჩემი ქმარი იმდენად ვიყავით გახარებულები, რომ დაწერილებით არაფერი გამოგვიკითხავს. 19. რუბენასთან ხშირად ვლაპარაკობდი ჩემს მომავალზე, ეკამათობდი კიდეც, ბოლო პოლემიკა კი განსაკუთრებით დამამახსოვრდა. 20. რატომ გამიბრაზდა ის წუხელ? მე არაფერი საწყენი არ მითქვამს. მგონი, ვერ გამიგო. 21. როდის გამოაცხვე ეს ნამცხვარი? ძალიან გემრიელია. 22. როდის და სად დაიბადნენ შენი მშობლები და როდის გაიცნეს ერთმანეთი? 23. დღე დღეს მისდევდა, მაგრამ ბუნება გამოდარებას არ ჩქარობდა და ისე გაიესო ქალაქი თოვლით, რომ ადამიანებს ფეხით სიარულიც კი უჭირდათ. 24. მარიკამ სტუმარი ციყვად მიიღო. თავიდანვე იკითხა მისი სტუმრობის მიზეზი.

Exercise 19. Translate the following sentences using the verbs in *the Past Indefinite*.

1. ჩვენ დავურეკეთ მას გასულ კვირას, მაგამ ის სახლში არ იყო. 2. ისინი კეპტაუნში ხუთი წელი ცხოვრობდნენ და მერე მასაჩუსეტში გადაეიდნენ საცხოვრებლად. 3. როდის გამოაცხე ეს გემრიელი ნამცხვარი? 4. რატომ გაგვიბრაზდნენ ისინი წუხელ? ჩვენ არაფერი საწყენი არ გვითქვამს. ალბათ, ვერ გაგვიგეს. 5. ისინი ერთ ინსტიტუტში სწავლობდნენ მოსკოვში, შემდეგ ერთად მუშობდნენ რამდენიმე წელი. 6. მან შაბათს მანქანა შეაკეთა და კვირას მეგობრები პიკნიკზე წაიყვანა. 7. ანა სკოლაში არ წავიდა გუშინ, რადგან ძალიან ავად იყო. მას თავი სტკიოდა და მაღალი სიცხეც ჰქონდა. 8. რატომ განაცხადა მან ამის შესახებ მხოლოდ გუშინ? რატომ არ გვითხრა ორი დღის წინ? 9. მათ ერთმანეთი ჩემს დაბადების დღეზე გაიცნეს და პირველიეე ნახვით შეუყვარდათ ერთმანეთი. 10. როდის წავიდა შენი ძმა პარიზში? – ის გუშინ დილით გაემგზავრა პარიზში და საღამოს დეპეშა მივიღეთ მისგან. 11. რა გითხრათ მან გუშინ? – არ მახსოეს, რა მითხრა. მგონი, სიყვარული ამიხსნა, მაგრამ მე ეს სერიოზულად არ მივიღე, რადგან მთერალი იყო. 12. კაფეში შევედით და ორი ფინჯანი ყავა და ციკი სასმელი შევუკეთეთ, რადგან ძალიან დაღლილები ვიყავით და გვწყუროდა. 13. არ გეწყინოს, რომ შენი თხოვნა გასულ კვირას ვერ შეეასრულე, რადგან ძალიან დაკავებული ვიყავი. 14. სად იყავით გუშინ, როდესაც დაგირეკეთ? – სპორტდარბაზში ვიყავით. 15. არ ვიცოდით, სად გინდოდათ წასელა. 16. როდის დაბრუნდა თქვენი მეგობარი ლონდონიდან? – ორი დღის წინ და იმავე დღეს დამირეკა და მომიკითხა. 17. ეს ის ქალაქია, სადაც თქვენ დაიბადეთ და ბავშვობა გაატარეთ? – დიახ, მე იმ ქალაქში დავიბადე, მაგრამ ბავშვობა იქ არ გამიტარებია, რადგან, როდესაც ორი წლის ვიყავი, ჩემი ოჯახი საცხოერებლად მეზობელ ქალაქში გადავიდა.

18. უნდა აგვიხსნა, რა მოხდა იმ დღეს თქვენს სკოლაში. 19. ისინი ჩვენთან დიდხანს დარჩნენ და მხოლოდ ღამის პირველ საათზე წავიდნენ. 20. სახლში იყავით, როდესაც მიწისძვრა იყო? – დიახ, და ძალიან შეშინდით. 21. სად გაჩერდით, როდესაც ლონდონში იყავით? 22. რომელ საათზე დაიწყო ფილმი? 23. წერილი გუშინ მიიღეთ? რატომ არ გადმომეცით მაშინვე? 24. რატომ არ მიპასუხე გუშინ, როდესაც დაგირეკე? სახლში არ იყავი? – როგორ არა, მაგრამ ზარი არ გამიგია, სამზარეულოში ვიყავი. 25. როდის წავიდა ნიკა სტადიონზე? – არ ვიცი, სახლში არ ვიყავი. 26. კოლის მკვლელობის ამბავი თენგიზმა მხოლოდ ორი საათის შემდეგ გაიგო. 27. ბავშვებმა ბევრი ნაყინი შეჭამეს გუშინწინ და საღამოს ყელი სტკიოდათ. – რატომ მისცა ნელიმ მათ ნაყინის

საყიდლად ფული? 28. თენგიზი დააფიქრა ლადოს ნათქვამმა, რომელიც ძალიან ჰგავდა სიმართლეს. 29. ნიკალას არაფერი უთქვამს ბექასთვის. მან თამაზს დაურეკა და სთხოვა, დილით ბექა სოფელში წაეყვანა. 30. რატომ არ მოაწერე განცხადებას ხელი და მდივანს რატომ არ გამოატანე? 31. მუხლებში სისუსტე ვიგრძენი, ჯერ კიდევ თბილ ქვებზე დაეჯექი და ტირილი წამსკდა.

Exercise 20. Translate the following sentences using the verbs in *the Past Indefinite*.

1. ანი თამაშმა ისე გაიტაცა, რომ მცირე ხნით თაეისი ფიქრებიც კი გადააეიწყდა. 2. ქალმა ახალგაზრდა გოგონას მაჯაზე წააელო ხელი, შემდეგ ოქროს სამაჯურს დააცქერდა და ხმამაღლა გაეცინა. "საიდან იშოვეთ ეს სამაჯური," – ჰკითხა მან. 3. კარი მარიკამ გამიღო. ჩემი დანახეა არ გაკვირვებია. საქმიანად გაიწმინდა სველი ხელები პირსახოცზე და ოთახში შემიპატიჟა. 4. ჯონსი ღრმად ჩაფიქრდა. მან რამდენიმე ჩიბუხი მოსწია. მე კი დასაძინებლად დაეწექი. ჯერ კიდევ ღამე იყო როცა ჯონსმა გამაღვიძა.

5. ნენსის ფინჯანი ხელიდან გაუვარდა. ფინჯანი არ გატყდა, მხოლოდ ყავა დაიღვარა. 6. ისევ ავნერვიულდი. ჩვენი ოთახი მეორე სართულზე იყო და კიბეს ფეხით აეუყვეით. 7. ამ დროს ოთახის კუთხეში ტელეფონი აწკრიალდა. ალეინი მივიდა და ყურმილი აიღო 8. მან ფურცელი ჩანთაში ჩადო, კარი დაკეტა და აეტოფარეხისკენ გაეშურა. 9. მხოლოდ ის ვიცი, რომ ზურა უფლებას არ აძლევდა მათ, რაიმე ეთქვათ შენზე. 10. შემდეგ ყველაზე ღარიბი ოჯახის შვილი ამოვირჩიე ჩვენი კლასიდან და მასთან მეგობრობა დავიწყე. 11. მე კარგად ვთამაშობდი ჩოგბურთს. სპორტი ისე მიყვარდა, დედაჩემი მუსიკაზე რომ გამიშვებდა, მე ფეხბურთის სათამაშოდ მივდიოდი. 12. როდის ესტუმრა დათოს მშობლებს ექიმი და რა დიაგნოზი დაუსვა მათ? 13. იცოდი, როგორ მოქცეულიყავი? – რა თქმა უნდა, არა, მაგრამ უეცრად მამიდაჩემი გამახსენდა, რომელიც თბილისში ცხოვრობდა. 14. დავითმა ბრაზით შეხედა, შემდეგ მაციერიდან ბორჯომის ბოთლი გამოიღო, მოსვა, მამიდასთან დაბრუნდა და მშვიდი ტონით განაგრძო საუბარი. 15. ნატო დიდხანს არ აღებდა კარს. ხმა თითქოს ეცნო, მაგრამ მაინც ვერ წარმოედგინა, ვინ შეიძლებოდა ყოფილიყო ღამის სტუმარი. 16. როდის მოხდა ეს? თქვენ მაშინ სად იყავით? რატომ მაშინვე არ მიიღეთ ზომები? 17. დედამ ოთახები დაალაგა და სადილიც მოამზადა.

18. მან ფანჯარა გააღო და გარეთ გაიხედა. 19. მათ ყავა დალიეს და ისევ წიგნებს მიუსხდნენ. მეორე დღეს გამოცდა ჰქონდათ. 20. რატომ არ წაიკითხა მან წერილი დროზე და რატომ არ გასცა სათანადო პასუხი? 21. შარშან

ზაფხულში ხშირად წვიმდა? – დიახ, მაგრამ ეს გამონაკლისი იყო, რადგან ჩვენთან ზაფხულში, როგორც წესი, იშვიათად წვიმს, თუმცა ძლიერი ქარი იცის. 22. სად და როდის შეხვდით ერთმანეთს პირველად? – ეს შარშან მოხდა ერთი ჩემი მეგობრის სახლში. 23. მასპინძელი ჯერ ვერაფერს მიხვდა და გაოცებული მზერა გააყოლა უცნაურ სტუმარს, რომელიც სწრაფად დაეშვა კიბეებზე. 24. რატომ წახვედით პიკნიკზე გასულ კვირას? თქვენ ხომ არსად წასვლას არ აპირებდით? – შესანიშნავი ამინდი იყო, ძალიან მაცდუნებელი (seducing, alluring) და ვერ გაუძელი ცდუნებას. ტყეში მდინარის პირას გავჩერდით, ვიბანავეთ, ვითევზაობეთ, მერე კოცონზე თევზიც შევწვით და ვიეახშმეთ. 25. შენ კიდევ აქ ხარ? მე მეგონა, უკვე რიგაში იყავი. რატომ არ გაჰყევი მათ გუშინწინ? – დირექტორმა არ მომცა შეებულება და ყველა გეგმა ჩამეშალა.

The Future Indefinite Tense

The Future Indefinite is formed by means of the auxiliary verb ***"shall"*** for the first person singular or plural and ***"will"*** for the second and third persons singular or plural and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle ***"to"***.

The modern tendency is to use ***"will"*** for all the persons.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I shall read	Shall I read?	I shall not (shan't) read
You will read	Will you read?	You will not (won't) read
He (she, it) will read	Will he (she, it) read?	He (she, it) will not (won't) read
We shall read	Shall we read?	We shall not (shan't) read
You will read	Will you read?	You will not (won't) read
They will read	Will they read?	They will not (won't) read

The Future Indefinite is used to denote:

1. Simple facts in the future, a single action that will be completed in the future:

Bah! The public will laugh at you!

He'll make no wild statements.

I'll send a messenger with the papers in the morning.

2. A succession of actions in the future:

I'll pick up the bus for Nice somewhere along the road, and take the train from there.

It's Sunday tomorrow. I shall have nothing to do. I'll come and we'll talk. I'll bring something nice.

He'll bring the gun. He'll not make things worse.

3. Recurrent, habitual actions in the future:

I will call on you and ring you up from time to time.

When we are in London we shall work in the British library.

4. An action occupying a whole period of time in the future:

We shall remember you all our life.

You are fit as a fiddle and I'm sure you will live for many years.

Nick will not wait for us long.

Note: The Future Indefinite is not used in subordinate adverbial clauses of time and condition introduced by the connectives ***when, till, until, while, before, after, as soon as, if, unless, in case, on condition that, provided, etc.*** In such clauses the Present Indefinite is used instead of the Future Indefinite:

I'll tell you about it when we have more time.

If I don't return tomorrow the letter will be opened.

You'll pass out with the old moon, unless Bananas dies before.

Subordinate clauses of time and condition introduced by the conjunctions ***"when"*** and ***"if"*** should be distinguished from object subordinate clauses which are also introduced by the same conjunctions. In object subordinate clauses the Future Indefinite is used to express a future action.

I don't know when I'll be able to see you again.

I wonder if he will keep his promise.

Exercise 1. Comment on the use of *the Future Indefinite* in the following sentences.

1. Come along now, and I'll show you something, which isn't a waste of time. 2. "How long will he be here?" "Well, not more than half an hour." 3. Come up to my room and have a wash. Lunch'll be ready in a jiffy. 4. Tomorrow I'll go to Torquay and get some more money, and get you some clothes and then we'll steal away. 5. If you drop in about six o'clock tonight we'll settle the details on the spot. 6. Tell me where you'll be and I'll phone you in half an hour.

7. You won't always like me best, honey. You'll grow up and meet somebody your own age.

8. If I am not careful I will grow unaccustomed to being with people. 9. Will you persuade him to come? I am sure he will if you make a point of it, and when he knows the way he'll come again. 10. You'll find it a little different here. I mean – you'll notice a lot of things that'll seem to you sort of vulgar display at first. 11. "In a year's time or less, I shall ask you to change your

mind." The girl shook her head. "No, it will be useless." 12. "Have a seat and I'll be with you in about two minutes." 13. Only dare, milord, to lay a finger on that child. You'll regret it forever. 14. I'll tell you what I'll do. I'll buy an air gun. Then if a cat comes, we can shoot it, and it won't kill the cat, but it'll hurt, and the cat won't come again. 15. There will be a glass in front of you. In it there will be something that will send you to sleep. 16. I believe it will be a good day. We shall start with your reading lesson. 17. If you'll just have your passports ready, please, we will cut down the time factor. 18. Fun's fun, but we'll all wind up with pneumonia, playing games down here.

Exercise 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense (*Present* or *Future Indefinite*).

1. What your aunt (to say) to you when she (to hear) what you have to say. 2. Maybe you think it (not to be) a relief to me when this (to be) over, Perry. 3. If he (to refuse) to come in to dinner, we (to be) thirteen, and my party (to be ruined). 4. Some day when you (to come up) to the house I (to read) those letters to you. 5. We (not to talk) about it, if you (not to mind), Raffles. 6. They certainly (not to risk) men's lives in an open boat unless there (to be) some indication the person's still alive. 7. I just (to go) and (to ring) at the door and if the nurse (to send) me packing, it (not to matter). 8. When you (to know) us better, you (to realize) that we (not to live) on money here, we (to live) on debts. 9. They (to go) as far as the police-post at Kenscoff if the car (not to break) down. 10. After he (to get) the money he (to pass) the buck to the board of directors and (to let) them assume responsibility for the double-cross. 11. If she (to go) there she (to put) her neck in a noose. 12. If you (not to stop) it right now I (to break) every bone of your dirty little body. 13. She (to be) all right when you (to know) her better. 14. I'm sure he (to let) me stay if you (to speak) for me. 15. He (to have) a breakdown if he (not to take care), but he (not to spare) himself. 16. I (to mend) that net of yours, while you (to go on) with your unpacking. 17. When he (to grow up) he (to be) all right. 18. I (to tell) you about that after you (to tell) me about the Products Refining Company. 19. If we (to go) through with this thing, I (to shoot) square with you and I (to want) your company to shoot square with me. 20. If you (not to defend) yourself, they (to assume) you can't. 21. You (to pardon) me if I (to interrupt) you, Mr Mason. 22. "I (to get) to the Trianon before the lights (to go out)?" "Yes – if you (to go) direct." 23. "Don't you dare to speak to me," she screamed. "If you (to insult) me I (to have) you turned out of here." 24. I don't think they (to do) much more about it unless you (to tell) them the whole story. 25. "If I can't get a client acquitted by using my wit, I (to let) him rot in jail," Mason said. 26. You (to let) us know if you (to hear) anything about Helen? 27. I (to leave) you to have a yarn. Feddie (to show) you your quarts when you (to want) to go to bed. 28. I (to paint) your picture, Maisie, when I (to get back). 29. I (to give) you the half-crown next week, when I

(to get) paid. 30. I don't like you driving back alone. I (to lend) you a boy – if we (to have) one left.

Exercise 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense (*Present* or *Future Indefinite*).

1. I (to be able) to do that when my vacation (to come) in November. 2. "I need a weapon. I (to return) it when my enlistment (to be) over. If you (not to mind), sir." 3. If she (to become) old and infirm then I (to look) after her. 4. Herb, if you (to try) that kind of thing I (to take) you right out and (to turn) the hose on you. 5. If you (to put) your shoes on the hot stove they (to be burnt). 6. I (to play) piquet with you when I (to come) back. 7. We (to do) much better if we (to face) it all together and (to do) it quickly. 8. He (not to make) a fuss. Even if he (to notice) the difference. 9. Unless you (to have) anything better to do perhaps you (to dine) with us tonight 10. Tomorrow morning after we (to land) it (to be) over. 11. You (to do) it again if you (to think) you can get away with it. 12. If that day (to come) I promise you I (to run) to cover. 13. I never (to marry) you if those Recollections (to be) published. 14. If you (to be) very nice to Julia I dare say she (to give) you a photograph of herself when you (to go). 15. You (to find) your father and me in the Madame du Barry room when you (to be) through. 16. You (to get) this out of here before anybody else (to see) him. 17. When I (to retire) I (to take) a little Chinese house in Peking and (to spend) the rest of my days there. 18. You (to understand) what I mean when you (to know) her. 19. If I (to tell) him what you said about him, he (to give) you a hard whipping! 20. I (to see) you again before you (to be) asleep. 21. If we (to wait) much longer I (to lose) Honoria's childhood and my chance for a home. 22. We (to be) awfully late if that No.12 bus (not to come) soon. 23. If you (to promise) not to come to the restaurant any more I (to see) you for a minute. 24. If you (to keep) coming around here anymore I (to tell) the manager and he (to tell) the police. 25. If you (not to take) me along, I (to have) to get some other people to help me. 26. It (not to do) any good to anyone if you (to get shot). 27. Roberta and I have been married and we'll be married until we (to die). 28. I (to ring) you up when I (to get) home. 29. I hope you (to spend) an evening with us. My wife (to be) delighted to meet you. 30. If you (to get thrown) out of the Hilton's windows, you (not to be) alive to tell the tale.

Exercise 4. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense (*Present* or *Future Indefinite*).

1. You (to have) to grow a little bit older before you (to stand) much chance against me, Mac. 2. Why, I (to skin) you alive if you even (to look) at him. 3. When someone (to come) along and (to want) to write the story of our careers he (to find) all the material ready to his hand. 4. I (to do) that when I (to get) good and ready. 5. If you (to take) away all the food from a place the rats (to leave). 6. If you (to turn) to your left when you (to get) out of here you (to come) to

Cameron's in about three minutes. 7. If any young man ever (to look) at you and (to make) funny noises, you (to ignore) him. 8. I (to see) myself dead before I (to work) for a nigger. 9. If you (to stop) his allowance, Mother, I (to send) him mine. 10. If I (to go) I (to bring) you something. 11. We (to knock) it over as soon as it (to get) light. 12. I (to be) glad when the end of the year (to come). 13. You (to make) no decision and (to set) no dates until you (to be) sure about what you think and feel. 14. I daresay when he (to be) as old as I am he (to have) no more hair than I have. 15. I (to prove) it if you (to give) me time to consult the authorities. 16. If she (to die) what (to happen) to the house? 17. If he (not to make) her happy he (to have) me to count with. 18. I am sure after this he (not to mind) if you (not to call) him "sir". 19. If I (to clean up) now, you (to protect) me against them, Mr Brush? 20. You (to be pleased) when I (to tell) him about it. 21. You (not to be) mad at me for long when you (to know) the story.

22. What we (to talk) about when we (to be married)? 23. I (to be glad) to get out of this house before Constance (to find) you out. 24. If you (to make) me stay here I (to die). I want to go home. 25. I never (to forget) it as long as I (to live). 26. "I hope you (to have) a pleasant journey home." "Oh, but I (to see) you before I (to go)." 27. If anyone (to come) to the door I (to go) and (to let) them in and (to tell) them the truth. 28. It (to be) all right if you (to wait). 29. If you (to get) nowhere I (to protest) tomorrow. 30. Sometimes, when you (to be married) to Isabel, you (to think) of me.

Exercise 5. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense (*Present* or *Future Indefinite*).

1. He just (to do) that portering job for fun. When he (to be tired) of it he (to move) on. He's just an eccentric. 2. If you (to come) in about four, I (to give) you a cup of tea into the bargain.

3. You (to know) what (to happen) if we (to let) her out of this and it (to turn out) she's a fence.

4. That (to mean) I (to have) to dash out just as soon as we (to dock). It (to mean) I (to have) to leave you at the mercy of the police officers. 5. "If you (to steal) it [my icon]," said Eugene, "I (to hand) you over to the police." 6. "I want to say – oh, it doesn't matter." "Say it when you (to come back)." "I (to come back), ?" 7. She said, "If I (to leave) this home I (to take) Elizabeth with me." 8. By God, I (to enjoy) life if it (to kill) me – and it probably will! 9. If you (to see) the governor tell him to have the money ready when I (to call) for it. 10. If you (to go) back to the tent, you (to find) that of our "B" footprint, set number one has those two nails missing.

11. If three (to be) campers there, they at any rate (to tell) us the lie of the land. 12. It's money for jam if you (to act) straight by the Society. 13. "And if I (to say) "yes"?" "Then you (to be) a rich man in less than no time, with money in your pocket to live like a gentleman." 14. And when you (to get) there, do as you (to be) told and speak the truth, because if you (not to speak) the truth, Number One (to deal) with you. 15. "You (to spare) me if I (to tell) you?" "I (to make)

no promises. Be quick." 16. If you (to mention) names here, you certainly (to have) no hope of mercy. 17. If you (to beat) me I'm damned if I (to speak) at all. 18. If you (to have) anything to say in defence of your folly, I (to hear) it later. 19. If you (to be going) to jail all the married men who buy flowers for girl friends, there (not to be) enough citizens outside the jail to pay the taxes. 20. Afterwards, when you (to be) regularly one of us, we (to tell) you the name of the place. 21. Look here – you've told me a lot of things. I (to be) safe if I (to say) "No?" "Oh, yes – if you (to behave) yourself – and (not to make) trouble for us." "H'm, I see. And if I (to say) "Yes"?" 22. I (not to pay) a penny until I (to be) forced. 23. This time I (to hide) and when they (to come) to fill the hole, I (to tell) them who I am. 24. When a friend of mine (to wake up) I (to touch) him for a couple of bucks and (to go) to a hotel.

Exercise 6. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense (*Present* or *Future Indefinite*).

1. He is in the library. If you (to ring), one of the maids (to take) you to him. 2. I (to give) you a shout when I (to be) ready. 3. If I (not to lose) speed I (to win) this race before I (to know) where I am. 4. But you really must take those lungs out of San Francisco. If you (to stay) here in the fog, you (not to live) a year. 5. But when he (to go) to school we (to give) the poor fellow a few things he never had. 6. As you say, the scoundrel is not particularly ingenious. As soon as the police (to arrest) him, he no doubt (to confess). 7. "You (to come) back with me now?" "No. I think if I (to pay) you a visit tomorrow it (to be) more satisfactory." 8. Even now I owe money at the bank. You (to find) that out when I (to be gone). 9. What you (to do) while I (to be) away? 10. And if we (to see) him we (to tell) him you were looking for him. 11. "You (to look out) for him if you (to see) him about. Sergeant, won't you?" she said. 12. I haven't got it with me but I (to bring) it next time I (to come). 13. I don't care what you think of me. If you (to refuse) a divorce I (to go) simply away – Phyllis is ready for anything, poor child. 14. I (to pay) your dues, father, when you (to cease) turning the house of God into a polling booth. 15. "When I (to write) a book," he said, "I (to make) you the laughing stock of the nation." 16. Let me tell you that if the contract (not to be) copied before this evening I (to lay) the matter before Mr Crosbie. 17. Please, look, if I (to confess) to my dad and if I (to get) the bloody icon back will you (to let) me have your cousin? 18. If you (to get) to the bottom of this business, it (to be) a pretty good piece of work. 19. If you (not to come) quick, nurse, I (to run) out there to where there are snakes. 20. I (to loan) you the ten smackers if you (to let) me make you a beard. 21. There (to be) the tea ready when you (to come) back. 22. If he (to have) a murder case, I (to listen) to him. If he (to want) me to draw up a chattel mortgage, the answer is "no". 23. If she (not to marry) Jimmy, of course, she (to marry) nobody. 24. My proposition is that as soon as the rain (to let up) we (to go) along there and (to see) what we can do. 25. As soon as we (to be married) we (to

ask) them to stay with us at Malta. 26. I (to know) his wife (to be vexed) with him if he (to find) Miss Thompson's effrontery amusing.

Exercise 7. Open the brackets using the verbs in the correct form. Determine the type of the subordinate clause and explain the choice of the tense expressing a future action.

1. I don't know when I (to get back) to England. But as soon as I (to get back) the first thing I (to do) will be to come and see you and ask you to marry me. 2. They always (to remember) the day when they (to go) to the Buckingham Palace for the first time. 3. When I (to want) your opinion (to ask) for it. But I am not sure if I (to want) it. 4. When I (to get hold) of him I (to make) his bones rattle but I just wonder when it (to happen). 5. I (to be happy) if I (to see) my name in the winners' list but I doubt if I (to see) it. 6. If all (to go) well we (to travel) to Italy but we wonder if everything (to go) well. 7. If you (to bring) me luck we (to have) an adventure but it is doubtful if you ever (to do) it. 8. If we (to play) our cards well we (to come out) on top but I can't say if (to be able) to play them well. 9. When the bell (to go) the lesson (to start). 10. Tell me if you (to feel) chilly and if you (to feel) chilly we (to go) straight home. 11. If he (to start) anything, I (to finish) it but I am interested if he (to start) it. 12. Do you know if they (to get married) and when they (to have) honeymoon? I want to be the first to congratulate them. 13. If it (to go on) like this we all (to be killed). I just wonder if it (to go on) like this. 14. I wonder if you (to have) time to play chess with me. If you (to have) time in the evening let's meet at Bob's place. 15. When does the weather forecast say it (to clear up) in our city? If it (to clear up) at the weekend we (to go) to the country. 16. I doubt if he (to remember) to send us a telegram when he (to arrive) in Moscow. 17. None of us knows when the delegation (to arrive) but when they (to arrive) we (to meet) them. 18. I want to know if they (to pass) the test but if they (to pass) it successfully they (to get) the job. 19. Who will tell me when the match (to begin)? 20. Don't you know when the train (to start)?

Exercise 8. Open the brackets using the verbs in the correct form. Determine the type of the subordinate clause and explain the choice of the tense expressing a future action.

1. I'd like to know if she (to marry) me but if she (to marry) me I (to be) the happiest man in the world. 2. He doubts if she (to come) to the rendezvous. If she (to come) he (to propose) to her.
3. I don't know yet when I (to see) Nellie but when I (to see) her I (to ask) her about her plans.
4. He doesn't say if he (to be able) to pay me his debt but if he (not to pay) it I (to be) in a tight corner. 5. He asks me if I (to be) free at the weekend and if I (to be) free when we (to meet) – on Saturday or Sunday. 6. Tell me, please, when you (to be) back and if anybody (to meet) you at the station. If nobody (to meet) you when you (to arrive) I (to call) a taxi. 7. I wonder when they

(to move) to a new flat and if they (to repair) it before they (move). 8. I don't know yet when I (to be ready) but when I (to be ready) I (to call) you. 9. We ask the surgeon when he (to operate) on our father and if the operation (to take place) on Monday when they (to discharge) Father from hospital. 10. The children are eager to know if I (to take) them to the circus and if I (to be able) to do it on Sunday. 11. I don't know when they (to give) me a holiday this year but if I (to have) a holiday in August I (to go) to Batumi. 12. I'd like to know when we (to go) on a picnic. 13. Mother asks me when I (to come) home from school and if I (to help) her with the housework. Besides that she tells me if I (to buy) cheese she (to bake) a cheesecake. 14. I wonder if the weather (to be) fine on Sunday. 15. If the weather (to be) fine and if there (to be) no wind we (to go) to the sea. 16. I am not sure if we (to find) the way out and if the situation (to improve). 17. If he (to keep) late hours he (not to wake up) early the next morning. 18. I wonder if he (to keep) his word and if he (to write) to me every month. If he (to write) to me regularly I (to do) the same.

Exercise 9. Complete the following sentences.

1. If you get drunk again 2. If you go hungry 3. When she returns 4. If you lose the watch 5. When he dies 6. If you are not careful 7. As soon as he spends the money 8. If you stay out till late 9. While Mother is away 10. Until I know the truth 11. Before Mother comes 12. If he doesn't stop smoking 13. Until he apologizes 14. Unless you keep it in the refrigerator 15. When I recover 16. When they are hungry 17. If you fail the exam 18. As soon as the day breaks 19. If the child gets into mischief 20. While it is cold 21. When the lecture is over 22. If you break your promise 23. After the baby is born 24. If he gives her flowers 25. After they save the money 26. As soon as he earns the money

Exercise 10. Supply *the Present Indefinite* or *Future Indefinite* of the verbs in the box.

try, scream, dream, die, take, allow, help, not talk, cry, pop off, make, start, tell, blame, catch, disappoint, have, rob, close, condemn, obey, choose, pass, work, be, try, give, have, go down, forget, profit, gain, drink, hang, run, remember, wait, not show up, break, have, not try, pay, wake, go

1. All right. We about it any more if it you cry. 2. I shall be a very rich man when the old fellow 3. If you yourself scarce, you the worst new year you ever remembered. 4. What sort of existence he if you him of the fruits of his ambition, if you the doors of public life against him, if you him to sterile failure? 5. He all this when he grows up. 6. Oh, well,

the deal for a couple of days. 7. If he then I'll have to do something else. 8. "I don't want her to go. It her heart." "I'm sorry, but she to". 9. Why you to go to sleep. I you up for the medicine. 10. I a penny until I am forced. 11. Whatever happens to me I never her. 12. Now, Willie, if I ever you getting in such a mess as that again I never you anywhere! 13. I anybody to mock at you and I always you when you in trouble. 14. If you to run away from your father once more I you a good whipping. 15. Rest your hat: you plenty of time to gossip when the sun 16. You your exams successfully if you hard. 17. I never what I have seen. I of it every night till I 18. If you my mother she me all my life long. She's always nagging at me. 19. If you orders you will be perfectly safe. 20. Mr. Brush, if you to leave the room I so the whole house'll be in here. 21. I shall clear out when I and not a minute before. 22. We know that it a man little if he the whole world and loses the soul. 23. He himself one of these days, if he himself to death. 24. Well, by God, if there's any publicity I you out of town.

Exercise 11. Give Georgian equivalents to the following proverbs. Use them in short situations of your own.

1. If the blind lead the blind, both shall fall into the ditch. 2. When the cat's away, the mice will play. 3. If you run after two hares, you will catch neither. 4. Jest with an ass and he will flap you in the face with his tail. 5. Don't halloo till you are out of the wood. 6. Scratch my back and I'll scratch yours. 7. Tread on a worm and it will turn. 8. If you swear, you will catch no fish. 9. Don't trouble trouble until trouble troubles you. 10. When rogues fall out, honest men come by their own. 11. None so deaf as those who will not hear. 12. When the cat is away the mice will play. 13. Show me a liar and I'll show you a thief.

Exercise 12. Give Georgian equivalents to the following proverbs. Use them in short situations of your own.

1. When the heart is afire, some sparks will fly out at the mouth. 2. If you agree to carry the calf, they'll make you carry the cow. 3. If you throw mud enough, some of it will stick. 4. Keep a thing seven years and you will find a use for it. 5. When flatterers meet, the devil goes to dinner. 6. Roll my log and I'll roll yours. 7. A drowning man will catch at a straw. 8. Don't cross the bridges before you come to them. 9. Don't throw out your dirty water before you get in fresh. 10. If the sky falls we shall catch larks. 11. When guns speak it is too late to argue. 12. None so blind as those who will not see. 13. Take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves.

Exercise 13. Translate the following sentences into English paying special attention to the form of the verb expressing a future action.

1. თუ შენი ძმა არ მიატოვებს სიგარეტის მოწევას და ღვინის დალევას, თავის ჯანმრთელობას საფრთხეს შეუქმნის. 2. როგორც კი ახალ ამბავს გავიგებ, დაგირეკავ, ძალიან გვიანიც რომ იყოს. ვიცი, რომ შენც ძალიან გაინტერესებს ჩემი ამბავი. 3. როდესაც მორჩები წიგნის წერას, მაჩვენებ? – ვფიქრობ, ერთ თვეში მოვრჩები. იმედი მაქვს, რომ მოგეწონება. 4. თუ შენ ისევ ასეთ შეცდომას დაუშვებ, იცოდე, არ გაპატიებ. 5. საინტერესოა, რას იტყვის მამაშენი, როდესაც ამ ამბავს შეიტყობს. 6. ყველას გვაინტერესებს, როდის შეიცვლება ამინდი.

7. თუ შენ შემპირდები, რომ არავის ეტყვი, ერთ საიდუმლოს გაგანდობ.

8. როგორც კი გათავისუფლდები, დაგირეკავ. სახლში იყავი ჩემს დარეკვამდე.

9. ხომ არ იცი, რომელ საათზე დაბრუნდებიან ისინი დღეს? თუ ადრე დაბრუნდებიან, მე მათ დაეურეკავ და ყველაფერს მოვუყვები. 10. მე მას კარგ საჩუქარს მივუტან, თუ დაბადების დღეზე დამპატიჟებს. 11. თუ ამინდი კარგი იქნება და ზღვა მშვიდი, ჩვენ ნაცით გავისეირნებთ. 12. მე შევძლებ ზაფხულის არდადაგებზე ზღვაზე წასვლას, თუ სამსახურში შეებულების ფულს მომცემენ. 13. თუ ნისლი გაიფანტება, თვითმფრინავი დროზე აფრინდება. 14. ფულს არ გამოგიგზავნი, სანამ არ მეტყვი, რის ყიდვას აპირებ. 15. როდესაც დღეს მას შეეხვდები, ნანას შესახებ შეეკითხები. 16. თუ ამ საღამოს ჩემთან მოხვალ, კარგ მუსიკას მოგასმენინებ. 17. ჯონი აუცილებლად დაგეხმარება, თუ სთხოვ. 18. როგორც კი უკეთესად იგრძნობს თავს, სამსახურში გამოვა.

19. მატარებელზე დაგვაგვიანდება, თუ არ ვიჩქარებთ. 20. რას გააკეთებს შენი ძმა დღეს, როდესაც სახლში დაბრუნდება? 21. დეპეშა აუცილებლად გამომიგზავნე, როგორც კი ლონდონში ჩახვალ. 22. თუ დამაგვიანდა სახლში მოსვლა, არ დამელოდოთ და ივახშმეთ, მაგრამ ძალიან შევეცდები, რომ დროზე დავბრუნდე. 23. თუ კარგად არ ისწავლით, სამსახურს ვერ იშოვით. 24. მათ ძალიან გაუკვირდებათ, როდესაც თქვენთან მნახავენ. 25. სახლში რომ მოვალ საღამოს, დაგეხმარები, თუ ძალიან დაღლილი არ ვიქნები. 26. ბავშვებს სასეირნოდ წავიყვან, თუ არ იწვიმა. 27. დამირეკეთ და აუცილებლად შემატყობინეთ, როდის იქნებით თავისუფალი, რომ თქვენთან მოვიდე. 28. მე არსად არ წავალ, სანამ დედა არ მეტყვის წადიო. 29. მე არ დავლევ არც ერთ ჭიქა ღვინოს, სანამ ექიმები არ დამრთავენ ნებას. 30. თუ ცუდი ამინდი იქნება, ჩვენ არსად არ წავალთ, სახლში დავრჩებით და ტელევიზორს ვუყურებთ.

Exercise 14. Translate the following sentences into English paying special attention to the form of the verb expressing a future action.

1. როდესაც დედა ჩემი წარმატების შესახებ შეიტყობს, მას ძალიან გაუხარდება. 2. როდესაც ლონდონში ვიქნები მომავალ წელს, ბუკინგემის სასახლეს ვინახულებ. 3. როდესაც ამ წიგნს წაიკითხავ, იქიდან ახალ სიტყვებსა და გამოთქმებს ამოიწერ, რომლებსაც შემდეგ გამოვიყენებ მეტყველებაში.

4. როდესაც მათი დახმარება დამჭირდება, მე თეითონ დაეურეკავ. 5. თუ ამ წამალს დალევ, თავს უკეთესად იგრძნობ. 6. თუ მან დაგირეკათ, მისამართი გამოართვი. მინდა ვესტუმრო მათ, როდესაც ლონდონში ვიქნები. 7. ხვალ სამსახურის შემდეგ ამ კაფეში ვისადილებთ, თუ დაკეტილი არ იქნება. 8. თუ უხეშად ლაპარაკს არ მიატოვებ, ყველა შენი მეგობარი ზურგს შეგაქცევს და მარტო დარჩები. 9. რას იზამ, თუ ისინი სახლში არ დაგხვდნენ? – მე მათ წინასწარ დაეურეკავ, სანამ სახლიდან გავალ. 10. თუ საყიდლებზე წავალ, შენც თან წაგიყვან და ლამაზ თოჯინას გიყიდი. 11. რა ვუპასუხო მათ, თუ შემეკითხებიან შენ სადა ხარო? 12. როგორც კი სახლში მივალ, ციე შხაპს მივიღებ. 13. თუ დილის ხუთ საათზე არ ადგები, მატარებელს ვერ მიუსწრებ.

14. სანამ დედა სადილს გაამზადებს, მე ბავშვებს მივხედავ. 15. ავტობუსიდან ნუ ჩამოხვალ, სანამ არ დარწმუნდები, რომ ის გაჩერებულია. 16. სანამ ის სახლიდან გავა, ყველა ფანჯარას შეამოწმებს და ყველა ოთახში შუქსაც ჩააქრობს. 17. შენს დას ჩემგან მოკითხვა გადაეცი, როდესაც ნახავ.

18. წამოხვალ ჩემთან ერთად სასეირნოდ, როდესაც გაკვეთილებს მორჩები?

19. მდინარეში არ ვიბანაებ, სანამ არ გამოვჯანმრთელდები. 20. თუ გამოცდაზე ყველა შეკითხვას უპასუხებ, პროფესორი მაღალ ნიშანს დაგიწერს. 21. ის წიგნს აუცილებლად დამიბრუნებს, თუ არ დაკარგა. 22. თუ მათთან მიხვალთ, ძაღლი ეზოში არ შეგიშვებთ. ძალიან ავი ძაღლი ჰყავთ. 23. როდესაც სახლიდან გახვალთ, სინათლის ჩაქრობა არ დაგავიწყდეთ. 24. თუ ახლა გარეთ გახვალთ, დასველდებით, ძლიერ წვიმს. 25. როგორც კი ბიძა ფულს მისცემს, ის უცბად ახალ მანქანას იყიდის, მაგრამ მეეჭვება, რომ ბიცოლა ამის ნებას მისცემს ბიძამისს. 26. თუ შენ დედას სიმართლეს ეტყვი და არ მოატყუებ, ის ყველაფერს გაპატიებს და შეიძლება მეორეჯერაც გაგიშვას ზღვაზე მეგობრებთან.

27. როგორც კი ჯარიდან დაბრუნდება, ჩემი ძმისწული ცოლს შეირთავს. 28. თუ ბავშვს თბილად არ ჩააცვამთ, ის გაგიციებათ. 29. ჩვენ ექიმს არ გამოვიძახებთ, თუ ბებიამ თავი ძალიან ცუდად არ იგრძნო. 30. ყველანი გავციებით, თუ ფანჯარას არ დავხურავთ, აქ ორპირი ქარია.

The Present Continuous Tense

The Present Continuous is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb ***"to be"*** in the Present Indefinite and Participle I of the notional verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I am reading	Am I reading?	I am not (I'm not) reading
You are reading	Are you reading?	You are not (aren't) reading
He (she, it) is reading	Is he (she, it) reading?	He (she, it) is not (isn't) reading
We are reading	Are we reading?	We are not (aren't) reading
You are reading	Are you reading?	You are not (aren't) reading
They are reading	Are they reading?	They are not (aren't) reading

Participle I is formed by adding the suffix ***-ing*** to the stem of the verb.

If the stem ends in a mute ***-e***, the ***-e*** is dropped before adding ***-ing***:

take – taking, smile – smiling. ***But:*** *see – seeing, agree – agreeing.*

If the stem ends in a single consonant letter preceded by a short vowel of a stressed syllable, the consonant letter is doubled:

sit – sitting, dig – digging, nod – nodding, stir – stirring, run – running, compel – compelling, star – starring, occur – occurring, begin – beginning, forget – forgetting, submit – submitting.

The final ***-l***, ***-m***, ***-p*** are doubled in British English after unstressed syllables; in American English they are not doubled:

travel – travelling (Br. E.) – traveling (Am. E.), program – programming (Br. E.) – programing (Am. E.), worship – worshipping (Br. E.) – worshiping (Am. E.).

Verbs ending in ***-ie*** change the final ***-ie*** into ***y*** before taking the suffix ***-ing***:

lie – lying, die – dying, tie – tying.

The final ***-y*** remains unchanged in all cases:

play – playing, study – studying, try – trying, obey – obeying, copy – copying, say – saying.

The Present Continuous is used to express:

1. An action going on at the moment of speaking:

Mummy, what's the matter? Why are you crying?

Now listen to what I'm telling you.

I have no idea what you're talking about.

Note: The Present Continuous is not generally used with some verbs called stative verbs which can

be classified in the following way: verbs of sensory perception (***hear, notice, observe, smell, see, feel, etc.***); verbs of emotion and wish (***desire, wish, want, like, appreciate, admire, dislike, love, hate, detest, loathe, respect, prefer, need, fear, value, etc.***); verbs of thinking, of mental abilities (***believe, think, consider, forget, know, mean, agree, mind, realize, expect, remember, assume, recollect, understand, suppose, perceive, recognize, etc.***); verbs of possessing (***belong, have, own, possess, etc.***); some other verbs (***appear = seem, look = seem, be, have, cost, concern, hold, consist, contain, depend, differ, matter, seem, etc.***).

Do you see that man over there? I remember everything. I think he is right. What do you think about my friend? Do you like him? I value your opinion.

However, some stative verbs can be used in the Present Continuous when they change their meaning and denote a voluntary or deliberate action, thus becoming actional verbs:

Cf.: I feel cold (an involuntary action). – The blind man is feeling his way with a stick (a voluntary action).

"To feel" meaning *"to touch"* usually in order to learn something or *"to try to find something by touching"* can be used in the continuous aspect:

The doctor is feeling his pulse.

He was feeling for the keyhole in the dark.

Some more examples:

The soup tastes of onion. (an involuntary action) – The cook is tasting the soup. (a voluntary action)

The room smells of tobacco. (an involuntary action) – Why are you smelling the meat? (a voluntary action)

"To see" can be used in the Present Continuous when it means *"to meet by appointment", "to visit", "to examine", "to escort somebody home or to some place", "to make arrangements or enquiries", etc*:

The doctor is seeing the patient.

We are seeing them tomorrow.

Nick is seeing his girl-friend home.

The tourists are seeing the town.

"To hear" can be used in the Present Continuous when it means *"to listen formally to"* (complaints, evidence, etc.):

The court is hearing evidence this afternoon.

"To think" can be used in the Present Continuous when no opinion is given or asked for.

What are you thinking about?

"To have" can be used in the Present Continuous when it is used in word-combinations: ***to have***

dinner (supper, breakfast, etc.), to have a good time, to have a lesson (classes, etc.), to have a meeting (a conference, etc.), to have a smoke, to have guests, etc.

You can't see the director. He is having a conference with the press.

Pete is having a lesson at the moment.

We are having guests this evening.

"To expect" can be used in the Present Continuous when it acquires the meaning of *"to await"*.

She is expecting a baby in June.

We are expecting our old friends from Sokhumi tomorrow.

Some verbs of sense and mental perception (see, hear, feel, hate, want, understand) can be used in the Present Continuous when they express surprise, doubt, disbelief.

What are you wanting from me?

Why are you hating him so?

Is it right what I am hearing here?

Whom am I seeing!

Am I understanding you correctly?

The verb *"to be"* in the Present Continuous denotes certain state or quality characteristic of a person at the given moment.

You are being very selfish towards your mother.

He is being very obstinate not to admit failure.

You are being foolish to listen to him.

I can't recognize him: he is being very rude to the girl.

2. Actions generally characterizing the person denoted by the subject, bringing out the person's typical traits. Such sentences are emotionally coloured, expressing irritation, disapproval, praise, etc. In such sentences the adverbs ***"always", "constantly", "ever"*** are used.

Some people are always grumbling.

She is constantly complaining about ill-treatment.

You can hardly get through as she is constantly talking on the telephone.

I am always losing my spectacles.

3. Actions which are planned ahead and will take place in the near future. The action is regarded as something definitely settled (mostly verbs of motion, such as ***to move, to come, to go, to leave, to return, to start, etc.*** are used).

We are leaving tomorrow morning.

The ship is sailing it two days.

Exercise 1. Form *Participle I* from the following verbs.

a) To take, to save, to indicate, to raise, to capture, to arouse, to aspire, to dare, to bathe, to come, to captivate, to celebrate, to create, to debate, to ease, to elapse, to fire, to flake, to give, to grease, to heave, to inoculate, to joke, to live, to make, to note, to organize, to pave, to race, to shave, to waste, to allure, to lecture, to glare, to lure, to perspire, to ignore.

To be, to agree, to see, to decree, to free, to flee, to knee, to foresee, to dye, to toe, to shoe, to hoe, to fee.

b) To beg, to bet, to bid, to chat, to cut, to dot, to fit, to grip, to gun, to hit, to hem, to put, to plan, to nag, to nod, to rub, to begin, to permit, to dim, to forget, to admit, to run, to stab, to spin, to drop, to sum, to trim, to brim, to knot, to slip, to regret, to commit.

To jar, to stir, to bar, to fur, to refer, to star, to blur, to occur, to demur, to abhor, to confer.

To post, to stand, to grin, to brand, to herd, to bend, to beam, to bind, to blind, to blow, to break, to gulp, to send, to blurt, to tend, to gleam, to mean, to eat, to loan, to read, to creep, to coat, to book, to coat, to groom, to scream, to look, to coin, to proceed, to repeat.

To open, to listen, to glisten, to fasten, to limit, to profit, to jacket, to liken, to inherit, to prohibit, to broaden, to moisten, to lighten, to christen, to widen, to whiten, to hasten, to straighten, to imprison.

To glimmer, to offer, to suffer, to murmur, to differ, to conquer, to clatter, to recover, to discover, to linger, to lower, to water, to flatter, to alter, to bother, to pour, to offer, to matter, to mutter, to pester, to mother, to butter, to master, to offer.

To bear, to appear, to spear, to sneer, to fear, to wear, to rear, to disappear.

c) To expel, to conceal, to rebel, to impel, to compel, to control, to cancel, to travel, to quarrel, to reveal, to revel, to deal, to sail, to steal, to kneel, to boil, to broil, to peal, to level, to patrol, to signal, to marvel, to cancel, to propel, to label, to laurel, to initial, to reel, to peal, to fool, to spoil.

To program, to diagram, to telegram, to worship, to kidnap, to frolic, to kidnap, to hiccup.

To humbug, to picnic, to traffic, to drug.

To lie, to die, to tie.

To dry, to play, to cry, to stay, to delay, to employ, to destroy, to obey, to pay, to satisfy, to comply, to marry, to obey, to imply, to study, to enjoy, to tidy, to vary, to betray, to fly, to copy.

Exercise 2. Comment on the use of *the Present Continuous* in the following sentences.

1. "You are taking a very light tone about it, Sophie." 2. I'm afraid the Rector is not seeing anybody at present. 3. "My darling. You're feeling better, aren't you?" Helen cried. 4. "Stop it! Stop what you're saying!" cried Mr Southwick, very red in the face. 5. So now, the scene is set

and the artistes are waiting in the wings. 6. "Fine piece of work, your lordship. They're all wanting to shake hands with you, sir." 7. He looked about him with interest. "What are you doing?" 8. "Pattie, what are you talking about? You're saying mad things." "Leave me. I'm telling you the truth. You should be grateful. You said you wanted the truth." 9. Do shut up, both of you. You're being like those people who are never bored again. 10. He knows that, he won't worry, he's feeling better already. 11. "This bluejay," he said, laughing, "is still following us. I wonder if there isn't something I could find to feed him." 12. "You're sailing next week, aren't you?" he said. 13. It's odd to think that in England now they're shivering round the fire," he said. 14. I know what you're thinking all the time, and you've got to stop it. 15. Naturally, you're trying to protect your client. 16. The San Francisco papers are carrying a story to the effect that Mr Moar had embezzled twenty-five thousand dollars from the Products Refining Company. 17. "Pleasant weather we are having," he says. 18. "I understand you are seeing the President." "Mr Smith has not yet asked for an audience." 19. Only sometimes if she's not feeling very well or something she picks on a thing in a book and says it refers to her. 20. Let him learn to box his corner. That's what I'm always saying to that Rosicrucian there: take exercise. 21. "But sometimes you do wear slacks?" "Only in the house sometimes. When I'm cleaning. I never wear them in the street." 22. You don't seem to realize the world you're living in, my dear. 23. It's getting a bit nappy in the morning now, isn't it? Real autumn weather.
24. It's my candid nature. It's always betraying me. I hate sham and hypocrisy. Poppycock is foolish as it is. There is no need to embellish the word. I am saying what runs through my mind, as you do. 25. I never really heard of such a thing. I'm just not taking you seriously and I do wish you'd stop talking about it. You've never given me a good reason. 26. All that I'm asking is a perfectly logical extension of a policy, which has already been established. 27. You are being malicious because my thrust has struck home. 28. I'm telling you that if that man is in trouble every second counts and you're stealing that time from him 29. Captain D. is taking Flight Two to Rome tonight.

Exercise 3. Comment on the meaning of the construction *"to be going to"*. Translate the sentences into Georgian.

1. "I'm sure I'm going to die," she whispered. 2. Mrs Honeychurch, I'm going to do what I am always supposed to do. 3. And you are going to implore him, to beg him to keep silence?
4. How are you going to stop him talking about it? 5. "I meant," said Cecil stiffly, "that she is going to marry me." 6. "Well, I'm going to turn in," he said with a loud yawn. 7. "What's coming in the 1970 s," Mel predicted, "is going to be worse, far worse." 8. Nobody's going to break your heart, if it hasn't been done already. 9. But I do know that you aren't going to start

shooting. 10. You're not going to pretend that any man would behave like that now. 11. It's going to be an important piece of evidence in more ways than one." 12. When I ask when my daughter is going to be paid I can't get a civil answer. 13. "Look," she said, "just because I go to bed with a man isn't to say I'm going to rub shoulders with him." 14. I see that I'd better handle the interview myself if I'm going to get anywhere. 15. Personally, I'm not going to get antagonistic until I find out a few things. 16. You're not going to deny that all my life I've been hardworking, decent, respectable, and straightforward. 17. "But what are you going to do when you leave England?" 18. Have some coffee. You're not going to rush right off, are you?
19. Mason said, "We're going to go and see the sheriff as soon as we get there." 20. You aren't going to be invited. 21. "I'd drink nitroglycerine tonight." "That's just about what you're going to get," she promised.

Exercise 4. Use *the Present Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1."What you (to do) with that?" "I can sell it for fifty dollars," she said. 2. Miss Brent and I (to get) you breakfast. Can you bring some sticks to light the fire? 3. You're full of poisons Anybody can see that You (to die). Why don't you think about it? 4. "You can just shut up, you (to leave) here in three minutes, the real doctor (to come) and I don't want you arsing around." 5. That girl's a liar. She's crazy anyway. I (to tell) you the truth. 6."Why is it so quiet? The police (to wait) for me in there?" he asks himself. 7. A really good astronomer can tell when a comet (to come) too near him by the warning buzz of the revolving sticks. 8. "Gracie (to get private) all of sudden. I don't want a lot of Peeping Toms lying on my bed watching a
9. "Look, Nick, you've been rather a trial tonight. Do go to bed." "I (not to go) to bed. I'm lonely." 10. The maid said, "The boy (to wait) outside for the key." 11. "Oh, I only (to do) that for the present, and I (to gain) a great deal of valuable experience". 12. "You (to try) to blackmail me?" Bolding asked. "Just I (to warn) you," Mason said. 13. "You (to put) me in a very difficult position, Mason," Bolding said irritably. 14. Now dry yourself up and I'll take you back to Paddington in a taxi. I (to go) to the country. You can't stay here. 15. "Who you (to interview) tomorrow or shouldn't I ask?" 16. "They (to throw) a novelty dinner tonight. You'll like it." 17. Lie down, lie down. I (to go) to the hospital to get the medicine. 18. "You (to go) to the airport dressed like that?" he said incredulously. 19. Here is a retainer cheque, together with a letter stating that you (to act) as my lawyer. 20. Oh, Angela, we simply (to die) to know who those absolutely marvellous people are at the next table to the door. 21. I want to see what he said and what he's done. And I want to know what he (to try) to do. 22. You realize what you (to do), I hope. You (to put) a halter round Ralph Paton's neck as surely as you (to sit) in that chair.
23. What's the idea? Damned if I know, unless she (to try) to build up an alibi of some kind.

24. Why you always (to putter)? 25. I (to have) an exhibition in February. 26. What I do think is that you (to be) very rude to somebody who is prepared to like you a good deal. 27. It's the future I (to think) of. He's so damned idle. 28. I (not to ask) you to cut it out completely. 29. "I don't know what you (to talk) about actually, Arnold." "I (to talk) about alternatives." 30. So scientists (to pin) their hopes on exchanging messages with alien civilizations, if they exist. 31. I (not to disturb) your work, sir, I hope. 32. I (to become) old and queer. If Ned comes he will not want me. In the city where he (to live) men are perpetually young.

Exercise 5. Use *the Present Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. Rose, please stop moving about. You (to make) me sea-sick. 2. "Where you (to go)?" "Good morning, sir. I (to take) madame's luggage to the nine-thirty train." "I (not to try) to excuse him. Of course it was indiscreet but you're a woman of the world." 3. Was that Mr Payson on the phone? He (to come) to the party? 4. "What you (to do) now?" "I (to prepare) for my seminar." 5. He swam towards her and, getting out, addressed her in English." You (to have) a late swim?" 6. "What's the devil's the matter with you, Henry," he said. "You (to play) like a fool". 7. "No, don't interrupt me now, Mr Mason, because I (to drive) you into a corner by a relentless cross-examination." 8. Look, look, a dog is trying to jump over the fence. 9. "You (to bring) someone to the dance after the play on Saturday?" "Yes." 10. "What you (to laugh at), you big hyena?" said the burglar. "Wipe that smile off your face or I'll plug you." 11. "We (to have) trouble at the Rimini," said Mr Cridley. "The food is really quite inedible, and the smell of meat is always in the house. It seems Miss Burdock (to lose) her sense of values." 12. I (to bring) my sister over from America next month to keep house for me. 13. "I (to progress) slowly," Eddie said, looking at the picture of Mary and Jesus over his head. "I am planning for the future." 14. Go and look out of the window! Whom is the dog barking at? 15. Take Father's umbrella! Don't you see it (to rain) already? 16. The old-fashioned respect for the young (to die out) fast. 17. In the West of England this evening hundreds of policemen (to look for) a man who escaped from Princeville Prison early this morning. 18. We aren't here to try anyone for anything. We just (to try) to determine how Fremont C. Sabin met his death, up in his mountain cabin. 19. You've got to be careful, you know. A lot of these lounge-lizard fellows going about I just (to warn) you, my dear. I don't like to see you doing anything unsuitable. 20. The dog which (to sit) between two baskets is Roombo. 21. There's a couple of slants to be taken care of first. We (to keep an eye) on her and (to wait). 22. "You (to do) anything tonight? What about going out on the binge?" "No, I'm busy." 23. It's my candid nature. It always (to betray) me. 24. As it is, your furniture (to eat) up your income, and you (to live) like rats in a hole, with nowhere to go to.
25. You (to put) it much too importantly. There's nothing to be faced. 26. You (not to go) to bed

till you've helped me shift this. 27. "I mean just this," said Poirot. "Every one of you in this room (to hide) something from me. Yes, yes, I know what I (to say)." 28. Well," he said, "while you (to wait) for your family may I invite you to join me in a cocktail?" 29. I (to see) a good many churches on my way south. 30. "Your chastity's too well known, darling." "You (to be) sarcastic." 31. Mrs Quest said hastily, "Nonsense, you (to imagine) it, he couldn't have done it."

Exercise 6. Compare and choose the proper form.

1. I'm not trying / I don't try to split hairs with you! I'm telling / I tell you that if that man is in trouble every second counts / is counting, and you're stealing / you steal that time from him.

2. It's getting / It gets late. It's such a long drive back to Kyoto. 3. As a matter of fact I'm not here. You're just seeing / You see things. 4. I am thinking / I think about it all the time, so if you are to come at all you must come soon. 5. You are looking / look much better and I am glad of that because Mr Brownlow comes / is coming to see you this morning. 6. Nothing destroys / is destroying the quality of life so much as insomnia. 7. I don't usually do / I am not usually doing this kind of thing. 8. Wherever she is going / goes, she always takes / is taking that dog of hers. 9. If anyone rings / is ringing, I don't want / am not wanting to speak to them. 10. The fact that she nurses / is nursing that man makes / is making it easier for Carl. 11. Now he travels / is travelling round the world before he retires / is retiring to some quiet village. 12. The military mind requires / is requiring uniformity and conformity. 13. Children often suffer/ are suffering from terrible, illogical fears. 14. A strict schedule makes/ is making it impossible for the tourist to wander off on his own. 15. The trains leave / are leaving and arrive / are arriving every few minutes. 16. Large modern cities impose / are imposing their own living conditions on the people who inhabit / are inhabiting them. 17. Traffic fumes pollute / are polluting the atmosphere. 18. Many women squander / are squandering vast sums of money each year to replace their clothes. 19. Cities breed / are breeding crime and violence. 20. Humour helps / is helping us to maintain a correct sense of values. 21. Human beings oppose / are opposing each other on a great many issues.

Exercise 7. Compare and choose the proper form.

1. It is a quarter past seven. Ann and Pete get up / are getting up. 2. It is seven o'clock. The alarm-clock rings / is ringing. 3. During the day, when he does not talk / is not talking to his fellow passengers, he sits / is sitting on deck reading or else gazes / is gazing out to see through an old-fashioned telescope. 4. "Why is the boy crying / does the boy cry?" repeated the other man, puzzled. 5. I'm so sorry, we're being / are inefficient. 6. They send / are sending down a chap tonight to vet the stone. 7. Believe me, my heart is bleeding / bleeds for the unfortunate

woman, but I only try /am trying to do my duty. 8. We stood now in the bedroom. "What are you looking for? / do you look for?" "Blanket." "Bottom drawer there." 9. Most university courses last / are lasting three years. 10. The person who makes / is making the film is the director. 11. I go / am going skiing in winter. 12. Companies often borrow / are borrowing money from banks to finance investments. 13. We learn / are learning irregular verbs this week. 14. She always drives / is driving her car slowly. 15. "Where is your son?" "He plays / is playing football in the yard." 16. "We are speaking / speak of Ralph Paton," she said. 17. It is stupid, I know, and I'm always saying / always say I'll cut most of it out – but well, you know what happens. 18. You're being / are very foolish. Do you know anything? 19. I'm trying / try not to see Eva again, but you know it isn't easy. 20. He's always coming / always comes to me for orders; but he's honest, and a glutton for work. 21. The Perfys are giving / give a dinner and theatre party and Miles won't be here – he's flying / flies to South Bent to see the Notre Dame – California game. 22. When the nuns are receiving / receive the sacrament these curtains are closed.

Exercise 8. Compare and choose the proper form.

1. Well, in the first place girls never marry / are marrying the men they flirt / are flirting with. Girls don't think / aren't thinking it right. 2. Sam reads / is reading a lot of books, but he makes / is making very many mistakes. 3. Sometimes when it is very hot I change / am changing my plans and go / am going for a walk to the forest. 4. If we ever meet / are meeting again, we don't know / are not knowing each other. 5. I read / am reading books in the evening. 6. Where is Boris? I look / am looking for him. – He has / is having dinner. 7. She listens / is listening to an Italian song but she does not understand / is not understanding what it means / is meaning.

8. The phone rings / is ringing. Take the receiver, please. 9. Mary drives /is driving to her office every day. 10. Don't make so much noise: mother sleeps / is sleeping. 11. I see you're staring / stare at the handkerchiefs, my dear. Aren't there a lot? 12. "What's the matter? Are you trembling / do you tremble?" "I'm only a little cold." 13. You understand / are understanding, Sheppard, I'm telling / tell you this in confidence. It's to go no further. 14. "I wait / am waiting for the evening train. It's late," he said apologetically. 15. She's always teasing / always teases everybody about everything. 16. Is someone coming / does someone come here tonight?

17. You take my word for it, Mrs Ramsay, that chain you're wearing / wear will never be worth a cent less than it is today. 18. What is it? You hide / are hiding something from me? 19. The sun goes / is going from East to West. 20. The plane arrives / is arriving in half an hour.

Exercise 9. Compare and choose the proper form.

1. It doesn't take / isn't taking long to get to work. 2. He constantly complains / is complaining about bad service. 3. Your words sound /are sounding encouraging. 4. I rarely bake / am rarely baking cakes. Only on special occasions. 5. The bell rings / is ringing at eight sharp. 6. The earth goes / is going round the sun. 7. Maize doesn't grow / isn't growing in Britain. 8. He arrives / is arriving home early. 9. Ice melts / is melting at 100°C. 10. Gretta, dear, what are you thinking / do you think about? 11. It rains / is raining heavily outside. 12. Ellen reads / is reading a book on the veranda. 13. They build / are building a new school in our street. 14. They quarrel / are quarreling again. 15. His German gets / is getting better. 16. The rain just begins /is just beginning. 17. You are / are being very silly, my poor child. 18. You are / are being nice to me. What do you want from me? 19. I'm sorry, Joe. I forget / am forgetting my duties. I'll show you your room. 20. You've made little Russia all round you. You live / are living in a dream world.

Exercise 10. Use *the Present Continuous* or *the Present Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. "You (to know) what he (to think)?" he said. "More or less." 2. "I'm frightfully bumped, and I (to believe) my nose (to bleed)," said Ruth still more plaintively. 3. "I (not to know) what he (to look for), and I (not to care)," she blazed. 4. So bad that he (to refuse) to dress for dinner. He (to say) that if the boys (not to like) him in a flannel shirt, he won't come in to dinner at all. 5. If you (to fall) from a high tower, you (to fall) quicker and quicker and quicker. 6. I didn't hear the words for some time, as is often the case when you (to read) a book. 7. Now you'll see what I (to mean) when I (to say) that a robber is a beggar that (not to know) he's a beggar. 8. Now stop it. Stop it, I say. You always (to try) to get into a fight. 9. I (to go) to the shore tomorrow to swim off this weight. 10. If my brother Marcus (to ring up) tell him I'm not available. 11. She (to pass) for twenty-five, is probably around thirty, (to wear) her clothes well and (to have) plenty of clothes to wear. 12. Mason said, "I heard the sound of a shot. An official (to tell) me there's a man overboard. That (to mean) anything to you?" 13. "Well, where is Pops? He should be here. They (to send) all passengers back to their staterooms". 14. A man's overboard. We (to do) everything that can be done. Passengers will simply be in the way. The purser (to make) a roll call, to find out who (to miss). 15. You (to dwell) much in the past, Mr Sole, Mr Cridley? Your school fellow, my husband, (to do): he rarely (to leave) it. 16. Please go away. We (to have) a nice time. We're in the part I (to like) best. 17. "You (to know) what judge I (to mean)?" "The one who always (to peer) out of his window and who (to look) like an owl?" 18. Gee, why's that? What all the audience (to applaud) for? I must have missed something. 19. "How about coming up to the room tonight, eh? – little talk?" "I'd like to, but I (to leave) this morning for

Oklahoma City." 20. You (to think) he (not to love) me? 21. It (not to matter) what you (to put on). Find an ordinary evening dress – anything will do. Go now, before anybody else (to come). 22. While you (to wait) for your family may I invite you to join me in a cocktail? 23. We (not to talk) about making money, we (to talk) about suspicion. 24. You (not to understand). I (not to leave) the interest here as an account. I (not to want) it. Just turn it back into the bank. I (not to believe) in interest. 25. How often you (to take) Sophie with you? 26. He always (to ask) questions like that. I wish I could remember half of them. 27. "I wonder if I could see the Rector for a little minute?" "I'm afraid the Rector (not to see) anybody at present." 28. In other words, Paul, you (to try) to talk me out of making a fast play on that wrist watch.

Exercise 11. Use *the Present Continuous* or *the Present Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. "You (not to know) what you (to talk) about. Go look." 2. "You are drunk and I am tired. Please go away." "Go to sleep, child, I (not to disturb) you." "Ssh, Sophie (to read). You (to like) to read?" 3. "I (to wait) for you to explain, Nick. I (not to understand)." "There is no need for you to understand." "I (not to judge) you. I (to know) that there's probably a good explanation." 4. "Whose nephew?" "Mr Arnold Jackson's." "I (not to think) we (to speak) of the same person," answered Bateman, frigidly. 5. "My Dad (to be going) to hit the roof when he (to hear) I (to play) another girl." "I think you're a good sport not to mind." 6. Well, I always (to give) her things. She either (to break) them or (to lose) them or (to forget) where she got them. 7. We (to go) to his place next year after I to (finish) school. 8. "I just (to want) to say before you (to go) that they (to make) an awful row about nothing." 9. I (to gather) that spring (to approach). I am not an observant man, but as the days (to go) by, the signs (to begin) to multiply. Even for me that (to mean) that spring is at hand. 10. It (to get) colder, let's sit down by the fireside. 11. The man turned round and said: "What you (to want)? Why you (to follow) me?" 12. It is only a few degrees above zero and it is snowing. 13. "You always (to look for) a fine girl, you know, to be the mother of your children?" "You just (to waste) your time, Herb. It (not to get) you anywhere to make fun of such things with me. Save your breath, Herb."

14. There (to come) a time to end everything; like leaving a party when you really (to enjoy) yourself. And we've had good times here, haven't we? 15. "Oh, by the way, you (to know) where your sister (to stay) at the present time in Honolulu?" 16. If a husband (to be) notoriously blind to infidelity, I suppose a love (to have) the opposite fault – he (to see) it everywhere.

17. This is Mr Slush's latest book. It (to have) a wonderful sale. 18. I sometimes (to wonder) if she ever (to eat) anything. That's why she's got so thin. 19. I (not to believe) a word of it.

20. "Willie! Where's Willie!" "Gracious! He (to wander out) alone. Oh, hurry, look for him.

Something might get him!" 21. "What a surprise! I couldn't believe it was you. What on earth you (to do) here?" 22. You never (to talk) anything but nonsense. 23. "What the boy (to say) when Mother (to give) him a cup of milk?" "He (to say): "I (not to want) any!" 24. It's not very easy getting dressed for a dance if you (to live) in a caravan. 25. "And what the devil you (to do) anyway?" "Just paying a call," explained George." Doing a what?" "I (to pay) a formal call at this house". 26. Tell him to go to the office as soon as he (to come) back. 27. "You often (to copy) from a textbook?" "As often as I can. It (to improve) my spelling very much." 28. You (to make) tea? Can I have some with you? Gosh, you (to look) smashing. 29. "You (to keep) an eye on him?" "The trouble is, Mr Nox, I cannot cast a wide net. I (not to have) the personnel to watch the house and our party's movements constantly." 30. Men often (to propose) for practice. 31. I (to know) perfectly well that I (to look) quite plain after my German lesson. 32. There is a great deal to discuss. You see tomorrow he (to leave) for the United States. 33. "It (to get) dreadfully late," she said softly. "Show me your new drawing and then I must go home."

Exercise 12. Ask questions to the following sentences beginning with the words in brackets.

1. The man is sitting in the armchair. (What? Where?) 2. The boy is running fast because it is raining. (What? Why?) 3. They are going to Italy for their honeymoon. (What? Where? What for?) 4. This evening I'm staying at my friend's for dinner. (When? Where? What?) 5. She is staying at a hotel. (Who? What? Where?) 6. The Browns are saving now because they are going to Kobuleti on holiday in a month. (Why? What? Where?) 7. They are talking about their summer plans. (What? About what?) 8. She is resigning at the end of September. (What? When?) 9. People are always sending me funny books to read. (What? What for?) 10. They are cutting the twigs to make a good fire? (What? Why?) 11. The boys are laughing at the monkey. (What? At what?) 12. At the moment I'm laughing because I'm so happy. (What? Why?)
13. He's divorcing his wife as he is in love with another woman. (Why? Who? What?) 14. They are staying in Moscow for a week. (How long? Where? What?) 15. I am seeing my friend on Sunday. (When? Whom? What?) 16. I am putting on my coat because I am going for a walk. (Why? What?)

Exercise 13. Ask all types of questions to the following sentences.

1. She is wearing sun-glasses today. 2. We are listening to a French song. 3. He is ruining his health by smoking so much. 4. Mother is giving me the money tonight. 5. They are having lunch in the garden. 6. She is constantly thinking of you. 7. He is sleeping on Nick's sofa until he finds a place of his own. 8. The cat is smelling the fish. 9. They are arguing about trifles. 10. Niko and Ann are getting married in June. 11. My brother is looking forward to his trip to Italy. 12. Julie

is doing a lot of exercises. 13. Pete is getting on well with his English. 14. Mum's feeling his forehead because he may be running a temperature. 15. Jim is sitting at our table. 16. Mother is seeing a doctor this afternoon. 17. Our furniture is eating up our income. 18. They are having an exhibition in February. 19. His father is trying to talk sense to him. 20. The man is taking personal charge of the office.

Exercise 14. Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box putting them in the correct form of *the Present Continuous*.

talk, measure, look, accuse, consider, ask, set up, happen, have, take, rebuild, be, starve, arrange, invent, try, feel, strike, cut up, wait, come, get on, get, pass, make, borrow, drive, grow

1. The officers particularly secretive about it. 2. He always things when he thinks it suits him. 3. Oh, it's nothing. It's only a little matter that we about for Thursday. 4. But I I could eat lots and lots – oh, dear! 5. "What are you going to do?" "I over to the other side of the island. I'll start at five." 6. Lockert's my name. I cocoa down in British Guiana now. Hot there! 7. I not to act hard-boiled. I to act like a gentleman. 8. I not very well tonight. I think I shall go straight to bed. 9. "What you for?" "Oh, better living conditions," he said finally. 10. I don't know why you always me of premeditation. 11. He's won the war, and he the city. 12. "Mrs Ellis about her breakfast. And Sadie for orders." "Tell Sadie I 13. And money isn't your reason for waiting to do this portrait. You a silly flirtation with Mrs Griggs. 14. It was an experience that cannot be explained, although I suppose it always to men and women in all sorts of places. 15. "I for my rights," she said. 16. "One gets more used to death as death approaches." "You a lot of foolish poppy-cock." 17. I accepting that job in your office. 18. We a great time here in London. 19. We always smell cooking when we your house. 20. He always money but he always pays me back. 21. It's time we turned on the central heating. It colder every day. 22. What's the matter? Why at me like that? 23. You've only just started the job, haven't you? How you ? 24. I how wide the room is. 25. You a fuss about nothing. 26. He much interest in his work.

Exercise 15. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Present Continuous, Present Indefinite* and *Future Indefinite* where necessary.

1. მე შენ არ გემუქრები. ჩემს გეგმაში არ შედის შენი დაღუპვა. 2. მე მიყვარს ზამთარი, როდესაც თოვს, მაგრამ სამწუხაროდ ჩვენს ქალაქში იშვიათად თოვს. 3. რას აკეთებს ახლა ჩვენი დეკანი? – პროფესორებთან თათბირს ატარებს.

გამოცდების შესახებ ელაპარაკება. 4. ნელი, რატომ არ მისმენ? რაზე ფიქრობ? კიდევ ერთხელ გაგიმეორებ, თუ მომისმენ. 5. დედა, შიმშილით ეკვდები, რამე მაჭამე. – ახლა სადილს ვამზადებ, მალე იქნება და ცოტა მოიცადე. 6. ვის ურეკავ? შეყვარებულს ურეკავ? ეხედავ, ყოველ ნახევარ საათში რეკავ.

7. შაბათს საღამოს მეგობრები ანასთან ვიკრიბებით. მისი ძმა ლონდონიდან ჩამოდის და სუფრა აქვს. 8. ხვალ რას აკეთებ? – განსაკუთრებულს არაფერს. მთელი დღე სახლში ვიქნები, ტელევიზორს ვუყურებ ან კომპიუტერთან დავჯდები და მეგობრებს ვეჭორავები. 9. ვინ არის ის კაცი, რომელიც ხელს გიქნევს? – ეს პეტრეა. დღეს ჩვენ ერთად მიედიეართ ფეხბურთის მატჩზე და რაღაცა უნდა მითხრას. 10. როდესაც კი არ მიეალ, მათი უმცროსი ვაჟი კომპიუტერთან ზის და ვიღაცას ეთამაშება. 11. ჯონი, რატომ ზიხარ ასე შორს დაფიდან? იქედან კარგად ხედავ? 12. ნახე, მზე ჩადის! რა ლამაზი სანახაობაა! მალე დაბნელდება და აგრილდება. 13. ჯონი ჯერ კიდევ სავარჯიშოებს წერს. ის ჩვეულებრივ გვიანობამდე ზის და მეცადინეობს, რადგან მასწავლებელი მათ ყოველთვის ბევრ სავარჯიშოს აძლევს დასაწერად. 14. რატომ ხარ ყოველთვის ტელეფონზე ჩამოკიდებული? ვის ელაპარაკები ამდენს? შენ მე ნერვებს მიშლი. 15. რას აკეთებს შენი ძმა? – ის ეზოში ფეხბურთს თამაშობს მეგობრებთან ერთად. ის ამას ყოველდღე აკეთებს. 16. მამა სად არის? – ეზოშია. მანქანას რეცხავს. ჩვეულებრივ, ის ამას საღამოს სამსახურის შემდეგ აკეთებს. 17. რატომ დგახარ კარებში. შემოდი, ჩვენ ახლა ვსადილობთ და ძალიან გაგვახარებ, თუ ჩვენთან ერთად ისადილებ. 18. როდის გაქვთ არდადაგები? – იანვარში. – სადმე არ მიდიხარ? – არა, რადგან მამას უნდა დავეხმარო მანქანის შეკეთებაში.

19. თქვენ მე მეძებთ? – არა, ჩემს ძმას ვეძებ. რაღაცა უნდა გადავცე. 20. დღეს 4 საათზე ჩემი დისერტაციის ხელმძღვანელს ვხვდები. 21. დაიცადე ცოტა ხანი. პალტოს ვიცვამ და ხუთ წუთში ქვემოთ ვიქნები. 22. ახლა მას არ სცალია, სახლიდან გადის. მნიშვნელოვანი კრება აქვს სამინისტროში. 23. მითხარით, გეთაყვა, ვინ არის ის კაცი, რომელიც ფანჯარასთან დგას და გამველელებს ათვალიერებს? 24. რას კითხულობ? მაჩვენე ის წიგნი. შენ რაღაცას მიმალავ.

25. ყოველდღე სამიდან ოთხამდე ის ჩემს ფანჯარასთან დგას. ნეტავ, ვის ელოდება? 26. თქვენი ვაჟი ახლა რას აკეთებს? – მისაღები გამოცდებისათვის ემზადება უნივერსიტეტში. 27. გამოცდები ახლოვდება. სტუდენტები ბიბლიოთეკის სამკითხველო დარბაზში მუშაობენ. ბევრი სტუდენტი, ჩვეულებრივ, მზადებას გამოცდების მოახლოებისას იწყებს. 28. აი, იმ მხარეს გაიხედე. რა ხდება იქ? რას აკეთებს იქ მოგროვილი ხალხი? 29. მე არ ვიცი, რა

სჭირს ნიკოს. ის ისეთი გონებაგაფანტულია, ყოველთვის ყველაფერს კარგაეს. 30. შეხედე, ეარსკვლავი ეცემა, ჩაიფიქრე რაიმე სურვილი? – დიახ.

Exercise 16. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Present Continuous*, *Present Indefinite* and *Future Indefinite* where necessary.

1. ისინი ახლა საუზმობენ და რაღაცა პრობლემაზე მსჯელობენ. 2. შენ რა, ხუმრობ? – არა, სრულებითად არ ვხუმრობ. მე სერიოზულად გელაპარაკები. 3. სინათლეს ნუ ეფარები. ვერ ხედავ, რომ ეკითხულობ? 4. შეხედე, ანა და ნიკო ერთად მისეირნობენ! – დიახ, ისინი ერთ კვირაში ქორწინდებიან. 5. შენ გებულობ, რასაც ხსნის მასწავლებელი? 6. ახლა სათვალეებს ვეძებ. ყოველთვის ვკარგავ მას. არ ვიცი, სად ვდებ. 7. რატომ წერ მარცხენა ხელით? – არ იცი, რომ ცაცია ვარ? (left-handed). 8. ქეთის არ სძინავს. ის საინტერესო რომანს კითხულობს. 9. რაღაცა იწვის. გაიქეცი სამზარეულოში და ნახე, რა იწვის. 10. ჩემი უფროსი ძმა ახლა სადილობს, უმცროსი კი ეზოშია და მანქანას რეცხავს. 11. ისინი ჯერ კიდევ იმ ფილმს იხილავენ, რომელიც გუშინ კინოთეატრში ნახეს. 12. შენი და ისევ ტელეფონზე ლაპარაკობს? – არა, ტელევიზორს უყურებს. 13. ის ახლა მატარებელში ზის და ბათუმში მიემგზავრება. რა ბედნიერია! მალე ზღვაში იბანავებს. 14. ძაღლი ძლიერ ყეფს. ნახე, ვინმე ხომ არ აპირებს ეზოში შემოსვლას. 15. რა კარგი ამინდია! მზე ანათებს, გრილი ნიავი ქრის. 16. ამ პარასკევს ჩემს თანაკლასელებს ვხვდები რიყეზე. ჩვენ იქ მთელ ღამეს გავატარებთ, რადგან ეს ჩვენი სკოლაში ყოფნის უკანასკნელი დღეა. 17. ჩემი ვაჟიშვილი ახლა ჯარში მსახურობს. კიდევ ნახევარი წელი იმსახურებს და მერე სახლში დაბრუნდება. 18. ვიცი, რომ სამსახურს ეძებთ. როგორი სამსახური გინდათ იშოვოთ? 19. მას არ დაუჯეროთ. ის ყოველთვის იტყუება. 20. თქვენ ახლა რას აკეთებთ? ისვენებთ? – დიახ. ამ დროს ყოველდღე მე ვწვები და ცოტას ვიძინებ. 21. შეხედე ამ პატარა ქალიშვილს. ის ცეკვავს. 22. უილი, აქ რას აკეთებ? – საერთოდ, დასვენებას ვაპირებდი, მაგრამ შემოდი, თუ აუცილებელი საქმე გაქვს. 23. ახლა ვერ დაგელაპარაკები. ძალიან მნიშვნელოვან წერილს ვწერ. დღესვე უნდა გავაგზავნო. 24. იცოდე, უკანასკნელად გაფრთხილებ, ეს არ გააკეთო, თორემ ინანებ. 25. დეიდა პოლი, რაზე ფიქრობ ახლა? რამე გაწუხებთ? შემიძლია რამე გავაკეთო თქვენთვის? 26. ბავშვებო, დაწყნარდით, მამას სძინავს და გააღვიძებთ. 27. შეხედე, რა ძლიერ წვიმს. წაიღე ქოლგა, თორემ დასველდები. 28. დღეს ძალიან მეჩქარება და ამიტომ ავტობუსით მივდივარ სამსახურში. ჩვეულებრივ

კი ფეხით მივდივარ. 29. შვიდ საათზე დღეს ჯენეტს ეხვდები. რვა საათზე რესტორანში ესადილობთ და მერე თეატრში მიდიხართ. 30. ვის სძინავს თქვენს ოთახში? – ჩემი ქმარია. ის ძალიან დაღლილია და ცოტა უნდა დაისვენოს, რადგან ამ საღამოს დაძინებას არ აპირებს. აეროპორტში სტუმრებს ხვდება. 31. რომელ ენაზე ლაპარაკობენ ეს უცხოელები? მე ყურადღებით ვუსმენ, მაგრამ ვერაფრით ვერ ვხვდები.

The Past Continuous Tense

The Past Continuous is formed by means of the auxiliary verb ***"to be"*** in the Past Indefinite and Participle I of the notional verb.

In the interrogative the auxiliary is placed before the subject and participle I follows the subject.

In the negative the negation ***"not"*** is placed after the auxiliary.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I was reading	Was I reading?	I was not (wasn't) reading
You were reading	Were you reading?	You were not (weren't) reading
He (she, it) was reading	Was he (she, it) reading?	He (she, it) was not (wasn't) reading
We were reading	Were we reading?	We were not (weren't) reading
You were reading	Were you reading?	You were not (weren't) reading
They were reading	Were they reading?	They were not (weren't) reading

The Past Continuous is used with all actional verbs and some statal verbs. (See: The Present Continuous Tense).

The Use of the Past Continuous Tense

The Past Continuous is used:

1. To express an action in progress at a certain moment in the past. In some cases, there is no indication of a given past moment, which sometimes is implied in the situation. Sometimes it is indicated with the help of another action in the Past Indefinite, or by stating the precise time: ***at 5 o'clock, at that time, now.***

At 7 o'clock he was walking in the park.

Bill Sikes was sitting by his fire with his dog when Fagin entered.

A minute more and the girl was in the arms of her father who was now kissing her.

He had made a portfolio full of studies and now the idea was taking shape on the canvas.

Next day when she was lying down after luncheon, dozing, she was aroused by a knock at her door.

I'm very sorry. I did knock, but you were both talking so loudly you couldn't hear.

2. To denote a continuous action in progress during a certain period of time in the past, marked by adverbials – prepositional phrases (***from 5 till 6, from morning till evening, from 10 to 11***) or adverbs (***all day long, the whole day, the whole week, etc.***)

The whole day he was chopping firewood.

The children were sleeping from 3 till 5 yesterday.

The verbs ***to stand, to sit, to lie*** expressing action in progress at a certain moment, or during a certain period of time in the past can be used both in the Past Continuous and the Past Indefinite.

When I went into his office, he was sitting (sat) at his desk, looking at a photograph.

He had slid out from behind the wheel and was standing (stood) at the kerb, locking the car door.

He was standing (stood) at the chest of drawers, messing about with my ties.

The Past Continuous is rather frequent in adverbial clauses introduced by the conjunctions ***while, as, when, as long as, etc***. But sometimes in such clauses the Past Indefinite is used, while the Past Continuous is found in the principal clause.

Suddenly, while the doctor was giving some experience of practice on the Flanders front, rather prosily, he sprang to his feet with a cry.

While she cooked dinner we were watching TV.

It was raining when I left.

When I got back to the hotel the gardener was pretending to occupy himself by raking a few leaves off the surface of the water.

When we were walking he told me everything.

3. To denote action characteristic of certain persons in the past. In such sentences the adverbs ***"often", "always", "ever"*** and ***"constantly"*** are generally used:

He was always cracking jokes in his office.

I had an old nurse who was constantly talking about ghosts and dead bodies and curses on the family.

They were always quarrelling. They quarrelled about their car, their food, where they would sit.

4. With verbs which are not usually used in the continuous aspect when they change their meaning and are used to characterize the person's unusual behavior at the given past moment.

Martha was remembering, very ruefully, that other conversation, with Joss.

He had the solemn somewhat noble look when he was thinking about his work.

She was of the type that can only see one thing at a time and what she was seeing at this moment was her own need.

Hans was feeling comfortable and didn't want to be hurried.

We had some more talks together and it was really like I was knowing him for the first time.

He was not hearing any words, so heavy was the impatience of his waiting, but that too was right.

You were forgetting your raincoat and umbrella, weren't you, Lennie?

I was expecting two private guests, Dr and Mrs Maybury.

His car and major appliances were costing him another $2000 in time payments.

I wasn't conscious of anybody, but I walked straight across from the bar, and I wasn't really noticing, I'm sorry.

She was wanting someone to take the responsibility for her; she needed a rescue.

He may have been pulling my leg. He was being downright cynical.

Evan Reese found that he was liking the man, pitying him, and hoping that he would remain as he now saw him. (See: The Present Continuous Tense).

Exercise 1. Comment on the use of *the Past Continuous* in the following sentences.

1. All the seas of the world tumbled about her heart. He was drawing her into them: he would drown her. 2. He laughed again and said, "What were you saying about Frederick, Madam?"

3. Their tempers were getting frayed. Lena was the peacemaker. 4. If ever a man found a guinea when he was looking for a pin it was my good friend Professor Gibberne. 5. He was remembering a certain day over a decade ago in all its details. 6. As I was saying, we have to consider his time as an interregnum. 7. Her senses were giving way, and she almost tottered.

8. He scarcely knew what he was eating, feeling her beside him alone. 9. I knew you were coming. Mabel told me. 10. Seward thought that Lincoln was simply indulging himself in the cardplayer's bluff. 11. He looked out of the window sullenly. For once it was not raining.

12. Tryon Welles was returning when he heard the shot. 13. She wondered what Edward was doing. Was he awaiting the night as anxiously as she? 14. Quentin was walking slowly along the bank when he saw a group of peasants looking up at a high tree 15. I was still looking for it when it became clear that I was doing so, not in Baldock, but in the yard of the Green Man.

16. In a moment he was talking with the girl he had tried to rescue four years ago. 17. He was reading his newspaper and did not seem to be thinking about his duty. 18. "Is he dead?" "Mr Cotter here has just told us. He was passing by the house." 19. And all the while she was thinking how to get the money away from Christie. 20. His face was smiling at me, and I found I was seeing two things at once, not just the cardboard photo but his actual body. 21. Ramon assured me that he was not now desiring to return to Europe. 22. My neighbour Len Simkin was always talking about Sammy Samstag. 23. I'd crept back into the house and was sucking my

thumb in the same corner. 24. He walked out to where Della Street was sitting in the car. 25. He wasn't drinking regularly any more. 26. I think he was meaning to be kind.

Exercise 2. Use *the Past Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. He always (to do) something for somebody. 2. Thirteen-year-old Amy, tall, thin and pale, (to sit) bent forward on the edge of her bed with her cheeks in her hands and elbows on knees. 3. "Oh dear. Oh dear " She (to shake), almost as shattered as Donald. 4. Julia now (to look) at the photograph of herself in her wedding dress. 5. The sound of an authoritative and rather peevish male voice, speaking with a strong Central European accent, (to come) from my daughter's bedroom. 6. Meanwhile the little red figure (to creep) steadily forward along the slippery narrow cornice. 7. The child (to cry) quietly. He was pale and the tears (to roll) slowly down his cheeks. 8. The Professor (to stand) with his back to us, staring morosely out of the window. 9. "Well, I do mean to shoot you, so keep your face shut. – Now where's this money you (to talk) about?" 10. Among the many other passengers was the well-loved patron of that intellectual centre, the Hotel Trianon, who (to return) from a business visit to New York. 11. At the door of the stall a young lady (to talk) and (to laugh) with two young gentlemen. 12. When we (to make) the last arrangements on the eve we were all vaguely excited. 13. It was certainly an odd pair. They (to sit) by themselves at a small table. They were very old. 14. The old man, holding a pair of tongs, (to do) his best to encourage the biggest possible blaze from a log fire. 15. This design he now (to hasten) to put into execution. 16. Meanwhile the month allotted by the Earl to Lord Ronald (to pass) away. 17. a jangling hysterical old-fashioned bell (to wake) me while I (to dream) – God knows why – of the Boxer Rebellion. 18. It was not that he was idle. He always (to do) something, in his amateurish way. 19. He (to get) hungry? What did she fancy to eat? 20. With each minute that passed I (to sink) back deeper and deeper into my love for him. 21. He tied up his horse and sauntered to the bank. A girl (to sit) there. 22. While Oliver (to eat) the strange boy looked at him from time to time with great attention. 23. Then we heard a cry. It (to come) from one of the rooms upstairs. 24. Japanese firms (to negotiate) for the purchase of grain elevators. 25. Mel observed that a group of new arrivals (to enter) the terminal.

Exercise 3. Use *the Past Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. and for the first time since I'd met her her mouth (not to glisten) with lipstick. 2. For some reason he (to make) an effort to be agreeable to me. 3. He came into the room: her heart (to beat) wildly and her hands (to shake); it was lucky that she lay on the sofa. 4. But one afternoon when she (to walk) home from Harold's she chanced to meet Walter Fane in the Brompton Road.

5. What Michael (to say) made her so angry that she recovered her self-control. 6. He would be obliged to show her his will again, to confirm afresh that he (to leave) her for a thousand pounds. 7. He went into the house and she (to sit) in their cramped bedroom in front of her looking glass. 8. She had phenomenal luck. She (to win) all their money. 9. He hoped I (not to begin) to idle. 10. They were silent for a while, and then he saw that Isabel (to cry). 11. He thought about Kitty and Crispin and wondered if this same rain (to drum) on the roof of their caravan. 12. I tried not to find out what (to happen) but you couldn't avoid it. 13. the constables, confronted with this extraordinary tragedy, (to cast) anxious glances towards the main entrance. 14. Even whilst Saunders and the other men (to look) through the belongings of the deceased, Lady Molly had already thought of his family. 15. The following morning a telegram (to wait) for him at his office. 16. Advancing upon them was a silver-haired clergyman. He (to carry) in his arms a square wooden box. 17. In the detective squadroom of the 87th Precinct, the boys (to swap) reminiscences about their patrolman days. 18. The doctor still (to unwind) his silk scarf; he (to look) round for somewhere to hang it in a puzzled sort of way.
19. Ten minutes later Vicky and Emma (to stand) in front of Stacey's Disco. 20. When he grew up black, she always (to vow) she would never speak to him again. 21. I had time now to notice whether we (to attract) any attention. 22 She saw that his hands (to tremble). 23. The ladies had left the room and the port (to circulate). 24. Outside, the rain still (to beat) down heavily. 25. I did not know whether I (to stand) on my head or my heels.

Exercise 4. Finish the following sentences by using *the verb-predicate* in *the Past Continuous*.

1. I didn't want to tell you about what I 2. It was possible to see his hair clearly, for he 3. I wanted to ask you about that book you 4. Europe was lovely, but it was dead. Living in Europe, you 5. Winter made the necessary arrangements and after dinner we went down to the water front. The ship's boat 6. Before she could say anything I went past her and over to Joyce, who 7. When I entered the room, the fire 8. William, who was a tall lad for his years, but very sensitive, had gone pale and 9. Mason made no reply. He 10. At that moment he looked up and saw Oliver who 11. After dinner I tried to make my way to the sofa on which Jane 12. I returned to the boat and sat again on the deck to watch the sailors, who 13. In the depths of an Arctic wilderness, three modern-day hunters 14. There was nobody in the room except Fagin. He 15. When he looked up he saw a stranger who 16. I am sure Parker listened at the door when we 17. Dodger put his hand into the old gentleman's pocket while he 18. Was Celinda present when you ? 19. When he came into the room, his wife 20. Jimmy saw that Lily was pale and that her lips 21. When Della Street brought him Jackson's reply, Mason 22. You're in time to answer a question. We

23. The room was half filled with people. Some , some , some and a few 24. Julia gave her a glance and saw that she 25. I gave him the note and explained that I 26. She could have been seventy, eighty. Her eyes 27. They were real street toughs who

Exercise 5. Finish the following sentences by using *the verb-predicate* in *the Past Continuous*.

1. When Flora Ackroyd came into the room I 2. I met a man this evening – just as I 3. I looked at Ackroyd. He 4. The sea turned almost black. The wind 5. When we reached the little promontory where the Folly stood, I 6. Anyway, did you see anyone like that as you ? 7. In the middle distance, beyond the crops, a man hunched up on a tractor 8. She could not let this pass, for it was just what she 9. I went down in the lift and along the foyer to the hotel's informal restaurant. He 10. I tried to tell you no lies when you 11. The Rolls had slowed to a halt and the driver 12. When Drake's second message came they 13. The passenger had laid his briefcase on the counter in front of him. Gently, but pointedly, he 14. One day at the hotel, passing through the bar, he saw that old Brevald 15. Probably it was assumed that she and Mel 16. Caroline led the way into our small sitting-room, and I followed. Flora 17. Ten minutes later I 18. All three of them scampered upstairs without thinking what they 19. As they came in the new arrivals 20. I had to stop at almost every shop, so my round 21. He flashed two lanterns from the tower of the Old North Church and saw that the soldiers 22. Mary came to the door while he 23. About an hour later the farmer went to the yard. Jack 24. "I love you," I said, "I've always loved you. That's what I ". 25. She tapped lightly at his door and entered while he

Exercise 6. Supply *the Past Continuous* of the verbs in the box.

joke, (not) steal, borrow, flash, carry on, live, earn, bring, break, eat, await, lose, tremble, happen, be, complain, lose, sail, make, climb, wonder, feel, see, die, set, leave, fret, return, conceal, wear, think, sing, run

1. I laughed. I thought she , but it appeared it was no joke. 2. "You knew it was stealing to take that gun." "I it, I it." 3. There him in his cabin a wireless from Tub Pearson. 4. Muriel sat down on the bed. She sick with apprehension and excitement. 5. At a time when most girls the world through rose-tinted spectacles, she was embittered and disillusioned. 6. The captain and she meant to get away with all she could lay hands on. 7. It was clear that he was very ill, he weight quickly, and his chubby face was pale and drawn. 8. By the end of the month we were on a ship that for America. 9. He had an uneasy feeling that she something from him. 10. His eyes now and his face was lit up. 11. He believed that Ethel

with one of the white men. 12. At first, when I went down, he but not conscious. There was no hope. 13. The fact that she more and more money than her husband seemed to her at that time a simple proof that he did not want to work. 14. Karl always me flowers. So I bought a vase one day. 15. Poor fellow. He a rule. He meat on Friday. 16. Molly the new evening dress of which she had spoken so feelingly to her father. 17. Do I look uncomfortable? I how hard it is to be young. 18. He blushed scarlet, for it struck him Jackson a fool of him; and then he felt absurd. 19. In a moment he over the mountain of rubble with which this part of the forecourt was filled. 20. That isn't what I'm interested in. I if your time was your own. 21. The tears still streamed down her pale little face, and he saw that she quickly control of herself. 22. The girl with fear and could not speak. 23. In spite of his wife's entreaties Sir Hercules prepared to go and see what 24 "Look," I said, pointing to the west. The sun going down like a battleship. 25. Old Pancho came upon him as he the tool shed. 26. He now from a commission of inquiry in Malaya. 27. She always and , and her little face grew discontented and secretive. 28. But Ruth brave, haughty and queen-like, and for this precise truth must sometimes be abandoned. 29. Several card games were in progress, and in one corner an excitable young man an interminable ballad. 30. As the guard arrived on the scene comparatively early, the murderer must have got out while the train at fair speed.

Exercise 7. Supply *the Past Continuous* of the verbs in the box.

wipe, chime, walk, button, count, ring, demand, pray, shine, lie, earn, live, sleep, mount, feel, see, talk, examine, set out, start, brighten, wear, light, grow, begin, break, wait, hear, think, come, court, lodge, have, lie, fall

1. Susan had just taken off her make up and the remaining cream from her face. 2. The church clock as I out of the gate. 3. And now in the dark his temperature fast. 4. The gloom he gave way to frolic. 5. Guy his mother, so he gave me a lift home. 6. He had shut the drawer and a cigarette when she returned. 7. It dark and the scene that lay before him was lovely. 8. The beer to take hold of me; I realized that I'd had seven pints without noticing it. 9. Dawn just as they climbed into their boat and pushed off from the bank.
10. Mrs Ivors, who had put on her hat and her cloak, would not stay. 11. Before a curtain, over which the words Café Chantan were written in coloured lamps, two men money on a salver. 12. They excitedly and a revolver which Randy had picked up from the floor. 13. I was told to my utter amazement that Miss Cusack had arrived and to see me with great impatience. 14. I admit I was scared, I was afraid I'd be attacked. In the street, I forever footsteps behind, especially if I was out at night. 15. Well, I just it was a good title.

16. Inspector Ragland had just turned the corner of the house, and towards us. 17. The telephone . at the same time as the nurse and baby loudly entrance, having returned from their walk. 18. People knew that they , and, when he sang about the lass that loves a sailor, she always felt pleasantly confused. 19. How well she remembered the first time she saw him; he in a house on the main road where she used to visit. 20. They heard Davidson's voice. It went on with a monotonous, earnest insistence. He for the soul of Miss Thompson. 21. She told him she had been to so-and-so's. But he knew she She was in her best clothes; her eyes , and she looked lovely. 22. It was twenty years ago and I in Paris. I had a tiny apartment in the Latin Quarters overlooking a cemetery and I barely enough money to keep body and soul together. 23. I went softly into the bedroom. Priscilla high up on her pillows, her mouth open. 24. He arrived just as the younger members of the family to attend a church social. 25. At the entrance to the parking lot, he looked up and frowned at the sky. It to rain lightly. 26. A little daylight remained and the moon . I could see him clearly. He a riding coat with a fur collar. 27. I wonder if you heard that odious rumour about Carel that he a love affair with that coloured servant. 28. She told me that Mrs Farquhar like a log and there was no point in coming to see her. 29. With abstracted gaze Davidson looked out into the night. The rain again.

Exercise 8. Supply *the Past Continuous* of the verbs in the box.

wear, have, wash, give, lie, approach, do, blow, beat, go, fly, get, push, go off, run out, smile, wait, grow, scrutinize, shine, listen, soak, finish, read, unlock, clean, change, stream, dry, suffer, waste away, return, look for, make

1. I did not see his eyes. He thick glasses. 2. Next morning while she her breakfast Michael came into Julia's room. 3. She dishes by the light of a kerosene lamp. 4. It already dark when we entered the courtyard of the old college. 5. A large, heavy man before him a barrow full of pansies. 6. Young Sam was afraid he his lead. 7. Her time , but she continued to sit by the window, leaning her head against the window curtain. 8. The fancy came to me that the old priest as he there in the coffin. 9. Roberta already at the corner when Brush arrived. It colder. 10. Eric Masters an antique pistol when the phone rang in his shop. 11. One evening, when I for dinner, there was a knock at my bedroom door. 12. To his surprise he saw that her eyes with tears. 13. It was now the sweetest hour of the twenty-four. Sunset way to moonrise. 14. He glanced back over his shoulder. An open car with a single occupant 15. Her left hand was extended and I saw that she a kite. 16. His cell mate was a little man called Peeler Mardo. He twenty-seven months for splitting twenty-five dollars.

17. A cold wind across the empty cornfields when I reached the posting station. 18. I up the slope calmly but my heart quickly with fear that he would seize me by the ankles. 19. Lawson was uneasily conscious that the Norwegian him with sly blue eyes. 20. When she looked at herself in the glass her eyes 21. Ah – Yen paused. I lighted my pipe afresh and nodded to him to show that I 22. He went upstairs and had a bath. While he in the bath, Amanda returned. 23. Queenie's tears already. A giggle began to appear. 24. He no pain, but merely grew every day weaker and more languid. He 25. They home, tired and miserable, when they saw a beggar, sitting on the roadside. 26. You see, just as we dinner, a bellboy handed him a note. 27. So then I told him that Celinda Dail for an opportunity to expose Belle and that him furious. 28. Joseph came to my office after breakfast, when I Mr Smith's article. 29. Mrs Davidson came into the room as she a portmanteau.

Exercise 9. Choose the correct tense (*Past Indefinite* or *Past Continuous*).

1. I met / was meeting a man this evening just as I turned / was turning out of the gate. 2. I still thought / was still thinking of it when I came / was coming face to face with Roger Ackroyd. 3. Her brow still bled / was still bleeding. Presently Morel got up / was getting up and came / was coming craning his neck towards her. 4. I still bent / was still bending over the open silver table when Flora Ackroyd came / was coming into the room. 5. Then her thoughts turned / were turning to William. Already he got / was getting a big boy. 6. I just came back / was just coming back through the wood when I heard / was hearing voices. 7. I bumped / was bumping into June when I ran / was running along the long corridor into the Treasurer's. 8. One night during the campaign the preacher gave / was giving one of his hellfire sermons in a church when Mr Lincoln walked in / was walking in, and sat / was sitting in the back. 9. Mrs Thompson rolled / was rolling some pastry when I went / was gong downstairs. 10. Did you hear / Were you hearing what I played / was playing, Jane? 11. While we talked / were talking, a scholarly-looking man in a cap and gown walked past / was walking past and smiled / was smiling at John. 12. One afternoon, when he sat / was sitting in the hotel by himself, moodily, Chaplin came in / was coming in and sat down / was sitting down beside him. 13. He still stood / was still standing at the window when the back door opened / was opening. 14. When we travelled / were travelling about the city we saw / were seeing that the street traffic of London was very heavy. 15. Old Cotter sat / was sitting at the fire, smoking, when I came / was coming downstairs to supper. 16. When he came back / was coming back to the table, his hands trembled / were trembling. He sat down / was sitting down heavily and stared / was staring into space. 17. While we waited / were waiting here for Donald I had / was having a telephone call. 18. She went / was going into the kitchen. Kling rose / was rising from where he sat / was sitting and walked / was

walking to the television set. 19. He studied / was studying the photo when Meg came / was coming into the room. 20. While they still talked / were still talking, Bold returned / was returning and Eleanor was forced to take action. 21. She went up / was going up to the drawing-room. She painted / was painting her lips when Michael joined / was joining her. 22. The bar seemed to him to be full of people and he felt / was feeling that the people observed / were observing him curiously. 23. Julia was silent. She looked /was looking deeply concerned, but her heart beat / was beating with exultation.

Exercise 10. Use *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. They (to think) he (to die). And when they (to leave) him he (to be afraid). 2. When in the morning he (to survey) himself in the glass he (to think) he (not to look) quite the thing. 3. Brush (to blaze) with energy and vigour. He (to hurl) Louie into a corner and (to restore) Queenie to her feet. 4. Suddenly he was conscious that someone (to move) about the room. Then he (to remember). He (to see) that it (to be) his little friend, and he (to be) on the point of speaking when something in the way she (to behave) (to stop) him. 5. He (to pay) his bill and (to step) into the car that (to wait) to take him to the aerodrome on the other side of Cannes. 6. The staring (not to seem) to incommodate the old lady – when she (to feel) certain persons (to look) at her she (to raise) her eyebrows archly, (to smile) and (to roll) her eyes. 7. When Nicky (to leave) his companion (to stroll) back to one of the tables where they (to play) roulette. 8. They (to stay up) talking and laughing till three in the morning, and when Tom (to say) good night to her his eyes (to shine), but whether from love or champagne she (not to know). 9. He (to see) Ethel in the water floating on her back. Her hair (to stream) out all round her, and she (to hold) in her hand a large hibiscus. He (to stop) a moment to admire her. 10. At the sleeping-car attendant's box, just inside the last of those doors, two car attendants (to talk) together.

11. When I (to get) to Kathy's house he (to pack) his things, and (to leave) a while later in a taxi without saying a word. 12. From the playroom (to come) the sound of the television which Miranda (to watch). 13. Mason (to recline) in his stateroom reading a book when Della Street (to bring) him Jackson's reply late that afternoon. 14. He (to lean) over, and picking up the briefcase that (to lie) between Brush's feet, he (to throw) it out of the open window. 15. While I (to change) into dry clothes, the postmaster (to call out), "Dunya! Bring us some tea!" 16. When the invitation (to come) it (to make) him sure that he (to get) somewhere. 17. All of a sudden she (to pluck) a rose from her bosom, and (to press) it in with her letter when I (to groan) aloud.

18. She (to glance) at him cautiously, for it was not always easy to tell when John (to be) serious. 19. His elder son Sam (to stand) nearby, watching his little sister with great interest. The boy (not to see) his father who (to peep) from around the corner of the house. 20. I suddenly (to

become) conscious that someone (to look) at me. When our eyes (to meet), I (to feel) that I (to grow) pale. 21. As Roberts (to snore), Brush (to nod off) again. When he (to awake) Robert (to look) at him. Without saying a word Robert (to pick up) the blanket and (to start off). 22. The young officer (to prepare) to leave when he suddenly (to fall) over. 23. It's a love story – very simple and sweet, yet wonderfully charming My wife (to read) it aloud only last night.
24. The noise in the car (to rise) to a roar. Brush (to go) down the aisle and (to enter) the toilet. He (to tremble). 25. The paths (to glimmer) white, with dark patches where tufty rock plants (to grow) between the stones. 26. When I (to go in) he (to sit) with his arms folded on the table.

Exercise 11. Use *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. My father (to avoid) crossing my mother, but he patently (to disapprove) of her "worldliness" and (to detest) the social scene into which she and Priscilla constantly (to attempt) to penetrate. 2. Old Cotter (to look) at me for a while. I (to feel) that his little black eyes (to examine) me, but I would not satisfy him by looking up from my plate. 3. She (to have) large bold eyes and they (to dart) eagerly from table to table. She (to take) everything in, and every other minute (to call) the old man's attention to someone or other. 4. He (to leave) to the last a group of men who (to sit) in the corner of the room. 5. On the last flight of stairs he (to pass) Jack Mooney, who (to come) up from the pantry nursing two bottles of Bass. 6. "Oh, Ethel, forgive me. I'm so awfully ashamed of myself. I (not to know) what I (to do)". 7. Miller (to look) at him for a moment. The little man (to be) all white. He actually (to tremble). 8. The hotel continually (to lose) patronage because of its shabbiness and she (to think) of herself as also shabby. 9. He (to drive) past her house with its waiting crowd, and (to stop) in another street nearby, where the lively late-night life of Rome still (to flow). 10. Madame Philipot and I (to follow) them up the drive. The Duponts (to sit) on the verandah with the little boy, and all three (to eat) vanilla ices with chocolate sauce. Their top-hats (to stand) beside them like expensive ash-trays. 11. But when she (to start) he (to come) to the station with her. As she (to get) into the carriage he (to take) her hand and (to pat) it. 12. After another pause he (to creep) softly to the chair on which his clothes (to lie). 13. But now she (to see) that one of the nurses (to weep), and at last (to come) round again to the conclusion that these people (to try) to console her. 14. What you (to do) at my door when I (to see) you last night? 15. The silver moon (to look) through the window and (to see) the little boy. He (to be) fast asleep though his lips (to move) and he (to smile) in his sleep.
16. Jimmy (to lie) very still, looking at the doctor without winking. A strange thought (to cross) his mind. 17. We (to walk) past the house when the old woman (to come) out of her house with a shopping bag. 18. When Julia (to get) home the masseuse already (to wait) for her. Mrs Phillips and Evie (to have) a chat. 19. Jimmy (to begin) to copy the text without paying any

attention to what the teacher (to dictate). 20. She (to look) at the baby by her side. He now (to sleep). 21. Even before he (to meet) you, Bill never (to give) me a second glance. He all the time (to organize) teams, planning Mountain Club outings. 22. Jik and Sarah, when I (to rejoin) them, (to argue) about their fancies for the Victoria Derby, next race on the card. 23. As the Major slowly (to walk) along a narrow empty street, he suddenly (to see) a most pleasant sight. A large, heavy man (to push) before him a barrow full of pansies. 24. You know, Tom, when I (to know) that you (to come) north this weekend, I wished that you weren't. 25. Through the glass Jones could see that the compartment (to contain) four men. Two (to lean) out of the window on the opposite side, and two (to fumble) at the latch of the corridor door.

Exercise 12. Use *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. He (to go) on and on and soon he (to see) that the night (to come) on. He (to become) frightened and the fear (to make) him hurry faster. 2. In the evenings he still (to go on) with his drawing for an hour or two; but for three or four evenings he (not to ask) anyone to look at what he (to do). 3. I (to be surprised) when you (to say) he (to come) to dinner. 4. She (to decide) to let Mrs Hay know what (to happen) without making any direct accusations against Susan.
5. There's a coffee shop just down the hall. I (to see) it when I (to try) to catch that young man. 6. She (to smile) at him, but he (to know) that she (to understand). 7. The Chief (to bow) to her in quite a foreign fashion, and in spite of her visible reassurance she (to eye) him very intently. 8. "You (to meet) anyone while you (to go) to your cabin?" "I don't remember." 9 We (to come) to the Munnings they have there and while we (to look) at it we just (to drift) into conversation with a woman near us. 10. When eventually we (to reach) the saloon a program (to lie) on every chair. 11. I (to meet) Mark on the Calais-Dover boat, when he (to return) from a holiday abroad. 12. I (to see) you drive up and (to think) maybe that was the bus I (to look) for. 13. She (to know) what she (to do) all right, dusting the mirror and polishing the pictures for her sucky lad. 14. As they (to open) the door, Mrs Newberry suddenly (to give) a gasp of dismay. 15. They (to stroll) the promenade deck when Drake's second message (to come). 16. By the time he (to recover) she (to get) on into her twenties. 17. I (to go up) on deck with my husband. I (to want) to talk with him and he (to try) to avoid me. 18. Public speakers (to have) the illusion that they (to address) most of the population of the United States. 19. He (to wait) for her when she (to let) herself into their apartment. 20. Tell me, what you really (to do), waiting by the statue? 21. Inside I nearly fell over Rachel who (to sit) on the floor. She (to moan) softly now. 22. I (to go) out into the hall where Marigold (to kneel), surrounded by an ocean of silks. 23. I (to run) into the sitting-room and (to be) surprised to see a girl there. She (to examine) the little bronzes in the lacquered display cabinet. 24. Neither of them (to speak), but she (to know) what

he (to suspect). She (to make) her preparations to leave the ship. He (to look) at her mockingly. 25. Winter (to seem) to know more than half the company, and when we (to make) our way to the bar a little fat man in spectacles, who (to stand) by himself, (to offer) him a drink.

Exercise 13. Ask questions to the following sentences beginning with the words in brackets.

1. It was growing dark outside when she came into the office. (When? Where?) 2. He was always doing something, always working down at Crockham. (What? Where?) 3. A lot of people were saying she had been a confirmed drug-taker for years. (What? Who?) 4. You were staying with Mr Ackroyd a year ago last May. (When? With whom? What?) 5. Flora was sitting on the sofa by the window. (When? Where? What?) 6. Ann was wearing a coat as it was cold. (Why? What? Who?) 7. The train was pulling in when we appeared on the platform. (When? What?) 8. I was repairing the car when the telephone rang. (What? When? Who?) 9. My son was playing football when I called him home. (What? When?) 10. By the time we arrived home my father was washing his car. (What? When? Who?) 11. Jane was tidying the flat while her sister was washing the windows. (What? Who? When?) 12. They were flying over the Atlantic Ocean when the plane crashed. (Where? What?) 13. She was skating on the ice-rink when she slipped. (When? What?) 14. Little Kitty was crying because her mother was not at home. (Why? What? Who?) 15. I didn't hear the knock because I was having a bath. (Why? What?) 16. Kate was working on the computer when I came home. (What? Where? When?) 17. From 5 till 8 yesterday he was studying at the library. (When? Where? What?) 18. She was waiting for the bus when I caught sight of her. (What? What for?) 19. I was swimming in the river when it started raining. (What? Where?) 20. The children were smoking in the garden when the teacher noticed them. (What? Where?) 21. She was hurrying to the Institute as only ten minutes were left before the beginning of the lecture. (Why? Where?) 22. He was regarding us with open eyes. (How? What? Who? Whom?) 23. That chap was making thousands a year. (How much? What? Who?) 24. He was looking for something in the dark. (What for? What?) 25. The travellers were eating breakfast hungrily.

Exercise 14. Ask all types of questions to the following sentences.

1. They were talking in quite a friendly manner. 2. The radio was cheerfully forecasting a noon temperature of thirty-nine. 3. He was trembling like a jelly. 4. He was staring at the same patch of carpet. 5. Men were shouting at one another across the narrow table. 6. I was standing in a far corner near the door of the agency, painfully shy. 7. We were talking about old times. 8. An army of young men and women were still washing the dishes of the week-end crowd. 9. The cops were looking for a guy with glasses and blonde hair. 10. I was listening with amusement to

the gossip of the island. 11. The grey-eyed girl was working beside Brush. 12. I was expecting her to call again the following week. 13. She was wondering if the men were still drinking punch back in the dining-room. 14. She was getting into the car. 15. He was preparing his way of retreat. 16. She was thinking about Eugene's suggestion. 17. I was sitting one evening on the first floor of the hotel on a veranda. 18. Ann was smiling in that curious way. 19. She was laughing at Ken's daft story. 20. The men were having a whisky before turning in. 21. You were asking why this lady returned to Water Poole. 22. She was forgetting that she was on board a ship. 23. Life was always catching up with her. 24. Mrs Kearney was speaking animatedly to her husband. 25. My neighbours were regarding me with a strange expression.

Exercise 15. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Past Continuous* and *Past Indefinite* where necessary.

1. ბოდიშს გიხდით, რომ ტელეფონთან ვერ მოვედი, როდესაც დამირეკეთ – ჩემს საყვარელ ფილმს ვუყურებდი. 2. გუშინ, ზუსტად ამ დროს, შენ გიხსენებდით. 3. რას აკეთებდი, როდესაც დაგირეკე? ხომ არ გეძინა? 4. როდესაც ტელევიზორი ჩაერთე, დიქტორი ამინდის პროგნოზს გადასცემდა. 5. ისინი მთელი დღე კომპიუტერთან ისხდნენ, სადილიც არ გაახსენდათ. 6. როდესაც მასწავლებელი გაკვეთილს გვიხსნიდა, ვიღაცამ საკლასო ოთახის კარი შემოაღო. 7. როდესაც სახლში მოვედით, მამა პირს იპარსავდა. 8. ისინი ჭადრაკს თამაშობდნენ, როდესაც ქუჩიდან ხმაური მოესმათ. 9. ჩვენი მეგობრები ცეკვავდნენ, როდესაც დისკოკლუბში მივედით. 10. მე ვერ გავიგე რას მეუბნებოდი, რადგან მუსიკას ვუსმენდი. 11. როდის მოხდა ეს ყველაფერი? – როდესაც სამსახურში მიედიოდი. 12. მას ძალიან ცუდი ჩვევა ჰქონდა: ყოველთვის რაღაცას ჭამდა, როდესაც წიგნს კითხულობდა. 13. ქეთი სულ დედაზე ფიქრობდა, რადგან ძალიან ენატრებოდა. 14. რას აკეთებდა თქვენი და, როდესაც გეძინათ? 15. რატომ იჯექი გუშინ მთელი დღე სახლში? მშვენიერი ამინდი იყო, მზე ანათებდა, ქარიც არ ქროდა. შესაფერისი დღე იყო სასეირნოდ. 16. მისი პატარა ბიჭუნა პირველ ნაბიჯებს დგამდა და მთელი ოჯახი მას ტაშს უკრავდა. 17. ახალ ამბებს ვუყურებდით ტელევიზორში, როდესაც სამზარეულოში რაღაცა დავარდა და გატყდა. 18. ნიკო დედას თეალებში არ უყურებდა, როდესაც უხსნიდა, რატომ დააგვიანა სახლში მოსვლა. დედამ იცოდა, რომ ის სიმართლეს არ ეუბნებოდა. 19. როდესაც პაემანზე მიდიოდა, პეტრე მთელი გზა თავისთვის რაღაცას მღეროდა. 20. სუფრას ეშლიდი, როდესაც პირველმა სტუმარმა კარებზე დარეკა. 21. ყოველთვის სათვალეებს ვკარგავ და მერე მთელი ოჯახი ეძებს მას. 22. როდესაც მდინარეში ვბანაობდი,

წვიმა წამოვიდა. ჩვენ სწრაფად ამოვედით წყლიდან, ჩაეცვით და სახლში გავიქეცით. 23. სად მიდიოდი, როდესაც მტრის თვითმფრინავმა გადაგვიფრინა? 24. კბილებს ვიხეხავდი, როდესაც ტელეფონმა დარეკა. 25. ბავშვები ქუჩას წითელ შუქზე გადადიოდნენ, როდესაც პოლიციელმა დაუსტვინა. 26. ის საჭესთან იჯდა და მანქანას მართავდა, როდესაც გულის ტკივილი იგრძნო. 27. როდესაც პარკში ვსეირნობდი, ხეზე ციყვი შევამჩნიე. 28. იწვიმა წუხელ თქვენს ქალაქში? – რატომ მეკითხებით? – ჩვენთან კოკისპირულად წვიმდა მთელი საღამო. 29. როდესაც ქუჩაში გზას აგებდნენ, სატვირთო მანქანები ქვიშას ყრიდნენ, მუშები კი ქვიშას ასწორებდნენ და ზედ ასფალტს ასხამდნენ. 30. ტაქსი რომ მოვიდა, ჩემოდნები უკვე ქვემოთ ჩაგექონდა.

Exercise 16. Translate the sentences into English.

1. ა) მათ ყავა დილით დალიეს, ხოლო ჩაი – საღამოს.

ბ) ისინი ყავას სვამდნენ და ძველ დროს იხსენებდნენ.

2. ა) ის ოთახიდან უსიტყვოდ გავიდა.

ბ) ის ოთახიდან გადიოდა, როდესაც ვიღაცამ კარებზე დარეკა.

3. ა) ლექცია 9 საათზე იწყებოდა, ასე რომ წასვლის დრო იყო.

ბ) ლექცია ის-ის იყო იწყებოდა, როდესაც ინსტიტუტში მივედი.

4. ა) მან ფანჯარა გააღო, რადგან ვიღაცა ეზოდან ეძახდა.

ბ) ვიღაცამ ეზოდან დაუძახა და მან ფანჯარა გააღო.

5. ა) მას ხელში წიგნი ეჭირა, მგრამ არ კითხულობდა, რაღაცაზე ფიქრობდა.

ბ) მან წიგნი ხელში აიღო და პირველი გვერდი წაიკითხა.

6. ა) რაღაც ხმაური მომესმა და დერეფანში გავიხედე.

ბ) ფანჯრიდან ვიყურებოდი, როდესაც ის უბედური შემთხვევა მოხდა.

7. ა) ჟურნალს არ კითხულობდა, მხოლოდ ათვალიერებდა, როდესაც მას შევხედე.

ბ) ჟურნალი დაათვალიერა და მე გადმომცა.

8. ა) დედამ ნიკოს რამდენჯერმე გაუმეორა შეკითხვა, მაგრამ მან ვერ გაიგონა, რადგან ტელევიზორს უყურებდა.

ბ) ტელევიზორს უყურებდი გუშინ? რა ფილმი ნახე?

9. ა) ბობის ორი დღის წინ დავურეკე, მაგრამ ის სახლში არ იყო, სპორტდარბაზში ვარჯიშობდა.

ბ) მას ორჯერ გაეუგზავნე გასულ კვირას შეტყობინება და ერთხელაც არ მიპასუხა.

10. ა) მას ჭექა-ქუხილი არ გაუგონია წუხელ, რადგან ღრმად ეძინა.

ბ) თუმცა წუხელ ძლიერ ქუხდა, მაგრამ მას უცებ ჩაეძინა, რადგან ძალიან დაღლილი იყო.

11. ა) კეირას ფეხბურთის მატჩზე წახვედი? – არა, სახლში დავრჩი. თამაშს ტელევიზორით ეუყურე.

ბ) ფეხბურთის მატჩზე მივდიოდი, როდესაც ქუჩის კუთხეში მეგობრები შევამჩნიე. ისინი პეტრეს ელოდებოდნენ.

12. ა) გამოღებული ფანჯრიდან ოთახში მერცხალი შემოფრინდა.

ბ) როდესაც ეზოში გავედი, მზე ანათებდა, მერცხლები ჰაერში დაფრინაედნენ და ჭიკჭიკებდნენ.

13. ა) ქუჩაში გასელისას დედამ ბავშვი ხელში აიყვანა.

ბ) დედამ ქუჩა გადაჭრა და მარჯვნივ მოუხვია.

14. ა) ნიკომ რაღაც უჩურჩულა ანას ყურში და ორივემ გაიცინა.

ბ) ნიკო და ანა რაღაცაზე ლაპარაკობდნენ და იცინოდნენ.

15. ლალი პიანინოზე უკრავდა, რამდენიმე წყვილი ცეკვაედა, დანარჩენები კი – უსმენდნენ.

ბ) წეეულებაზე ლალიმ პიანინოზე დაუკრა და ორი სიმღერაც იმღერა.

16. ა) როდესაც კარი გამოვაღე, ის რაღაცას წერდა და თავიც არ აუწევია.

ბ) მან წერილი დაწერა, კონვერტში ჩადო და თავის დას სთხოვა, გააგზავნეო.

17. ა) სანამ ლექტორი ნიუტონის კანონს უხსნიდა სტუდენტებს, ლევანი ანასთან შეხვედრაზე ოცნებობდა.

ბ) ლექტორმა გასულ კვირას ნიუტონის კანონი აგვიხსნა.

18. ა) ფანჯარასთან ვიდექი და გარეთ ვიყურებდი. ეზოში ბავშვები დარბოდნენ და ფეხბურთს თამაშობდნენ.

ბ) ფანჯარასთან მივედი და გარეთ გავიხედე.

19. ა) როდესაც ოთახში შევედი, იქ ბნელოდა და შუქი ავანთე.

ბ) ოთახში შუქს ვანთებდი, როდესაც ვიღაცამ მკლავში ხელი ჩამავლო.

20. ა) როგორც იქნა, ანასთან სახლში მივედი; ის სახლიდან გადიოდა, სადღაც მიიჩქაროდა და მხოლოდ რამდენიმე სიტყვის თქმა მოვასწარი.

ბ) ანა სახლიდან გავიდა, ტაქსი გააჩერა და ჩაჯდა. ტაქსი გაურკვეველი მიმართულებით გაქანდა.

21. ა) როდესაც გარეთ გაველით, ჭიშკართან ნიკოს მანქანა იდგა და ჩვენ გველოდებოდა.

ბ) რატომ არ დამელოდე გუშინ? შენზე გაბრაზებული ვარ.

22. ა) ის მუდამ უბედობას უჩიოდა.

ბ) მას ტკბილი ცხოვრება არ ჰქონდა, მაგრამ ბედს მაინც არ უჩიოდა.

23. ა) მზე ჩადიოდა, როდესაც ექსკურსიიდან დაებრუნდით.

ბ) ბნელოდა და ჩვენ ნათურა ავანთეთ.

24. ა) მას სწორედ მაშინ გაელვიძა, როდესაც ოთახში შევდიოდი.

ბ) ოთახში შევედი. მას გამოელვიძა.

25. ა) რესტორანში რომ შევედი, ყველა მაგიდა დაკავებული იყო. მე მივუჯექი იმ მაგიდას, სადაც ქალბატონი მარტო სადილობდა.

ბ) ის რესტორანში შეიიდა, ამოარჩია ერთ-ერთი მაგიდა და მიუჯდა.

26. ა) ის დილიდან საღამომდე მუშაობდა, სულ რაღაცას აკეთებდა – წერდა ან კითხულობდა.

ბ) ბავშვებს გუშინ არაფერი გაუკეთებიათ, რადგან შაბათი იყო: არც საეარჯიშო დაწერეს და არც გაკვეთილი მოამზადეს.

27. ა) გუშინ მთელი დღე წვიმდა და ბავშვი ეზოში ვერ გაეიყვანე.

ბ) გუშინ, როგორც იქნა, იწვიმა.

28. ა) მან ბევრი იმუშაა გასულ კვირას და მოხსენება მოამზადა კონფერენციისათვის.

ბ) ის მთელი კვირა მოხსენებაზე მუშაობდა და ამიტომ ტელევიზორს არ რთავდა.

29. ა) ის მეორე ოთახიდან უსმენდა და ცდილობდა გაერკვია, თუ რა მელოდიას უკრავდა მისი ცოლი.

ბ) ქურდებმა გაქცევა სცადეს, მაგრამ პოლიცია დროზე მოვიდა და მათ კოუზი ნაცარში ჩაუვარდათ.

30. ა) ავადმყოფი ძალიან ცუდად იყო და ნათესავები ძალიან ხმადაბლა ლაპარაკობდნენ.

ბ) ის გველაპარაკა მომავალ გეგმებზე.

Exercise 17. Translate the sentences into English.

1. ა) ის დილის ვარჯიშს ასრულებდა, როდესაც ტელეფონმა დარეკა.

ბ) მან დილის ვარჯიში შეასრულა და შხაპი მიიღო.

2. ა) მან ოთახი დაალაგა და სადილიც გაამზადა.

ბ) ორიდან სამ საათამდე ის სადილს ამზადებდა.

3. ა) შარშან ის ხშირად დადიოდა თეატრში.

ბ) ის თეატრში მიდიოდა, როდესაც წვიმა დაიწყო.

4. ა) ნელის დაბადების დღეზე მათ იმღერეს და იცეკვეს.

ბ) ისინი ცეკვავდნენ, როდესაც კიდევ ერთი ახალი სტუმარი შემოემატათ.

5. ა) ბეშებმა იეახშმეს და ტელევიზორსაც უყურეს.

ბ) ბაეშვები ტელევიზორს უყურებდნენ, როდესაც პატარა ანის ჩაეძინა.

6. ა) ამ დროს მას ვიღაცამ დაუძახა. მოიხედა, მაგრამ ვერავინ ნახა.

ბ) იმ დროს მას ვიღაცა ეძახდა და ვერ გაერკვია რა ექნა: უკან გაეხედა, თუ ნაბიჯი აეჩქარებინა.

7. ა) გუშინ დედამ ბაზარში ხილი იყიდა.

ბ) გუშინ დედა ბაზარში ხილს ყიდულობდა, როდესაც შეამჩნია, რომ საფულე ჩანთაში არ იდო.

8. ა) ნიკო მდინარეში ბანაობდა, როდესაც მოესმა, რომ ვიღაცა შველას ითხოვდა.

ბ) გუშინ ნიკომ მდინარეში იბანავა და თევზიც დაიჭირა.

9. ა) როდესაც მამა სახლში მოვიდა, ესადილობდით.

ბ) მამა სახლში მოვიდა და ვისადილეთ.

10. ა) ის ხელ-პირს იბანდა, როდესაც ვიღაცამ კარებზე დააკაკუნა.

ბ) მან ხელ-პირი დაიბანა და ისაუზმა.

11. ა) როდესაც სამზარეულოში შევედით, ჩაი ადუღებული იყო.

ბ) როდესაც სამზარეულოში შევედით, ჩაი ადუღდა.

12. ა) როდესაც ის მანქანით სამსახურში მიდიოდა, მან ქუჩის კუთხეში ანა შეამჩნია და მანქანა გაუჩერა.

ბ) ის მანქანით ქუჩის ბოლომდე მიეიდა და ანის სახლის წინ გააჩერა.

13. ა) გუშინ ამ დროს ანა გამოცდას აბარებდა.

ბ) ანამ გუშინ გამოცდა ჩააბარა.

14. ა) დედა წიგნს კითხულობდა, ჩვენ კი ტელევიზორს ეუყურებდით.

ბ) მან წიგნი წაიკითხა და მერე დასაძინებლად წაეიდა.

15. ა) რაზე ლაპარაკობდით გუშინ, როდესაც თქვენთან მოვედი?

ბ) გუშინ კრებაზე დეკანმა ერცლად ილაპარაკა მომავალი გამოცდების შესახებ.

16. ა) გუშინ სადილის შემდეგ, თეფშები გავრეცხეთ.

ბ) დედა მთელი საღამო თეფშებს რეცხავდა.

17. ა) ტყეში კენკრას ეაგროვებდით, როდესაც ზღარბი შევამჩნიეთ.

ბ) მან მარწყვი მოაგროვა (დაკრიფა) და ჯემიც მოხარშა.

18. ა) როდესაც სახლიდან გამოვედით, თოვდა, თან საკმაოდ ციოდა. ჩვენ

თბილი პალტოები გეცვა და თავს კარგად ეგრძნობდით.

ბ) იმ ზამთარს ხშირად თოვდა.

19. ა) როდესაც გარეთ გაეედით, მზე ანათებდა, მაგრამ ცივი ქარი ქროდა.

ბ) საღამოს ქარმა დაუბერა და ბავშვები სახლში შემოეიყვანეთ.

20. ა) მან გუშინ ორი ბოთლი ღვინო დალია მეგობრებთან ერთად და დათვრა.

ბ) ის ღვინოს სვამდა, როდესაც დამ სთხოვა მეტი არ დაელია.

21. ა) ავტობუსით შორი გზა იყო. მთელი გზა მგზავრებს ვაკვირდებოდი, რადგან არ ვიცოდი, რა მექნა.

ბ) მე მას დიდი ხანი ველოდი, მაგრამ ის არ გამოჩნდა.

22. ა) სტუმრები მოვიდნენ და ნელიმ სუფრა გაშალა.

ბ) ის სუფრას შლიდა, როდესაც სტუმრები მოვიდნენ.

23. ა) ეს სურათი მაშინ იპოვა, როდესაც რომელიღაც ძველ წიგნს ეძებდა.

ბ) თაროზე ძველი წიგნი იპოვა, მე მომცა და მირჩია, აუცილებლად წაიკითხეო.

24. ა) უცრად მიხედა, რომ სხვა ავტობუსით მგზავრობდა.

ბ) იმ დღეს ჩვენ მეტროთი და ავტობუსითაც ვიმგზავრეთ.

25. ა) გოგონები ქუჩაში მისეირნობდნენ, იცინოდნენ და ნაყინსაც მიირთმევდნენ.

ბ) გუშინ მათ ბევრი ნაყინი მიირთვეს და საღამოს ყელი სტკიოდათ.

26. ა) ახლა უნივერსიტეტში ვმუშაობ, ორი წლის წინ კი სკოლაში ვმუშაობდი.

ბ) ბაღში ვმუშაობდი, ყვავილებს ვრწყავდი და ზარი არ გამიგონია.

27. ა) ის წამოდგა და ტელევიზორი ჩართო.

ბ) ის ტელევიზორს რთავდა, როდესაც შუქი გამოირთო.

28. ა) მან შეხედა სახლს იმ ადგილიდან, სადაც იდგა.

ბ) ის გოგონას მისჩერებოდა და თვალს ვერ აშორებდა.

29. ა) როდესაც კაკუნი მომესმა, კარებთან მივედი და გავაღე. იქ მათხოვარი იდგა და ფულს ითხოვდა.

ბ) მათხოვარმა ფული გამომართვა, მადლობა გადამიხადა და მეორე კარებზე დააკაკუნა.

30. ა) ის კიბეებზე ჩარბოდა, როდესაც ფეხი დაუცდა და დაეცა.

ბ) როდესაც ბავშვებმა ფანჯრიდან გაიხედეს, ქუჩაში დედა შეამჩნიეს. მათ ჩაირბინეს კიბეებზე და დედას ჭიშკართან დახვდნენ.

The Future Continuous Tense

The Future Continuous is formed by means of the auxiliary ***"to be"*** in the Future Indefinite and Participle I of the notional verb.

In the interrogative form the corresponding form of the first auxiliary (***shall / will***) is placed before the subject, the second auxiliary ***"be"*** followed by Participle I is placed after the subject.

In the negative the negation ***"not"*** is placed after the first auxiliary (***shall*** and ***will***).

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
	Shall I be reading?	I shall not (shan't) be reading
I shall be reading	Will you be reading?	You will not (won't) be reading
You will be reading	Will he (she, it) be reading?	He (she, it) will not (won't) be
He (she, it) will be reading	Shall we be reading?	reading
We shall be reading	Will you be reading?	We shall not (shan't) be reading
You will be reading	Will they be reading?	You will not (won't) be reading
They will be reading		They will not (won't) be reading

The Future Continuous is used to denote:

1. An action in progress at a definite future moment or during a certain period of time in the future. The following adverbials can be used: ***at 5 o'clock (tomorrow, next Monday), from 2 till 3 (tomorrow, next Monday), the whole day tomorrow, the whole week, at that time, in three days, etc***:

I shall be waiting for you at 2 o'clock tomorrow.

The bus will be leaving in five minutes.

Things will be humming here soon, you will see.

He will be working in his garden the whole day tomorrow.

"Will he be wearing a uniform?" asked Angela. "No, dear, of course not. He is receiving the very best attention."

You'd better wear some shoes that don't squeak so much, because everybody will be looking at you.

2. An anticipated (a matter-of-course) action which is supposed to take place in the future in the normal, natural course of events.

The press is here. They'll be taking photographs.

I think you had better go now. He'll be coming home soon – my father, I mean.

Well, I mean I shall be working as a mechanic most of the time.

Note: Stative verbs are most frequent in this meaning.

I shan't be seeing anyone, or going out. Just a quiet day here with a book.

His mother will be expecting him for dinner.

"I must be going", she said. "In a moment if I stay, I'll be wanting to kiss you."

Exercise 1. Comment on the use of *the Future Continuous* in the following sentences.

1. After Bill goes I'll be sitting here all alone night after night. 2. He wants me to meet him in my office tomorrow. He says he'll be bringing colleagues. He says they'll want to see the books. 3. Megan, get the spare room ready, and a bowl of cream. You'll be wanting tea, I suppose. 4. Robert shivered. "I'll be catching cold here," she said. 5. "I'll not be bringing him in his cup of beef tea any more, nor you, ma'am, send him his sniff. Ah, poor James!" 6. "Mustn't delay, then. Our good host and hostess'll be expecting us," he said. 7. Goath had to be booted out, and as I was he booted himself out. He'll be feeling very sorry for himself soon 8. And if you don't get on with some work, my boy, you'll be finding yourself shadowing down those steps. 9. Mason sat down beside her. "We'll be docking within half an hour," he said. "Are you prepared for it?" 10. Pat was putting on his coat to see for himself. "Will you be wanting me this afternoon?" asked Miss Rauenbush. 11. "I'll be staying long tonight," was all she said. "I've got to see somebody at eight." 12. Now listen: Dr Maybury and his wife are here for dinner tonight. They'll be coming up here in a minute. 13. Adventures! They'd be better off at home – with the adventures! You'll be wanting to go and have adventures yourself next – and then what will your poor mother say? 14. "I've got to go out," he told Mr Smeeth, "and I shan't be coming back today." 15. One of these days I'll be finding a nice young man to take me to the pictures. 16. "What time do you think we'll be finishing tonight, Mr Smeeth?" he enquired respectfully. 17. "It seems to me you know everything about me," she cried, laughing. "You'll be telling me next how old I am and where I was born and all the rest of it." 18. She'll be earning next to nothing for a year or two. 19. "I just want you to be nice " "I'll be doing nothing else." 20. "But what," asked Blair, the family sneer in place, "will those states between here and Texas and Florida be doing while we are fighting France and Spain?"

Exercise 2. Use *the Future Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. "I'm supposed to find out tactfully and without your knowing it what colour dress you (to wear)." "Why?" "The committee will send you a corsage." 2. He said, "Go away. The neighbours (to come) in to see me. I don't want them to find you here." 3. Hello, Nell! What you (to do) in an hour? I'm going to come to your place, if you aren't against it. 4. "We (to go)," said Mr Penezzi, getting up. "Come and have lunch with us one day, will you?" 5. Well, I hope I see you again, Mr Bush. Now I expect you (to want) to talk to some of these pretty girls around

here. 6. "Why not tonight? We (to leave) in the morning." "Because I've changed my mind." 7. Mr Poole's affairs are no business of mine. If you'll pardon me, I (to get) along. 8. Now just you be careful what you're saying. You (to say) something in a minute you'll be sorry for afterwards. 9. It'll be perishingly cold, and by tomorrow she (to roll) like the devil all the way across the North Sea. 10. "I suppose you (to meet) your people?" he said, getting up. 11. "I'll leave you to work it out. I (to look in) this afternoon. 12. Now listen, Jimmy dear, Mother (to go) to see her palmist, very soon – she's always going to palmists, you know. 13. You've given us the joke. I (to laugh) all night. 14. "I'm sure I don't care what you say." "Then I (to run) along." 15. We drive down Broadway to Wallack's at a gallop, where her mother and a box party (to wait) for us in the lobby. 16. "What's the undertakers?" "The people who (to do) the funeral." 17. "Where'll I find you afterwards?" "I (to hang) around Murry's." 18. And I suppose you (to want) to go on Saturday. 19. We (to see) the rest of the house. Well, I was sure before and I'm just as sure now. 20. As far as he's concerned, you (to work) this without agency knowledge. 21. You don't want to take it as hard as that. Bless me! – You (to make) yourself ill over it.

Exercise 3. Use *the Future Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. By the way, George, I've been dreadfully extravagant lately. Some terrible bills (to come). 2. They (to pull) the Rectory down next week. 3. Never mind. We (to meet) some decent people here soon. 4. "It all seems simple enough," said Wilcox. Suddenly he took his hat from the rack, "I (to run) along now." 5. It won't cost you anything. In fact I (to pay) you. 6. After all, you (to stay) a day or so to cadge a free meal and rub noses with MacSalmon's Mission, won't you? 7. "We're going to Berry Head, old chap; you must come!" Ashurst thought: "Come! Impossible. I (to get) things and (to go) back." 8. "Are you sure that we (not to disturb) you?" she asked. 9. "Now that everything is satisfactorily settled," proceeded Hamilton Beamish, "I (to leave) you. I have to get back and dress." 10. I take it your sister (not to live) with you when she gets back. 11. what with all this new business, the firm (to grow) and (to expand) and that'll be just the opportunity for a young fellow like yourself. 12. "Christ, he (to shout) me up those stairs three times a day which, as we both know, my heart won't stand". 13. "What makes you so different?" "I (to give) you a full demonstration of it shortly." 14. What you (to do) this time next week? 15. I'm catching cold. By the time anybody comes, if they ever do, I (to sneeze) and (to cough) loud enough to be heard in the city. 16. In twenty years' time, we (to take) holiday trips to the moon. 17. Try to remember that Al Kennedy (to ride) east in the morning. 18. You (to need) a coffin soon, Workhouse, if you make jokes like that! 19. I love you, Paula, and I (to long) for you terribly, but I can't marry you. 20. I'll be in Kamakura sometime after noon and I

sure as hell (to expect) transportation to be arranged for me. 21. She'll still want to be spending something and she (to bring) nothing in for a long time.

Exercise 4. Use *the Future Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. But it won't make much difference to them. I (to earn) a shilling a day, at least. 2. All over town they (to ask) this particular favour. 3. They (to use) their energies to protect themselves in every situation. 4. "Souvenirs," he said. "No. 1, Dr Sheppard; No. 2, my humble self. One from Major Blunt (to forthcome) in the morning". 5. Very soon the program (to complete) its circle, and she (to want) to go, and it will be all over. 6. "What's coming in the 1970 s is going to be worse, far worse. And not just people congestion. You (to choke) in other things, too. 7. I bet you (not to swim) when you're sixty. 8. Let us telegraph Señor Samstag that, if he flies here again, a new one-page contract (to await) him at the notary's. 9. Well, I (to go) and (to see) if my mother wants an errand doing. 10. You (to want) tea, I suppose. 11. He (to work) hard anyway, he won't actually be in the Lodge very much. 12. "This case (to get) into the newspapers?" "I doubt it," Meyer said. "It's a little too gory for the public." 13. I (to come up) in the morning with the chief constable, Mr Raymond. 14. "Yes – she's seen nothing," he thought; "everything's before her. And just for a few weeks' passion. I (to cut) her life to ribbons." 15. You (to see) me again soon. 16. "He will lie in the small room all night, and in the morning he will be dead." "There, that will do," said Mr Sandbach. "I (to sit) with him." 17. I (to visit) New York in the next few weeks and I'd very much enjoy seeing Mrs Cooke.

18. "Arnie I (to leave) tomorrow." "What? What?" "Arnie, I (to go) tomorrow. I've found a room." 19. You (to hear) a lot about that speech of yours before you're done. 20. Well, then, will you take my camp equipment? I (not to want) it any more. 21. Is she with Lervi and the Brigadier? Oh, she (to want) help then.

Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences using the verbs in *the Future Continuous* where necessary.

1. ამ საღამოს იქ არ წახვალ? 2. რამდენიმე დღეს სოფელში გაატარებ? 3. ის იქ დიდხანს არ იმუშაებს. მას ერთ ადგილას არ შეუძლია გაჩერება.

4. მოგვიანებით დაგირეკავ, როდესაც ახალ ამბავს შევიტყობ. 5. უნდა დაგემშვიდობოთ. ახლა მივდივარ. 6. ექიმო, ხვალ მოხვალთ? 7. ჩვენ მალე ახალ ბინაში გადავალთ. 8. მომავალ კვირას, ეიმედოვნებ, რომ ხშირად გნახავთ ჩვენს სამეზობლოში. 9. მოგვიანებით მათ ოჯახში ვისადილებ. 10. მომავალ კვირას ჩვენი მასწავლებელი აღარ გვასწავლის, ის მიელინებით ლონდონში მიემგზავრება. 11. არ იცით, რას გააკეთებს ნიკო მომავალ კვირას? 12. დედა, ნუ

ღელავ. მე რეგულარულად მოგწერ წერილებს, გპირდები. 13. სანამ სახლში არ იქნები, შენს ბავშვებს მივხედავ. 14. ხვალ ამ დროს მე მატარებლით ზღვაზე გავემგზავრები. 15. როდესაც სახლში დაბრუნდებით, მე არაფერს არ გაეკეთებ, მხოლოდ ტელევიზორს ვუყურებ. 16. დღეს კრებაზე დეკანი განათლების რეფორმაზე ილაპარაკებს. 17. ზაფხულში ისევ იმოგზაურებთ? 18. ამ საღამოს ბავშვებს კინოში წაიყვანთ? 19. დღეს არ მეცლება. ჩემი დის ბავშვებს მივხედავ. 20. როდის გექნებათ გამოცდა ინგლისურში? 21. ისინი ამ ფილმს კვლავ უჩვენებენ ხვალ საღამოს. დარწმუნებული ვარ, მოგეწონებათ. 22. როგორ აპირებ იქ ჩასვლას? მატარებლით თუ ავტობუსით? 23. ხვალ ამ დროს ჩვენი მატარებელი ბათუმს მიუახლოვდება. 24. რამდენიმე წუთში ოფიციანტი შემოიტანს ყავას და ნამცხვარს. 25. როდესაც შენ დაბრუნდები ჩვენს ქალაქში, ისინი კვლავ ამ ხიდის მშენებლობით იქნებიან დაკავებულნი. 26. ისინი დაგცინებენ, თუ ამ კაბას ჩაიცვამ. 27. ამ შაბათს დედა მაღაზიებს დაიარლის.
28. ერთ საათში ისინი სახლიდან გავლენ. უნდა ვიჩქაროთ, თორემ ვერ მივუსწრებთ. 29. დარწმუნებული ხარ, რომ ხვალ მთელი დღე ის უსაქმურად იხეტიალებს ქალაქში? 30. ეშინოდა, რომ მალე იწვიმებს. ჩვენ კი ქოლგაც არა გვაქვს.

Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences using the verbs in the *Future Continuous* where necessary.

1. ხვალ ისინი კარგ დროს გაატარებენ პიკნიკზე. 2. მალე ის კვლავ დაელაპარაკება დირექტორს. 3. ორ დღეში ჩვენ ახალმოსახლეობას ვიზეიმებთ. 4. არავინ არ ელოდება, რომ მე იქ ჩავალ, არავინ არ მელოდება. ყველას სიურპრიზს მოვუწყობ. 5. ერთ საათში უკვე დაბნელდება. ეიჩქაროთ, თორემ გზა აგვებნევა. 6. ალბათ საღამოს სახლში იქნებით, გინახულებთ. 7. ვიცი, მალე ის ახალ სამუშაოს მოძებნის. 8. მთელი დილა ნიკო მანქანის შეკეთებას მოუნდება. 9. ფრთხილად იყავი, გითვალთვალებენ. 10. ისინი მალე სოფელში წავლენ, არა? 11. ხვალ ეს ლექცია არ გვექნება, არა? 12. ხვალ რეა საათზე რას გააკეთებს? შეიძლება, რომ რესტორანში დაგპატიჟო? 13. როდის მექნება შემდეგი ლექცია ინგლისურში? 14. როდესაც პარიზში ჩავალ, ისინი აეროპორტში დამელოდებიან. 15. დეკემბერში გამოცდებისათვის მოვემზადები. 16. ნუ დაგვირეკავ სამ საათზე. ამ დროს თათბირი გვექნება დირექტორის კაბინეტში. 17. ნუ ეტყვი ამას ჩვენს მშობლებს, იბუზღუნებენ. 18. ნუ დატოვებ ბავშვებს სახლში მარტო, იჩხუბებენ. 19. არც იოცნებო, რომ ამ საქმეში მოგეხმარები. 20. არა მგონია, რომ ის ხვალ

რაიმე სასარგებლოს გააკეთებს. მთელი დღე ფეხბურთს ითამაშებს. 21. ნუ გგონია, რომ მათემატიკაში დაგეხმარები. ხვალ მთელი დღე ეზოში ყვავილებს დავრგავ. 22. არ იდარდო მის ჯანმრთელობაზე. რამდენიმე დღეში ის გამოჯანმრთელდება. 23. დროს ნუ კარგავ ლოგინში კოტრიალით, დირექტორი ხვალ მიგიღებს. 24. გირჩევნია, ამ ფილმს არ უყურო – კოშმარები დაგესიზმრება (to see nightmares). 25. თუ არ დამიჯერებ, პრობლემები შეგექმნება. 26. რატომ არ წახვალ სადმე და არ გაერთობი ცოტას? – სადმე რომ წავიდე, ბავშვი იტირებს. 27. რამდენიმე წუთში ჩვენი თეითმფრინავი აეროპორტში დაეშვება. 28. როდის უნდა ჩაიცვა ეს კაბა? 29. ის პენსიაზე საერთოდ არ აპირებს გასვლას. დარწმუნებული ვარ, რომ ოთხმოცი წლის ასაკშიც იმუშაებს. 30. ამ საღამოს არაფერს არ გავაკეთებ. ადრე დავწვები და ხვალ შუადღემდე ვიძინებ. 31. დაკავებული ხარ ამ საღამოს? თუ არა, ჩვენთან მოდი, წვეულება გვექნება.

Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences using the verbs in *the Future Continuous* where necessary.

1. მალე გნახავ ჩვენს ქალაქში, არა? 2. ეწუხვარ, მაგრამ დაგტოვებთ, მისის უორდლი. 3. ერთ-ერთი ჩვენი ნათესავი შეუძლოდაა და აქ დარჩება, სანამ ჩვენ არ მოვალთ მის წასაყვანად. 4. ყველაფერი ამის გამო, ინსპექტორი ესწრება ჩვენს სხდომას და ყველაფერს ჩაიწერს. 5. ხომ არ წამოხვალ ჩვენთან ერთად კაფეში ყავის დასალევად? 6. ნელის ქმარი ხვალ მთელი დღე მაღაზიებში ივლის, რომ მას ყველაზე ლამაზი საჩუქარი უყიდოს დაბადების დღისთვის.
7. როდესაც სახლში დაბრუნდები, ბავშვები შუაძილში იქნებიან. კარი ფრთხილად გააღე, რომ არ გააღვიძო. 8. ათ საათზე მას ფრანგულის გაკვეთილი ექნება. უფრო გვიან დაურეკეთ, მხოლოდ 9 საათის შემდეგ იქნება სახლში. 9. გვიან დაგირეკავ, სადღაც შვიდი საათის შემდეგ. 10. ხვალ ამ დროს ის უკანასკნელ გამოცდას ჩააბარებს. 11. ამ მოხსენებაზე დღეს 5 საათზე დაიწყებს მუშაობას, მთელი ღამე იმუშავებს, რადგან ხვალ დილით დირექტორთა თათბირზე უნდა წაიკითხოს ეს მოხსენება. 12. საინტერესოა, რას გააკეთებს ჩემი ძმა მთელი საღამო, სანამ სახლში არ ვიქნებით. 13. არასოდეს არ დაგივიწყებ. შენს სურათს გულის ჯიბეში შევინახავ. 14. ვიცი, ხვალ მთელი დღე კომპიუტერს ითამაშებ, მაგრამ ხვალ კომპიუტერი მეც მჭირდება.
15. პეტრემ ტელეფონის ნომერი აკრიფა და ანა იკითხა. "ხვალ თორმეტ საათზე გელოდებით", თქვა მან ყურმილში. 16. არ დაგავიწყდეს ქოლგის წამოღება,

მალე იწვიმებს. 17. ნუ დამიტოვებ ბაღშეს, იტირებს. 18. მთელი კვირა სახლში დარჩები? რას გააკეთებ? 19. მომავალ კვირას მას არ ეცლება, ქორწილისთვის სამზადისში იქნება. 20. თუ წიგნს გამომიგზავნი, ბიბლიოთეკაში არ წაველ. მთელი დღე სახლში დაეჯდები და თავაუღებლად ეიმუშავებ. 21. თუ ცოლად არ გამომყვები, მაინც ვერ დაგიიწყებ, მთელი ცხოვრება შენს სიყვარულს გულში შევინახავ. 22. ანა დღეს საღამოს ჩვენთან ვერ გამოიელის. მთელი საღამო ნამცხვრებს გამოაცხობს ნელის დაბადების დღისთვის. 23. ამ ზაფხულს ზღვაზე წავალ. მთელი დღეების განმავლობაში ეიბანაებ და მზეზე დაწვები. 24. თუ არ გადაიფიქრებ, ამ საღამოს დაგელოდები შვიდ საათზე. 25. ხვალ ამ დროს არაწესიერ ზმნებს ვისწავლი. 26. იცით, რომელ საათზე დაბრუნდებიან ისინი სახლში? 27. ნუ დაურეკავ, მას ჯერ კიდევ ეძინება. ხომ იცი, რა გვიან წვება. 28. რამდენიმე დღეში მტრედები თბილ ქვეყნებში გაფრინდებიან.
29. აუცილებლად დაგელოდებით, დაგებრუნდით. 30. მთელი ღამე ის იჯდება თავის ცარიელ ოთახში და შეყვარებულზე იფიქრებს.

The Present Perfect Tense

The Present Perfect is formed by means of the auxiliary verb ***"to have"*** in the Present Indefinite and Participle II of the notional verb.

The interrogative form is formed by inverting the auxiliary and subject, i.e. the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject and after the subject Participle II of the notional verb is used.

In the negative the negation ***"not"*** is placed after the auxiliary verb ***"to have"*** which is followed by participle II of the notional verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I have written	Have I written?	I have not (haven't) written
You have written	Have you written?	You have not (haven't) written
He (she, it) has written	Has he (she, it) written?	He (she, it) has not (hasn't) written
We have written	Have we written?	We have not (haven't) written
You have written	Have you written?	You have not (haven't) written
They have written	Have they written?	They have not (haven't) written

The Present Perfect denotes the action preceding the moment of speaking, though it is connected with it either directly or indirectly, i.e. a) it continues up to the moment of speaking, or b) takes place within a period of time before and includes the moment of speaking.

In all its uses the Present Perfect directly or indirectly refers actions to the moment of speaking, i.e. the Present Perfect is used in present time contexts, i.e. conversations, newspaper and radio reports, lectures and letters, dealing with the state of things in the present and is never found in narratives referring to the past.

The Present Perfect is used:

1. To denote a completed action connected with the present through its result. The speaker is interested in the mere fact that the action took place, but not in the time or the circumstances of the action. The time of the action is either not indicated at all, or is indicated by means of adverbs of indefinite time (***just, never, ever, already, yet, lately, recently, of late, finally, at last, etc.***):

There's that Lily. I'm sure I don't know what has come over her lately. She's not the girl she was at all.

Young man, have you ever thought seriously about the great facts of life and death?

Don't be grieved, old friend. I haven't failed. I've succeeded.

I have always thought them an ill-suited pair.

I have never met anyone to whom it was difficult to refuse a loan.

He has already learnt a great deal about her.

You haven't congratulated me yet, Dr Sheppard. Have you heard I am going to marry Ralph?

Note: With the adverb *"just"* the Present Perfect is used. (*He has just left the house.*) With the expression *"just now"* the Past indefinite is used. (*He left the house just now.*)

2. When the action is over but the period of time within which it was performed is not yet over at the moment of speaking. In this case the following adverbial modifiers of time are used: ***today, this week, this year, this month, this morning, etc.***:

What have they said to you today?

Have you seen Pete this week?

"I hope you have been at work this morning," said Fagin.

They have moved to a new flat this year.

However with the above-mentioned adverbial modifiers Past Indefinite and not the Present Perfect is used if the time period is over or the action refers to some particular moment of time within that period:

I spoke to Nick this morning. (said in the afternoon, in the evening, etc.)

I met them at the theatre this month. (the place implies a definite past time – the time we were at the theatre)

Likewise in the first of the two replies to the question *"Have you found your ring?" (Yes, I found it in my jewel-box.)* the Past Indefinite is used because the definite place signifies a concrete past time,

whereas in the second reply *(Yes, I have found it.)* the verb is in the Present Perfect as there is no indication of the past time and the action is connected with the present moment through its result.

Note: In interrogative sentences beginning with ***"when", "at what o'clock", "what time"*** only the Past Indefinite is used.

When did you arrive in Tbilisi?

When did it take place?

3. In adverbial clauses of time introduced by the conjunctions ***"when", "after", "before", "as soon as", "till"*** and ***"until"*** to emphasize the completion of the action of the subordinate clause before the action of the principal clause.

You will change your opinion of him after I've told you what he has done.

Don't go away till I have spoken/

There won't be anything left when we have finished.

When you have lived here a little longer you will see things differently.

4. To denote an action still lasting, begun before the moment of speaking and still going on. This use of the Present Perfect is called the Present Perfect Inclusive. The Present Perfect Inclusive is used with verbs not admitting of the continuous form. The whole period of the duration of the action may be indicated (but not necessarily) by the preposition ***"for"*** and the starting point of the action is marked by means of the conjunction ***"since"***:

We haven't been on speaking terms for twenty years.

Where have you been since last Thursday?

They say we haven't had snow like it for thirty years.

They've been married nearly ten years and they haven't had any children.

It is a protected environment, which I have known all my life.

The only excuse for an old maid is that she has pined thirty years for a lover who is buried under the snowdrops or has married another.

Note: One should distinguish between the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Indefinite when the period of duration is expressed by a prepositional phrase with ***"for"***. If the period of duration refers to the past, the Past Indefinite is used, but if the period of duration is connected with the moment of speaking or includes it, the Present Perfect is used:

When I first married I lived with my in-laws for two years.

I have lived in this country for two years and I have got accustomed to its ways.

Exercise 1. Comment on the use of *the Present Perfect* in the following sentences.

1. "Have you ever been married, Captain Meadows?" I asked. "Not me," he said.. "I know too much about women for that." 2. How's your boy, Henry? I see he's done pretty well in the

tournament. 3. "Were you in Dowse's?" "No, I was with the less illustrious – heavens, I've forgotten the man's name!" 4. And the things he says! You'd laugh! I've written a lot of them down in a book for fear of losing them. 5. "I'll tell you, mam," he began, "I've been through hell in the last six months, and I never want to go through it again." 6. Best-designed little kitchen I've ever seen, this one. Like a ship's galley." 7. Want to know something? I've never been angry in my life. 8. Last ten years I haven't been home.. Summers my father packs me off to camps, and the rest of the time I've been at boarding schools. 9. So sad, when you remember how wonderful she was, and how much she's always done for the village. 10. Don't beat about the bush, it isn't like you – not from all I've heard, and I don't want to be disappointed in you.. 11. Go ahead, Custer, tell him the truth. I've had that trick played on me before. 12. "What's this? A second breakfast?" "I'm quite sure you haven't even had a first breakfast." 13. We always kind of thought that place was cursed. Lots of funny things have happened there. Seen any ghosts yet? 14. I hope you haven't wasted today feeling bitter about Mr Payson. You have no right to bitterness. 15. "We've all enjoyed having you here, Lena," she said. "It's been a real treat." 16. I've known all the time who got that job for my father. 17. "Has anyone said anything about me?" Mason asked. "Well," Drake said, "the district attorney has made some remarks about spectacular methods used by an attorney with a statewide reputation which have turned the administration of justice into a burlesque. 18. "Why don't they go away?" he said despairingly. "They will, once they've seen you," I said. 19. In the past few years he has seldom travelled outside Greece. He's becoming a bit of a recluse in his twilight years, I think. 20. I've followed your career with a great deal of interest, Mr Mason. I think you have exceptional legal ability and an uncanny deductive skill. 21. He's only one of the richest men in the world. You've really never heard of him? 22. She's a peach. I've given her the glad eye once or twice, but I guess there's nothing doing. 23. I don't know very much about Uncle Arthur. I have never seen him, but I understand, generally, he's something of an eccentric. 24. Do you know you've asked him that five times since rising from dinner? 25. I'm just a bit tired, that's all. It's been a long day. I'm glad to finally be home.

Exercise 2. Use *the Present Perfect* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. You (to have) no dinner? Then come. I (to make) a tray for you. 2. Ned (to come) here each summer because, well, because I guess this is about the only home he has. 3. I know what you (to try) to give me and I am grateful. But it (to be) a foolish waste for us both. 4. I always (to say) I can stand any pain, any trouble – but not boredom. 5. There (to be) hundreds of similar break-ins during recent years and very little (to recover). 6. This is my old friend Bateman Hunter. I (to tell) you about him. 7. Just fancy he (not to be) here for more than fifty years. He

never even (to see) my George, who's fifty-one next birthday. 8. Darling! You don't know how happy you (to make) me. 9. yet I (to do) so myself before today. I (to omit) whole heinous episodes. I (to dwell) unduly on the redeeming side. 10. Oddly enough, we (to find) lately that for a great many things there is no need to use the head. 11. I already (to check) the distance between the bench and the place of the accident. 12. Champagne always (to be) a lousy drink for me. 13. I think it likely that few people besides myself ever actually (to see) and (to speak) with a "cave-man". 14. That's the sweetest thing you (to say) to me in days. 15. The last six months I (to think) a lot about my mother. 16. You (not to live) in the South long enough to know that nothing is ever anybody's fault? 17. You'll see what I (to write) about you. How are your guests? They (to sleep) well, I hope. 18. I'm sorry, we only just (to move in) and there's such a lot to do. 19. I (to know) them for many years. The man indeed is a compatriot of mine. 20. I (not to have) much chance of telling you the purpose of this expedition. Perhaps you (to guess) it already. 21. I (to be) a postman for twenty-eight years. 22. And may I now introduce you to Miss Jones, a lady who (to perform) the astonishing feat of noticing Water Poole from the highroad? 23. I (to knock) about so much in South America and Colorado and Ceylon that I'm merely a tramp Jungle rat. 24. May I ask why you (to think) it best to withdraw your money at this time? 25. There! There is no need to finish; my readers long since (to divine) it. 26. "The devil is like a roaring lion seeking whom he may devour." "He (not to devour) you." "Give him time." 27. No Poole (to live) here regularly since then.

Exercise 3. Use *the Present Perfect* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. But remember, it's later there than it is here. He (to be) on the job for two or three years.

2. Mason asked, "How long Mrs Wallman (to be) gone?" "About half or three quarters of an hour, I guess." 3. I know every inch of the ground, and since the house (to change) hands I have no compunction. 4. I thank you very much for the helpful information which you (to give) me. 5. We're decent people and we never (to have) anything to do with the police. 6. "You ever (to see) this particular mansion lit up before?" "Certainly – although it is now long ago." 7. So let me stay, our mam, because, I tell you, I (to suffer) a lot. 8. I think that is the stupidest thing I ever (to hear) you say. 9. When you are my age, Nox, I hope you will look back and know that we (to make) a good job of you. 10. Time (to pass) now and I (to bother) to get another picture for the wall. Maybe a war map would do it 11. You (to come) in regard to the kidnapping of the Prince of Wurttemberg? 12. It seems strange that you (to be) on board ship with us for four days, Mr Mason, and just (to come) to Father with this proposition. 13. Oh, yes, we never (to stay) so long in a town before – but I do hope we're here for good. 14. You're the only person she ever (to take) any notice of. 15. "You don't think we (to know) each other for too long?" "I

don't think we (to know) each other nearly long enough." 16. "You're very thin, darling," she said. Lena smiled bravely. "I've been through a good deal lately. I (to lose) a lot of weight." 17. "Fred (to come) back?" "Well, where you (to be)? Come and have a drink and talk to me." "I (to be) everywhere. Everywhere possible." 18. "You're not still at the old Tax grind, are you?" "I just (to retire)." 19. "How long you (to know) Fremont C. Sabin?" "Five years." 20. I think when you (to finish) your coffee, young man, we ought to be going. 21."And where is she today?" "She and my mother (to go out) for lunch." "You always (to live) in the lodge?" "Yes, always." 22. "You may have noticed that I (to be) fussy about my clothing of late, Mullet?" "Oh, no, sir." "Well, I (to be), and that was the reason." 23. For some time past I (to be) the recipient of very marked attentions from a young lady. 24. "And your father", Mason interrupted, "rather studiously (to avoid) me. I (to gather) from what your mother (to say) that he is prejudiced against lawyers." 25. I ran to the door and opened it. I said, "Thank God you (to come), my sister just (to eat) a bottle full of sleeping pills".

Exercise 4. Use *the Present Perfect* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. I am sorry to hear that some delay (to occur) in the arrangements relating to Major Brown. 2. I just about (to finish) your costume for the play, and we can have a fitting. 3. The weather (to clear) all right, but the sea (not to go) down yet. 4. I suppose you (to come) for a good rest and change. 5. "How long you (to be married), Mrs Androvich?" "To Karl? Six months." 6. "Is Karl your second husband?" "No. He's my first husband. Only husband I ever (to have)." 7. I see you (to bring) two suitcases. I'll put out some of her clothes for you. 8. What sort of picture of me my reader (to receive)? I fear it must lack definition, since I never (to have) any strong sense of my identity 9. "Where is everybody? Why they (not to be) in touch?" "Everyone (to be) in touch. There's a pile of telegrams and phone messages downstairs." 10. Do you mean to say you (to know) her since she was a child? 11. I (to have) a bad day and I (to think) of many things. 12. "I say, you ever (to hear) of a girl called Avice Crichton?" "Never." 13. I do not wish to go on with my life as it (to be). I (not to be) happy, and I cannot continue here. I cannot be what you (to wish) me to be. 14. "I think I'll go to bed if you don't mind." "I'm sorry, I still (not to make up) the spare bed." 15. That blasted woman For a fortnight I (to watch) her gorge like a hog. It's more than flesh and blood can stand. 16. "D'you mean to say I don't look thinner? After all I (to go through)." "Yes, dear, of course, you do. Everybody (to notice) it." 17. "I just (to finish) Crispin's bedroom floor." "Where is he?" "He (to go) to spend the day with the schoolmaster's family." 18. Look here, Mr Mason. I (to be) married. I'm not exactly a prude." 19. Take, for example, this well-known instance – a story which, in one form or other, everybody (to hear). 20. I just (to have) a session with Charles Sabin and Richard Waid, the

secretary. 21. Do you know that Lady Florena (to break off) her engagement with me? 22. This year we (to take on) only one new assistant. You (to come) with excellent recommendations and you'll have every opportunity to live up to them. 23. I (to read) that this house (to know) at least one ghost, which would seem to indicate the possibility, at least, of another. 24. Come on over here, darling, and tell me about yourself. I (to miss) you. 25. My poor dear, you (to have) your breakfast? I'll order some for you at once.

Exercise 5. Use *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. He (to come) round here about once a fortnight and we never (to buy) anything from him yet. 2. And now that you (to satisfy) your curiosity by looking at me and (to have) your laugh I (to want) to hear no more of you. 3. You (to know) in a way I (to feel) so sorry for Roger, he (to be) so miserable, shouting at me or else not talking at all, he must be so terribly unhappy inside himself. 4. After seven summers I (to come) to the conclusion that your wife (to consider) it vulgar to mention anything by name. 5. Night shift (to mean) going outside in the dark, which I always (to fear), but it (to mean) I shall be available all day. 6. I always (to be) of opinion that a man who (to desire) to get married should know either everything or nothing. 7. Very possibly, as he (to assert), Mr Mullettis is a reformed character. But this (not to alter) the fact that he (to do) his bit of time. 8. You (to stand) there and (to tell) me that you (to know) this wonderful girl for many years and are not in love with her? 9. It (to worry) me that Fred Narracott (not to be over) today. 10. "Things (to change)." "You (to mean) that you (to change) or that Christabel (to change)?" "Both, I (to suppose)." 11. I (to fear) for your sanity. You are a stupid woman and recently you (to develop) this insolence. Most of what you (to say) (to make) little sense.

12. From what I (to see) of Winnie Joyce on the screen, she's a nice kid. There's a startling resemblance, though. Not only Belle Newberry (to resemble) her in face and figure, but in action and temperament. 13. The whole thing (to sound) like the sale of a shore-front property. I (not to know). It (to seem) to me I (to be) so mixed up. 14. I (to feel) undertones of something or other committee meetings of late. One (to become) tired of sitting round a table. 15. You (to think) Miss Jones simply (to stray) in on the party? 16. I (to be) so wrong and so careless in not seeing it. You (to want) to go home now? 17. Now it's Wednesday, and she (not to answer) by line or sign. 18. You (to ask) me to tell you, sir, who (to take) your money. 19. You (to have) no idea how much I (to appreciate) what you (to do) for me. 20. I (to hope) my young sisters (to be) decent to you. 21. What you (to think) I am? That's what I (to come) to ask you. We (to be) friends, we? But all the same, you (to think) I'm – well, a gigolo. A creature who (to live) on women 22. "Somebody (to be) here before," said Hooker, clearing his throat. 23. I (not to

see) her at church since she came. 24. We (to suspend) the meetings for two weeks, so maybe I can get some rest. 25. Since my poor father's death he (to be) like a father to me. 26. Look at that then if you (not to believe) me. 27. I (to be) in the forest service, and I (to work) cattle, and I (to know) how to read trail. 28. Now he (to be) twenty-five. Ackroyd always (to regard) him as his own son.

Exercise 6. Use *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. "I (to feel) convinced, Mr Mullet," he said, "that I (to see) your face before." "And I(to say) you (not to see) it," said the vallet testily. 2. And, of course, as Mr Mullet long since (to expiate) his offence, I (to need) scarcely say that we of the Force (to have) nothing against him. 3. "You never (to come) and (to keep) watch, even at the appropriate season." "Good lord, no." Poole was again determinedly amused. "I (to tell) you I (not to take) any interest in spooks." 4. "So you (to have) a baby?" he said. "That's the time to look out. After a pretty woman (to have) her first child, she's very vulnerable, because she (to want) to be reassured about her own charm".
5. I (to be) so unhappy for years. I (not to understand) how a human being can be so unhappy all the time and still be alive." 6. I (to mean) that death (to beget) death. You (to tell) me before of your Housemaster's death. 7. but now I (to see) that's all wrong. I (to take) a vow, Mr Southwick; I (to take) the vow of Voluntary Poverty. 8. And until I (to bring) matters to a head, I (not to want) your husband to even know that I'm working on the ease. 9. "You (to have) any idea how much money he (to leave)?" "No. He (to carry) it all in a money belt." 10. I (to point out) very clearly that there is nobody with such a strong bias towards honesty as the man who just (to come) out prison. It (to stand) to reason. 11. I (to say) a hundred times that, since you came, Sigsbee (to be) a different man. He (to know) all the forks now, and can even talk intelligently about soufflés. 12. "I (not to come) to seek fame and fortune." "But I (to scent) a purpose," he said. 13. "They (to give) you a bad cabin?" I asked. "Oh, it's only that I (to prefer) the starboard side." 14. "But I (to win) every time, sir. I (not to lose) one fight with that old Tempter since I (to be) in your employment, Mr Finch." 15. "I (to want) you to understand," Helen Monteith said, "That I (to do) nothing wrong – nothing of which I (to be) ashamed".
16. She (to be) extremely indiscreet and her fortune (to hang) upon the Prince. 17. Our friendship is a tough plant, Bradley. Look, I just (to refuse) to pretend that this thing (not to happen) and (not to think) you ought to either. 18. "And Marcel? What you (to propose) to do with Marcel?" "I (not to decide). Tomorrow I must have a word with him. You (to know) he (to own) a third of the hotel? 19. They (to give) you a nice room,I (to hope). Some of the rooms (to remain) a little bare. For want of a ready cash. 20. "What they (to say) you (to do), Mr Jones?"

"I (not to have) much of an opportunity to do anything. I didn't even get through the customs. They (not to explain) things very clearly to me yet."

Exercise 7. Use *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. I often (to notice) that a bribe (to have) that effect – it (to change) a relation. The man who (to offer) a bribe (to give) away a little of his own importance; the bribe once accepted, he (to become) the inferior, like a man who (to pay) for a woman. 2. I (to know) lots of girls. I (to suppose) I'm considered a good matrimonial catch. The girls themselves (to be) pretty decent. But mothers (to dangle) their daughters in front for my eyes until I (to feel) that I (to see) them all. 3. "What Hungerford (to want)?" "I (not to know). I (to be) too busy to see him. I (to engage) a suite of rooms in San Francisco and have a plane chartered and waiting." 4. You (to be) always so interested in Scotland, and that is one reason why I (to be) interested in you. I (to enjoy) all your books, but you really (to get) to grips with people? I (to doubt) it. 5. On the trees are only a few gnarled apples that the pickers (to reject). They (to look) like the knuckles of Doctor Refy's hand. One (to nimble) at them and they are delicious. Into a little round place at the side of the apple (to be) gathered all of its sweetness. 6. Why you (not to marry) her yourself, Bateman? You (to be) in love with her for ages. You (to be) perfectly suited to one another.
7. You (to wish) me to give her that message, Edward? Oh, I can't. It's terrible. It never (to dawn) on her for a moment that you (not to want) to marry her. She (to love) you. 8. Tell her that I (not to make) good. Tell her that I (not to be) only poor, but that I (to be) content to be poor. Tell her all you (to see) tonight and all I (to tell) you. 9. I (to mean): I (to have) the money and everything, but I can't pay you for something you (not to earn). 10. Once I (to reach) that conclusion, I figure there must be some discrepancy between the evidence and the conclusions the police (to draw) from that evidence. 11. Many a young man (to admit) after marriage with regret that he (to select) his wife too rashly. 12. He always (to stand) there – and (to stand) there thirty years – in the back part of his shop 13. Yet everybody nowadays (to know) all about the caveman. The fifteen-cent magazines and the new fiction (to make) him a familiar figure Lately, for some reason or other, there (to be) a run on the cave-man. 14. Doll, don't ask me. I (to be) so busy swinging propositions and lining things up and breathing and eating spinach, that I never (to have) time to find out what on earth the company (to do). 15. Lately I (to see) her around town quite often with a chap named Thaler – he (to run) a couple of gambling houses here. They (to call) him Whisper. You probably (to hear) of him. 16. I (to think) it's the meanest, rotten thing I ever (to hear) of. 17. Six weeks ago he had a kind of awful experience

and he never (to be) the same since. And very likely he (to brood) about that too. 18. Perhaps he (to lose) his job and (not to dare) to tell me. 19. Paco Espinel (to tell) me it's the biggest draw the Casino ever (to have).

Exercise 8. Use *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. Things (to happen) at last, I (to develop), I (to change), think of all that (to happen) since yesterday. I (to be) dead for years and unhappy and terribly secretive. 2. "Put up with me a little longer, kid. I (to get) older and I'll soon wear down." "I never (to hear) you speak of getting old." 3. They (to identify) Mrs Newberry as Mrs Moar and one of the San Francisco papers (to run) a story about the embezzlement. Roy Hungerford (to wait) in the reception room. 4. We're from the police station and we (to have) complaints that you (to give) these little girls money and (to lead) them the wrong way. 5. We (to know) you for years in fact, and we (to ask) you to leave those girls alone and have nothing more to do with them. 6. Helen, I (to be) your friend for years and why you (to take) this load of misery and danger on your own shoulders? 7. Talk of immorality! I (to hear) of cases – what I (to say)? – I (to know) them: cases of immorality.
8. What's all the commotion about? The ship (to jump) around so I can hardly stand up. We (not to run) into anything? Look at the searchlights! 9. "You (to talk) with Belle?" "No, I can't. They (to hold) her in San Francisco". 10. This (to go) far enough. I know that this time Jik will be all right again in a day or two, but we (not to take) any more risks. 11. But I only (to come) to say this: my sister is desirous of seeing you. She (to come) here. 12. We only (to grow) the safer vegetables at present till we (to gain) experience. 13. "What you (to eat), Mrs Smith?" "I don't know why you should ask, Mr Brown. You (to see) me eat it every evening at the same hour. Slippery Elm Food". 14. "Since then I (to haunt) the sidewalk outside her house. I don't know why I (to tell) you this, Mullet".

Exercise 9. Use *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. "How long your sister (to be) in Honolulu, Miss Whiting?" "Just two weeks." "You (to work)?" Mason inquired. "Pardon me, I (not to try) to pry into your affairs, but ..." It's quite all right, Mr Mason," she told him. "No, I (not to work) now. I (to look) for a secretarial position."
2. "Who (to take care) of your fees?" Hungerford asked abruptly. "Mrs Moar will," Mason said. "I (not to discuss) fees with her as yet." 3. "You (not to sacrifice) yourself for me? I couldn't stand for that, you know." "No, Batman, I (to learn) not to be silly and sentimental here." 4. It appears that people (to say) rather disagreeable things about me. Someone (to be) to Michael

and (to tell) him that there's a lot of gossip about me and poor Tom Fennel! 5. Mrs Sabin (to take) particular pains to tell me that she's going to be in the saddle. 6. All right, then. I'll say something. I (to tell) Charles Sabin, and now I (to tell) you. I know only too well that Charles (to resent) me ever since I married into this family. 7. "I wonder if it still (to snow)?" "I think it (to stop)." 8. Mother (to come) from the office and (to cook) dinner now. 9. Bill (to do) all his lessons and (to watch) a football match now. 10. I (to work) as I can, and I (to support) you. I still (to support) you. 11. "Where's my dad?" "Eh, I don't know. He (to take) a bundle in the blue handkerchief, and says he (not to come) back again. 12. "They (to hit) him!" Sikes shouted. "He (to bleed)." 13. I (to come) to see you about a woman who (to lodge) in the same house as we (to be). 14. What's that? Why you (to watch) me? What you (to see)? Speak up, boy!

Exercise 10. Rewrite the sentences using *the Present Perfect* or *the Past Indefinite*.

Models: *I am making a dress for my daughter. (already, yesterday)*

I have already made a dress for my daughter.

I made a dress for my daughter yesterday.

1. Grandmother is cooking dinner. (an hour ago, not yet) 2. The students are writing a test. (two days ago, already) 3. John is building a house in the country. (last year, this year) 4. Pete is ringing up Nellie. (just, two hours ago) 5. Kitty is doing her homework. (yesterday, already) 6. The teacher is explaining a new rule. (at the last lesson, just) 7. He is meeting his classmates. (last week, this week) 8. He is living in a hostel. (since he arrived in our town, in 1998) 9. He is telling us about his plans. (lately, then) 10. They are going to Italy. (this year, three years ago) 11. Mother is baking a cake. (already, in the morning) 12. Ann isn't speaking to us. (for a week, when we met her) 13. He knows our neighbours. (for three years, ten years ago) 14. Pete loves my classmate Kitty. (for three years, two years ago) 15. My aunt is ill. (recently, last month) 16. We don't hear from them very often. (for ages, last year) 17. She is angry with us. (since yesterday, yesterday) 18. Pete's sister is cleaning the windows. (just, last Saturday) 19. Mr Brown is buying sweets in our shop. (many times, a few days ago) 20. The birds are coming back from the South. (already, at the end of April) 21. We are fond of your sister. (since we got acquainted with her, when we were at school)

Exercise 11. Rewrite the sentences using *the Present Perfect* or *the Past Indefinite*. (Follow the models of the previous exercise).

1. Is the train leaving? (already, ten minutes ago) 2. It is raining now. (often, when you were in Batumi; since Monday) 3. They are in London. (three months ago, this month) 4. This writer is writing a novel. (just, last month) 5. His father is playing football. (in his childhood, since he

was fourteen) 6. I want to see my teacher. (for a week, last week) 7. I am reading a novel by A. Christie. (this month, last month) 8. The bell is ringing. (some minutes ago, not yet) 9. I don't see her every week. (since we finished school, last week) 10. He isn't buying fruit. (today, yesterday) 11. We are not receiving any letters from her. (of late, last month) 12. It s snowing now. (for a long time, last winter) 13. I am wearing a woolen jacket. (since Mother bought it for me, at school two days ago) 14. She is eating caviar. (never, when she was ill) 15. Mother is doing the flat. (on Sunday, today) 16. I am having an English lesson.(this week, last week) 17. We are translating a tex. (just, twenty minutes ago) 18. We live in Tbilisi. (since we arrived from Sokhumi, when you met us last month) 19. I am meeting Nick. (many times, in 2005 last) 20. The performance is beginning. (not yet, ten minutes ago) 21. He has a car. (since last year, two years ago) 22. He is not having a holiday. (for five years, last year) 23. He helps his son with mathematics. (never, on Sunday)

Exercise 12. Use *the Present Perfect* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. I think you (to love) always her. I don't think there (to be) a time when you (not to love) her. She (to be) always so fond of you. 2. You see, my daughter's happiness (to be) on my mind ever since I (to hear) this about the Products Refining Company. 3. I (to show) my love for him by bequeathing to him the large fortune which I (to inherit) from the late Mr Stainberg. 4. Mrs Newberry, are you absolutely certain you (not to see) your husband since he (to leave) this stateroom? 5. He (to drink) some whisky slowly. "It's ironic, you know. I always (to have) a regard for the police. I (not to know) they could be the way they are." 6. "Well," I (to continue). "I always (to admire) you so much, your wonderful brain and genius, that I (to feel) I (to want) to speak to you and ask you how you are." 7. They (to leave) the house about midnight and (not to return) since. 8. Even from where I (to be) I (to hear) her say: "He never (to go) and (to get run over)." 9. I already (to speak) to the attendant who (to serve) you at Sanchia's, an obscure milliner in a back street near Portland. 10. "I'm sorry you (to be) annoyed about this," Cuttler (to apologize) to Rooney, and once more his eyes (to sweep) approvingly over Marjory Tenton's figure. 11. "It (to be) Carl's gun?" "Yes." "How long he (to have) it?" "About two months. When he (to start) carrying large sums of money with him, he (to think) he (to need) a gun for protection." 12. The captain (to regard) Mason thoughtfully for a few moments, then (to turn) back to Mrs Newberry. "I notice you (to change) your dress, Mrs Newberry." The captain (to say) doggedly, "I want to know why you (to change) your dress." 13. "Who (to be) it?" Gibbs (to ask). "His picture (to be) in the paper recently?" "Just a man who (to like) parrots," Mason (to say) casually. 14. "I (not to smoke) a fag in twenty years. You know that. Don't you remember how I (to start) smoking a pipe? We were courting. You (to give) me one once for my

birthday". 15. I (to be) in San Francisco when my grandmother (to become) ill. That (to be) why I (to be) so long in getting back. 16. "Well, I first (to know) Molly when her mother (to be) alive." "Her mother is alive. I (to see) her. A woman who looks like Catherine of Russia."

17. "That's all my hard work. You (to hear) about my house?" "Mabel just (to tell) me. She (to tell) me about the divorce too. I'm sorry." 18. Henry Carnet's frown (to grow) darker. "He (to do) no better than I (to expect) him to." 19. "She (not to go)? I (to think) she (to give) a second performance at two?" "That's true. They might be in the bar." 20. And mind you, I (not to be) out of my bed for two years. They (to carry) me down and (to put) me in the car. 21. You (not to answer) my challenge. I (to say) you deliberately (to make) me unhappy and nervous. I (to wish) only to remind you of the death of Dowse 22. Mason (to look) at the stamps, (to study) the postmarks and (to say), "This one (to leave) Honolulu the day before yesterday." "Yes," she (to say), "I (to get) it yesterday. It's the last letter I (to receive) from Sis". 23. My husband is in the administration in Morocco, and (to come) to Monte Carlo for a few weeks because he (to think) I (to want) a change. 24. We (to go) to school together. When we're in Washington, we get together socially about once a month. I (not to see) him much since we (to be) here because he's tied up. I trust him implicitly. 25. My poor lad (not to realize) even what it (to cost) me and how I (to work) to keep us together all these years, ever since your poor dad (to die).

Exercise 13. Use *the Present Perfect* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. I (to be) astonished how much she (to grow) in ten months. 2. My landlady, my servant, my friends all (to read) the description of the woman who (to murder) Mr Culledon. 3. "I (to be) in my cabin reading. Why you (not to give) me a buzz?" She (to laugh), and (to say), "I (to want) the meeting to appear casual." 4. She (to mean) to have that money even at the cost of one of the most dastardly murders that ever (to darken) the criminal annals of this country. 5. I (to tell) the police no more than (to be) absolutely necessary. I (not to volunteer) information. 6. He (to know) I (not to want) to buy the book. "You (to read) it?" I asked. "Dear me, no!" said the manager. 7. It (to be) a long time since we (to see) each other, it? 8. "How long you (to have) the wrist watch?" Mason (to ask) casually. "How long since it (to be) stolen from Mrs Drake?" she (to counter). "About three months." 9. I (to know) you would do it. I always (to think) of you as a real friend. 10. She (to fling) her parcels on the floor and (to snatch) the child from him. "What you (to do) to him?" she (to cry), glaring into his face. 11. Right at present the police (not to identify) that murder weapon; that is, they (not to find) out where it (to come) from. 12. I never (to see) it before. My aunt (to swear) it (to get) inside her locked trunk once when she and my uncle (to drive) out to Ayers Rock. 13. The wife of a friend of mine (to have) an accident. She (to fall). 14. If you really feel like that about it, I (to tell) Espinel you (to have) a fainting fit.

15. If I (not to finish) every picture I started it's because I'm good enough to know they weren't good enough. 16. "Find out how much money your husband (to leave), and get it in my hands." 17. She (to sit) down beside him, saying not a word, and (to take) his hand in hers, with the other she (to stroke) his pink palm. 18. The coroner at San Molinas (to call) an inquest for eight o'clock this evening

Exercise 14. Use *the Present Perfect* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. "Is that all you have for bed?" Mr Smith asked with indignation. "I (to sleep) in worse places." 2. My dear woman, you are too clever by half. I (to say) it before and I can only repeat it. 3. "When you (to get) those clothes, father?" "A week ago." 4. "You (not to recognize) me last night?" "You (to change)". 5. I (to have) quite a trip. I (to fly) from New York down to Central America to pick up mother, and (to come) back with her. I even (to tub) yet. 6. You see, my daughter's happiness (to be) on my mind ever since (to hear) this about the Products Refining Company. 7. A year ago I (to come) into a legacy – enough to enable me to realize a dream. I always (to want) to travel, to see the world. 8. I (to know) Ralph Paton ever since he (to be) a boy. 9. We (to be engaged) for about a month, but we (to announce) it only yesterday. 10. I (to notice) that Raymond's hand was shaking. "Robbery, I suppose," he (to say). "How the robber (to get in)? He (to take) anything?" 11. "My dad (to come) home?" he (to say). "I (to see) him at the pub, he was helping to serve the beer." 12. Mrs Mann (to take) his hat and coat, (to place) a chair for him and (to express) great concern for his comfort. "You (to have) a long walk, M. Bumble," she (to say), "and you are thirsty." 13. I (not to sleep) under a roof since I (to start) my journey. 14. Ever since people (to realize) the Earth (to be) just a tiny part of the universe, they (to wonder) about the existence of other intelligent life forms. 15. Sikes (to seize) the boy's collar through the window. "They (to hit) him!" Sikes (to shout). 16. As a young man, he (to serve) abroad for many years as a doctor in the Army. 17. He claims he (not to hear) anything because he was listening to a football game and he (to have) the volume on high, but I (to hear) that one before. 18. You know I never (to have) eyes for anyone but you and I could never think that anyone (to be) like you.

Exercise 15. Give additional information to the following sentences using the words in brackets.

1. I am in the trade. (for thirty years) 2. No one lives in this house. (for many years) 3. You don't have your dinner. (yet) 4. I want to see it, just as much as you do. (always) 5. They don't see you. (all these years) 6. You do nothing but moon. (since we saw the dead Chinaman) 7. You are away now. (five or six years) 8. It's the only thing I want to do. (since I left school) 9. I don't

speak to them. (for twenty years) 10. I love it. I dream of it. I live on it. (for the last three years) 11. Who can say he is not in love? (never) 12. They are parasites such as Europe does not know. (in a hundred years) 13. I know a few men. (since then) 14. Iris takes no notice of us. (ever since we got here) 15. I know Ralph Paton. (from a boy upward) 16. I want to go to South America . (always) 17. You may thank your stars I came back. (tonight) 18. "I think I shall walk down to the gate." "You already do that." (twice in the last hour) 19. I am not near the telephone. (the whole evening) 20. She is the most beautiful girl that I see. (ever) 21. Don't speak to them. The Cronin boys are impolite rude boys. (always) 22. "Do you like hot cinnamon buns?" "I don't have one." (since I was ten years old) 23. You are a trouble. (since you came to the islands) 24. I don't love anybody in the world but you. (never) 25. I don't attend rehearsals. (never) 26. She has the wrist watch. (just about six months) 27. I don't eat potatoes (for twenty-five years). 28. I have nothing on my mind. (since last night) 29. You develop the Rabit. (already) 30. I love Francis. (all my life) 31. Edgar Linton asked me to marry him. (today) 32. I have the police here. (half the day) 33. He quite often sees his teacher. (lately)

Exercise 16. Compare and choose the proper form.

1. Gennaro was / has been here two days ago. 2. You were / have been away now five or six years and grew / have grown into womanhood. 3. They never saw / have seen either of you all these years. 4. That's fine, only relax, sonny, relax. Nobody arrested / has arrested you. 5. It's not the first time I have / have had reins in my hands. 6. I think she got married / has got married last year. 7. They made / have made friends early in life. 8 "You didn't congratulate / haven't congratulated me yet, Dr Sheppard," said Flora. "Didn't you hear?" / Haven't you heard?" 9. I knew / have known her when she was a child. 10. We're afraid there was / has been an attempt at robbery, and we want you to help us. 11. I'm so miserable. I always was / have been a good wife to George. I worked / have worked my fingers to the bone in our early days. I never looked / have looked at any other man. 12. I didn't see / haven't seen Jane when I came / have come. Where is she? 13. Jack was / has been here requiring after you. 14. "You can't jail him," the deputy said. "He didn't do / hasn't done anything." 15. I didn't much like / haven't much liked sleeping by myself the last two nights. 16. I didn't much like / haven't much liked sleeping by myself last night. 17. What time did the concert begin / has the concert begun? 18. I did / have done a little drawing which I want you to accept. 19. The other day I did / have done a little drawing which I want you to accept. 20. "We lived / have lived side by side but we hardly spoke / have spoken to each other," he said. 21. We lived / have lived side by side in Brighton but we hardly spoke / have spoken to each other. 22. I know all about your marriage. Nick told / has told me about it when we met / have met. 23. I met / have met Nick at the Institute today.

24. Did you have / Have you had breakfast? – Yes, I did / have. 25. Did you have / Have you had breakfast? – Yes, I had / have had it at the canteen. 26. Did you find / Have you found your ring? – Yes, I did / have. 27. Did you find / Have you found your ring? – Yes, I found / have found it in my handbag. 28. I'm very sorry to hear that poor fellow took up / has taken up his evil course again.

Exercise 17. Give Georgian equivalents to the following proverbs. Use them in short situations of your own.

1. A thief passes for a gentleman when stealing has made him rich. 2. Much water has flown under the bridges since 3. Bacchus has drowned more men than Neptune. 4. Who has never tasted bitter, knows not what is sweet. 5. We know not what is good until we have lost it.
6. Never cross the bridge until you have come to it. 7. What man has done man can do. 8. When children stand quiet, they have done some harm. 9. You have made your bed, you must lie on it.
10. He knows best what good is that has endured evil. 11. He knows the water best who has waded through it. 12. Never cast dirt into that fountain of which thou hast sometime drunk.
13. Faint heart has never won fair lady.

Exercise 18. Translate the following sentences into English using the verbs in *the Present Perfect* where necessary.

1. მას არასოდეს არ უნახავს ეს მსახიობი, მაგრამ ბევრი სმენია მის შესახებ ნაცნობებისგან. 2. გმადლობთ, მე ეს-ეს არის ვისადილე და არ მშია. 3. მან ეს-ეს არის სადგურში დარეკა და გაიგო, რომ მატარებელი უკვე ჩამოვიდა ბათუმიდან. 4. წერილი უკვე დაეწერე, მაგრამ ჯერ არ გამიგზავნია. 5. მე ბედისწერის ყოველთვის მჯეროდა, მიუხედავად იმისა, რომ ეს ხმამაღლა არასოდეს მითქვამს. 6. ავადმყოფის მდგომარეობა საკმაოდ სერიოზულია. ძალიან ბევრი სისხლი დაკარგა. 7. მე გავიგე, რომ ის გამოცდაზე ჩაიჭრა.
8. ბოლო დროს თაეს კარგად ვერ ვგრძნობ და რამდენიმე ლექცია გავაცდინე.
9. მამამ დღეს ახალი გაზეთები იყიდა? 10. მე ყოველთვის მჯეროდა მისი.
11. რამდენი ხანია, რაც კუჭი გტკივა? რატომ არასოდეს გითქვამთ ჩემთვის?
12. ღმერთო ჩემო, ანა, ეს რა უქნი საკუთარ თავს, სახე ისე შეგიღებავს, რომ ძლივს გცნობ. 13. რა მოგივიდა? – ეფიქრობ, გავცივდი. მაღალი სიცხე მაქვს და თავიც მტკივა. 14. ყოველთვის ვიცოდი, რომ აქ არის ძაღლის თაეი დამარხული.
15. რატომ ბნელა ოთახში? მუქი სქელი ფარდები ჩამოვკიდე. 16. შეხედე, შარელის ჯიბე გაგიხევია. 17. მიყვარს სადილების მომზადება, დედამ მასწავლა.
18. ჩაიდანი დადგი ასადუღებლად? – დიახ, ეს-ეს არის დავდგი. 19. ბავშვობიდან

ემეგობრობთ და ყოველთვის ეიზიარებდით ერთმანეთის პრობლემებს. 20. ამ ხნის განმავლობაში, რაც მას ეიცნობ, არასოდეს ჩაუდენია უღირსი საქციელი. 21. ოდესმე გაგიისინჯავს ჩინური კერძები? ძალიან გემრიელია. 22. ორი წელია რონის არ გახსენებიხარ, დარეკვითაც არ დაურეკავს. ახლა კი ახალ სახლში გეპატიჟება? 23. ჩემს მეუღლეს საიდუმლო გაუმჟღავნე, თუმცა ოთარისთვის არაფერი გეითქვამს. მეუღლე ძალიან გემადლიერებათ. 24. რა ხანია არ მინახიხარ! რა ხდება თბილისში? 25. რუკა მოვიტანე, ახლა კი შეგვიძლია საგანძურიც მოვძებნოთ. 26. მე ჯერ საუბარი არ დამიმთავრებია. ნუ წახვალ, დაჯექი და მომისმინე. 27. მე ლეო ბონეტის მეგობარი ვარ და დღეს გავიგე მისი სიკვდილის შესახებ. თქვენ მისი მკვლელები გინახავთ და ეს ამბავი მაინტერესებს. 28. რატომ მოხვედით? – იცით, მე ვინ ვარ! – რა თქმა უნდა. თქვენ თითქმის ყველა არხზე გნახეთ ტელევიზიით. მერე ეს გაზეთებიც. რამდენიმე დღეა, სულ პირველ გვერდზე ხართ.

Exercise 19. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Present Perfect*, *Present Indefinite*, *Past Indefinite*, *Future Indefinite*, *Present Continuous* where necessary.

1. სად არის მამა? – ის უკვე სამსახურში წავიდა. – რატომ წავიდა ასე ადრე? – ადრე არაა. ეს შენ ადექი გვიან. 2. ბოლო დროს მან გამოაქვეყნა ლექსების ორი კრებული. ის ძალიან ნაყოფიერი პოეტია. 3. რა ცუდია, რომ დამავიწყდა სიგარეტების ყიდვა. ძალიან მინდა მოვწიო. 4. თქვენ დღეს ნახეთ პეტრე? – დიახ, ის ორი საათის წინ მოვიდა და მალევე წავიდა. 5. მზე ჯერ არ ამოსულა და მამა უკვე ბაღში მუშაობს. 6. მე არასოდეს მიჭამია ასეთი გემრიელი ნამცხვარი. ვინ გამოაცხო? რეცეპტს ხომ არ მომცემთ? 7. ჩემი საათი გაჩერდა. მას რაღაცა სჭირს. 8. რას მელაპარაკები? რა, უკვე დაგავიწყდა, რასაც შემპირდი? 9. წვიმამ გადაიღო? – არა, უფრო გაძლიერდა. რა ვქნათ, ვერსად ვერ წავალთ. 10. თქვენ უკვე ელაპარაკეთ ნიკოს? – არა, მაგრამ ეს-ეს არის მისგან შეტყობინება მივიღე. 11. მე არ ვყოფილვარ სოფელში გასული ზაფხულიდან. მაინტერესებს, როგორ არიან ჩემი მეზობლები. 12. მაპატიეთ, დამავიწყდა თქვენი ტელეფონის ნომერი. მითხარით, გეთაყვა და ჩავიწერ. 13. ამ კვირას ჩვენ ორი საკონტროლო გვქონდა ინგლისურში. 14. ჩვენ არ გვინახავს ნელი ბოლო ხანს. როგორ არის? ხომ არ გათხოვილა? 15. წელს ის ორჯერ გაციებდა და ბევრი გაკვეთილი გააცდინა. 16. მე მის წერილს მხოლოდ დღეს ვუპასუხე. მთელი კვირა არ მქონდა დრო ამისთვის. 17. ზარი ჯერ არ დარეკილა და სტუდენტები ხმამაღლა ლაპარაკობენ და იცინიან. 18. ნიკო დაბრუნდა

სკოლიდან? – არა, ჯერ არ დაბრუნებულა. მთელი კეირაა, სულ აგვიანებს სახლში მოსვლას. 19. ვერ გეტყვით, მომწონს თუ არა ეს ფილმი, რადგან ჯერ არ მინახაცს. 20. არასოდეს მსმენია ასეთი საშინელი ამბავი. ვინ გიამბოთ?

21. რამდენი ინგლისური წიგნი წაიკითხეთ მას შემდეგ, რაც ინსტიტუტი დაამთავრეთ? 22. რაც სკოლა დავამთავრე, არ მინახაცს ჩემი მეგობარი. ამბობენ, ძალიან შეიცვალაო. 23. რაღაცა დაეცა იატაკზე. ნახე, რა არის. 24. ხომ არ იცით, პეტრე სად წავიდა. 25. რაც მოვედი შენ არაფერი გითქვამს. რამე ხომ არ გეწყინა ჩემგან? 26. მას ძალიან ეხერხება უცხო ენები. ფრანგული უკვე შეისწავლა და ახლა ჩინურს სწაელობს. 27. ჩემს ბავშვებს თოვლი არასოდეს უნახაეთ და ახლა, როდესაც მომაეალ კვირას ბაკურიანში ვაპირებთ წასვლას, მათ სიხარულისაგან ღამე არ სძინებიათ. 28. მას შემდეგ, რაც კომპიუტერი იყიდეს, ნიკოს ერთი ღამეც არ გაუთენებია ინტერნეტ-კაფეში. 29. ფული გაქვს, რომ ბილეთის საფასური გადაიხადო? – ვშიშობ, საფულე სახლში დამრჩა.

30. იცით, რა პროფესია აირჩია მან სამომავლოდ?

Exercise 20. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Present Perfect, Present Indefinite, Past Indefinite, Future Indefinite, Present Continuous* where necessary.

1. რატომ ეწევი? შენ ხომ ადრე არასოდეს ეწეოდი. 2. მე იქ ვერ წავალ, უკვე ათჯერ გითხარი. 3. ის მხოლოდ ოცი წლისაა, მაგრამ იმდენი რამ გადახდა ცხოვრებაში, რომ ძალიან დაბრძენდა. 4. მან ახალი სიტყვები უკვე ამოწერა ტექსტიდან და ახლა ამ სიტყვებს ლექსიკონში ეძებს. 5. დღეს მან ორჯერ დაგირეკა. ჩვენ მას ვუთხარით, რომ საღამოს დაერეკა. 6. ჩვენ ეს-ეს არის მოვედით სახლში, მაგრამ ბავშვები ერთი საათის წინ დაბრუნდნენ სკოლიდან. 7. საშინაო დავალება უკვე შევასრულე და ახლა ფეხბურთის სათამაშოდ მიედივარ. 8. რატომ ჩაიცვი ეს სვიტრი უკუღმა? – მართლა? ოჰ, დილით რომ ავდექი, ბნელოდა და შუქიც არ გექონდა; თანაც ძალიან მეჩქარებოდა სამსახურში და ვერ შევამჩნიე. 9. ისინი დიდი ხანია მეგობრობენ და ამ ხნის განმავლობაში ერთმანეთს ყველა საიდუმლოს ეუბნებიან. 10. პეტრე აავადაა და საავადმყოფოშია მას შემდეგ, რაც ეს კატასტროფა მოხდა. 11. ისინი უკვე დიდი ხანია დაქორწინებულები არიან. მთელი ეს წლები ბედნიერები არიან.

12. რამდენი ხანია ამ სამსახურში ხარ? როდის დაიწყე აქ მუშაობა? 13. პატარა დათო თავიდან ფეხებამდე ტალახშია. იგი გუბეში ჩავარდა. 14. ყველაფერი მომიყვეით? – ჯერ არა. კიდევ უნდა მოგიყვეთ ერთი ისტორიის შესახებ, რომელიც მე მხოლოდ დღეს გავიგე. 15. სტუდენტებმა კარნახი დაწერეს და

ახლა ტექსტს კითხულობენ. 16. ჩვენ ერთმანეთი დიდი ხანია არ გვინახავს. სად იყავი ამ დროის განმავლობაში? 17. შარშან ხშირად ვიყავი ავად, მაგრამ წელს ერთხელადაც არ გავციებულვარ. 18. ვინ შეჭამა ჩემი ორი ვაშლი, რომელიც დილით ლარნაკში ჩავდე? 19. ძალიან მოხარული ვიქნები, შენი ძმა რომ გავიცნო. მე ბევრი კარგი მსმენია მასზე. 20. რა მოუვიდა ამას, დღეს ინსტიტუტში რატომ არ მოვიდა? – გაციება. მაღალი სიცხე აქვს და ახველებს. 21. როგორ არის ჩვენი მასწავლებელი? – არ ვიცი, სკოლის დამთავრების შემდეგ არ მინახავს. 22. თქვენ სიტყვა შემაწყვეტინეთ და ახლა არ მახსოვს, რაზე ველაპარაკობდი. 23. სად იშოვე ასეთი ფერის ხელთათმანები? მე ყოველთვის სწორედ ასეთი ხელთათმანების ყიდვა მინდოდა. 24. მან უკვე იცეკვა და ახლა მღერის. 25. ვინ წაიკითხა ეს წიგნი? ხელი აწიეთ, რომ ამ წიგნის პრობლემებზე ვიმსჯელოთ. 26. ჩვენ ვერ ვიმეგობრებთ მას მერე, რაც ეს ჩაიდინეთ. 27. როდის დაბრუნდა შენი ძმა? – ის არსად არ წასულა. მთელი ამ დროის განმავლობაში აქ იყო. 28. უკანასკნელად ნაყინი გასულ ზაფხულს შევჭამე. მას მერე ნაყინი არ მიჭამია და ყელიც არ მტკივა. 29. რამდენი ფული დახარჯე წელს? 30. დიდი მადლობა, რომ გადაარჩინეთ ჩემი ღირსება და ოჯახის წევრების სიცოცხლე.

Exercise 21. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Present Perfect, Present Indefinite, Past Indefinite, Future Indefinite, Present Continuous* where necessary.

1. მე ყოველთვის მაღალი მამაკაცები მომწონდა. 2. ბევრი დრო გავიდა მას შემდეგ, რაც ისინი გაშორდნენ ერთმანეთს. 3. წელს მე ჯერ არ დამისვენია სამსახურიდან. 4. ეხედავ, გადაიფიქრეთ ამ სახლის ყიდვა, რამე მოხდა?
5. ოდესმე ტყუილი გითქვამს მშობლებისათვის? 6. რაც სკოლა დაამთავრა, ჩემს ძმას მანქანა აქვს. 7. მინდა რაღაცა გითხრა, რისი თქმაც უკვე დიდი ხანია მინდოდა. 8. ის ავად არ გამხდარა მას შემდეგ, რაც სპორტს მისდევს. 9. დიდი ხანია ახალი ინგლისური წიგნები არ მიყიდია. 10. წავიკითხე თქვენი დისერტაცია. ნამდვილად იმსახურებთ სამეცნიერო ხარისხს. 11. რატომ იცინით? რაიმე სასაცილო ვთქვი? 12. იპოვეთ ბეჭედი, რომელიც გუშინ დაკარგეთ? სად იყო? 13. დიდი ხანია, რაც ისინი თქვენთან არ ყოფილან. ძალიან მომენატრა.
14. ვინ მოიტანა ეს წერილი? ფოსტალიონი ჯერ არ მოსულა და წერილი კი მაგიდაზე დევს. 15. ეს თვე ორი მოთხრობა გავიარეთ და სამი თხზულება დავწერეთ. 16. არავინ არ გითხრა, რომ ნიკო დაქორწინდა? 17. რატომ დაუშვი ამდენი შეცდომა კარნახში? – არ მიმეცადინია ახალ სიტყვებზე. 18. პოლიცია

ინტენსიურად მუშაობს, მაგრამ ჯერ კიდევ ვერ დაადგინა მკვლელობის მოტივი. 19. მე არ მეგონა, რომ ერთმანეთს იცნობდით. რამდენი ხანია იცნობთ ერთმანეთს? 20. კალამი არა მაქვს, მგონი დამეკარგა. – როდის დაკარგე?

21. ჩუმად, წყნარად, ბავშვს სძინავს. – ბავშვმა უკვე გაიღვიძა და თავისთვის ღიღინებს. 22. ბოლო დროს ისე ხშირად იცვლება მოდა, რომ მას ვერ ვეწევით. 23. უკვე მესამედ აგვიანებთ ამ თვეს. რა გჭირთ? ადრე ვერ იღვიძებთ?

24. ამჟამად სულ უფრო მეტი ქალი ატარებს მანქანას. – დიახ, ქალის სახე ძალიან შეიცვალა ბოლო დროს. 25. გაზაფხული დადგა. ბუნებამ გაიღვიძა. ხალხი მინდვრის საგაზაფხულო სამუშაოებისთვის ემზადება. 26. მათ ხელი არ მოაწერეს კონტრაქტს იმიტომ, რომ რაღაც საკითხებში ჯერ კიდევ ვერ შეთანხმებულან. 27. მშობლები გახარებულები არიან, მათმა ვაჟიშვილმა სიგარეტის მოწევას თავი დაანება. 28. ქოლგას ვერ ვპოულობ. ნეტა ვინმემ აიღო? 29. რატომ ზიხარ კიბეზე? – გასაღები დამეკარგა და დედას ველოდები. 30. მოდი, ყავა ავადულოთ. – ეშიშობ, გამოგველია (to run out). 31. გასულ კვირას ახალი პალტო ვიყიდე, მაგრამ ჯერ არ ჩამიცვამს.

The Past Perfect Tense

The Past Perfect is formed by means of the auxiliary verb ***"to have"*** in the Past Indefinite and Participle II of the notional verb.

Affirmative		Interrogative			Negative	
I			I		I	
You			you		You	
He (she, it)	had written		he (she, it)		He (she, it)	had not (hadn't)
We		Had	we	written?	We	written
You			you		You	
They			they		They	

The Past Perfect expresses actions preceding a certain moment of time in the past, so it is mainly found in narration and in past-time contexts, though it is also used in conversation.

The Past Perfect is used:

I.

1. To denote an action preceding some moment of time in the past. The time of the action may be

indicated by an adverbial of time, or by another action, or by the situation:

He had never before known freedom or leisure. And he was intoxicated by the sunshine.

Every day he arose with a cheerful face but by ten o'clock in the morning all the joy had gone out of his heart.

By midday Friday the police had called twice more at the house.

Mrs Iaraby, who had taken up her knitting, said nothing.

He was only twenty-two then but had already been in two or three of what were spoken of in Winesburg as "women scrapes".

When the man had gone again, he sat hunched in the armchair, frowning to himself.

2. To denote an action in progress which began before a certain past moment and went on up to that moment. The Past Perfect in this meaning is found with statal verbs and with some actional durative verbs. In such cases the starting point of the action is indicated by means of the adverb ***"since"***, a prepositional phrase with ***"since"*** or an adverbial clause introduced by the conjunction ***"since"***, the period during which the action was in progress, i.e. the period of duration of the action is specified by the phrases with ***"for"***.

Since my father died and we stopped coming to Lachlan, I had heard no news of him.

It would be rather a shock to a girl to find out that her husband had lived for ten years with another girl and had three children.

When you were my age, Father, you had already been married for almost ten years.

She probably hadn't eaten fried potatoes for ten years. But what an occasion it was!

Two persons who had been in the hall only for five minutes, stood listening to these words.

II.

a) The Past Perfect is often used together with the Past Continuous. The Past Perfect denotes the past action completed before the implied past moment, the Past Continuous expresses the action still in progress in the past.

When we went out the rain had stopped and the sun was shining again.

Mother had cooked dinner and was calling the children home.

b) The Past Perfect is used in the principal clause of a complex sentence with a subordinate clause of time introduced by the conjunctions ***"scarcely when", "hardly when", "no sooner than", "just when"***. For the sake of emphasis the word order is often inverted.

He had scarcely swallowed the last spoonful when there came a soft rap at the door.

He had no sooner raised his spectacles on his forehead than his countenance underwent a very great variety of odd contortions.

Scarcely had I opened the door when I heard voices in the sitting room.

No sooner had this conversation begun than the children began to shriek.

He had just inserted his head in the opening when two other people came past outside on the turf.

Exercise 1. Comment on the use of *the Past Perfect* in the following sentences.

1. He had lost his way when riding in the hills, and after a day without food he began to grow hungry. 2. He waited until the lift had been silent for several minutes. 3. He admitted to himself that the courtship had begun in a manner surprisingly strange. 4. But Jim did something I hadn't heard about before, at least not in our yard. 5. Several neighbours mentioned in passing to Mrs Hay that Susan and her friends had been rather noisy the night before. 6. She'd had a drink or two on her way, and before coming into the house stopped off at the lavatory outside. 7. Part of the etiquette of the Association was that committee members were of the same generation and had been at the school at the same time. 8. She switched out the hall light. She had turned away from the door for less than a second when the door bell rang again. 9. She returned to the door of her son's room. The weakness had passed from her body as by a miracle and she stepped boldly along. 10. He insisted on being addressed as Sergeant-Major, because his father had been a sergeant-major in the First World War. 11. I followed her up the narrow stairs and into the front bedroom. This room had changed. 12. It turned out that he had never been in Europe before, although making the trip had been a life's dream with him. 13. She seemed afraid to take the chair I'd offered her. 14. His clothes were well-kept, but had seen far better days. 15. Mr O'Madden Burke said it was the most scandalous exhibition he had ever witnessed. 16. Things were as she had suspected: she had been frank in her questions and Polly had been frank in her answers. 17. He had been a blacksmith, a trader, a planter, and at one time fairly well-to-do; but, ruined by the great hurricane of the nineties, he had now nothing to live on but a small plantation of coconut trees. 18. When Fitz-Norman had been dead three years his son, Braddock, decided that the business had gone far enough. 19. Seward was no longer the abolitionist he had once been. 20. The burglars had opened a lot but had thrown more unopened on the floor. They must, I thought, have had a most frustrating time. 21. And Sabin asked him about some conclusions he had reached on some cheques which had been given him. 22. When Tom had gone and we were left alone together, he said: "Are you applying, Joe?" 23. I was shocked by the sight of her face. All the colour had faded away from it. 24. I began to realize that there must be something very wrong indeed somewhere. I had never seen Ackroyd so upset before. 25. I had scarcely stepped from my wooden bed of horror upon the stone floor of the prison, when the motion of the hellish machine ceased.

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets in *the Past Perfect*.

1. Mr Dale (to be) out of work for about six months and the family was in despair. 2. Grandma

remembered things she (to see) long ago. 3. It was two weeks since I (to leave) him to go to Yorkshire. In that time he (to shed) at least fourteen pounds and (to age) ten years. 4. Isabel looked down at the hand which still bore the ring Edward (to give) her on their betrothal. 5. He didn't ask her where she (to be). 6. The prices were a great deal higher than I (to anticipate). 7. Julia, who (to go) half-way down one flight, came back. 8. "They pass the time on," I replied, striking a match because my pipe (to go out). 9. It was the dressing-table she (to hanker after) for donkey's years and never (to have). 10. Mrs. Grange, in the same blue dress she (to wear) the day before, her hair as untidy, appeared strangely excited. 11. This is the man who didn't know whether he could swim, because he never (to try). 12. It was morning and (to be) morning for some time and he heard the plane. 13. When George Willard got back into Main Street it was past ten o'clock and (to begin) to rain. 14. His friend asked him to tell how the accident (to happen). 15. The noise in the auditorium (to rise) to a clamour when Mr Fitzpatrick burst into the room, followed by Mr Holohan, who was panting. 16. His eyes moved to the chair over which she (to throw) some of her clothes. 17. A few light taps upon the pane made him turn to the window. It (to begin) to snow again. 18. The rain (to cease) by the time Drake's operative pulled the car to a stop and entered the general store and post office. 19. Now that she (to fall) to him so easily, he wondered why he (to be) so diffident. 20 her lips were smiling as Soames, first possessor of them, never (to see) them smile. 21. And yet Annette, as a young girl, when he was hanging about her, once (to have) a flowery look. Well, she (to lose) it now! 22. He just (to begin) to sip his chocolate, and merely said "S'long" as she gathered up her gloves and muff and they went out of the shop. 23. The music stopped. She (to switch off) her transistor. 24. She showed him a chair that she (to make) from a barrel sawn in two. 25. He told them he was wiser now, and repented of all he (to do).

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets in *the Past Perfect*.

1. The inspector looked at the butler with rather closer attention than he (to bestow) on him up to now. 2. Soames! He (to keep) that name out of his thoughts these last two years; conscious that it was bad for him. 3. The information he (to ask for) reached him three days late. 4. Eugene was unhappy because he just (to have) a quarrel with his son. 5. My thought returned again and again to the mystery of Mrs Ferrars's death. She (to take) her own life? 6. When he (to go), they sighed with relief. 7. Ackroyd was sitting as I (to leave) him in the armchair before the fire. His head (to fall) sideways. 8. I took a look, but, truth to tell, I was very little wiser when I (to do) so. 9. We (to be) there about an hour when two girls passed us, followed by two youths. 10. I just (to reach) the top when the telephone rang in the hall below. 11. He liked the car, because, you see, he (to save) so long to buy it. 12. Sidney's eyes were filmy when I told him what (to

happen). 13. He read them a proclamation that he (to compose), which announced that General Forrest (to reorganize) the shattered Southern armies and (to defeat) the North in one pitched battle. 14. It was apparent that something portentous (to occur). 15. All the stories of ghosts and witches he (to hear) that evening were fresh in his memory. 16. Mr Waddington eyed him in a manner that convinced him that he (to say) the wrong thing. 17. When he awoke he knew that several hours (to pass). 18. Only now, glowing with a good health that he (to experience) for years, did he discover his true reaction. 19. They sat down to finish the food which Jasmine (to bring) with her in a basket. 20. We went through the door, and into the big, pretty, faded bedroom, where Mrs Farquhar (to sleep) since coming to Lachlan as a bride. 21. He was more handsome at fifty than he (to be) at twenty-five. 22. Henry Babcock was an uncomplicated man, who, very likely, never (to sit) in a witness box before in his life. 23. At last I pinpointed the absence of the bronze water-buffalo lady, one of my favourite pieces, and recalled with annoyance that I (to give) it to Julian. How that (to happen)? This too was a portent. 24. On this other matter. I didn't tell a soul until last night. Mrs Sabin (to browbeat) me into silence. 25. If he asked where she was Brevald told him she (to go) to spend the evening with one or other of her friends.

Exercise 4. Read and translate these sentences into Georgian paying special attention to the conjunctions.

1. They had hardly settled in their new homes when fresh trouble came to them. 2. But no sooner had she been greeted by Lucy and put on the kettle than the back door opened, a voice said, "Granny", and it was Christabel herself. 3. I had hardly read more than the first three chapters when my attention was diverted by a conversation going on in the front of the store.

4. She had scarcely taken ten steps when she was suddenly struck with recognition of who he was. 5. No sooner had love entered Guido's heart than he determined to do some great feat of emprise or adventure. 6. You know he was sick, and hardly had he got better than he began doing everything again. 7. They had no sooner sat down to table than he went straight to the point. 8. He had barely waited for a quarter of an hour when the appearance of a number of women in groups apprised him that the moment was come. 9. No sooner had I spoken than you turned his passing into evidence of universal decay and death. 10. But he had scarcely appeared when Edward, looking up, caught sight of him, and gave a joyful cry of surprise.

11. Hardly had he sat down when Mahony, catching sight of the cat which had escaped him, sprang up and pursued her across the field. 12. It was a savage, unreliable animal; hardly had it entered the house when it attacked one of Sir Hercule's favourite pugs. 13. They had no sooner got into her room than she turned to him, flung her arms round his neck, and kissed him full on

the lips. 14. Hardly had she brought one gentleman into the little pantry behind the office on the ground floor and helped him off with his overcoat, than the wheezy hall door bell changed again and she had to scamper along the bare hallway to let in another guest. 15. I had hardly started the Lord's Prayer with Miriam kneeling beside me when a verger, white to the lips, came up and kissed me. 16. He had no sooner got back to Batu from one or other of the islands than he had to set off again. 17. He had barely lit a cigarette when the general followed by his A.D.C. came into the patio. 18. He had hardly been introduced to Mrs Dersingham before the Pearsons came in, breathless and smiling. 19. I had scarcely started before a man came up to me and asked me if he was right in thinking my name was so-and-so.

Exercise 5. Make up sentences from the parts given below. Use the conjunctions *hardly when / before, just when, barely when / before, scarcely when / before, no sooner than / before.*

1. The snow (thaw out); the first swallows (to appear). 2. The new president (to come) into power; he (to issue) a new law against the drug addicts. 3. The police (to come) to the scene of crime; the burglars (to rush) for the door. 4. They (to go); Aunt Julia (to wander) slowly into the room looking behind her at something. 5. I (to be) there five minutes; Mrs Thompson (to come in) with the coffee. 6. The clock (to finish) striking; a young man together with a young girl (to enter) the shop. 7. We (to take) our seats; he (to come) over. 8. He (to utter) three words; it (to strike) him that the girl resented his interference. 9. I (to set foot) in Paris; I (to have) fresh evidence of the detestable interest taken by this Wilson in my concerns. 10. I (to raise) the glass to my lips; an all too familiar voice (to greet) me. 11. I (to start) to hope I would not have time to think about things; I (to hear) a third sound, (to turn) my head and (to see) Diana approaching on foot. 12. She (to sob); I (to hear) voices without. 13. I smiled again; but I (to do) so; my spirits (to fall). 14. She (to go); she (to understand) she was touchy. 15. She (to set foot) on the staircase; he (to thrust) both legs out of bed and (to rush), barefooted, to fetch his tobacco pouch. 16. I (to drop) my head back into its original position; there (to flash) upon my mind he was hiding something. 17. He (to disappear) in the mist; there (to dart) after him a huge beast, with an open mouth and glaring eyes. 18. His other hand went inside his coat too fast to watch; it (to disappear); the other pistol (to flick out). 19. The butler (to announce) her; she (to appear) at the door. 20. Mr Dendy (to buy) a rope; he (to go) to the ironmonger's and (to purchase) a bucket. 21. The students (to assemble) in the hall, the Dean (to announce) the results of the Olympiad. 22. He (to take) off his glasses; I (to recognize) him. 23. He (to buy) a car; he (to take) us all for a drive. 24. He (to sit down); Mahony (to spring up) and (to pursue) the cat across the field.

Exercise 6. Make up sentences from the parts given below. Use the conjunctions *hardly when / before, scarcely when / before, no sooner than / before, just when, barely when / before.*

1. She (to open) the door; the children (to run) to her. 2. The snow (to cover) the ground; my son (to rush out) into the yard. 3. She (to lay) her head on the pillow; she (to fall asleep). 4. The film (to begin); the light (to go out). 5. This author (to publish) one book; she (to publish) another. 6. We (to utter) a word; they (to burst) into tears. 7. We (to see off) one guest; another guest (to appear). 8. We (to take) our seats in the stalls; the curtain (to rise). 9. Nick (to buy) a car; he (to take) us for a drive to the lake. 10. The singer (to finish) the first song; the audience (to burst) into applause. 11. He (to receive) his salary; he (to invite) his friends to the restaurant. 12. The first lecture (to finish); there (to be) a bell for the second lecture. 13. He (to drink) two glasses of wine; the wine (to get) to his head. 14. They (to get married); he (to get entangled) in a new liaison. 15. He (to arrive) in London; he (to send) a telegram to his girl-friend. 16. We (to drink) a glass of wine; the waiter (to fill) it. 17. The Browns (to build) a new house; they (to arrange) a housewarming party. 18. The day (to break); the tourists (to set off) for the castle. 19. They (to open) the window; the sick man (to feel) better. 20. Pete (to divorce) his first wife; he (to marry) another. 21. The wounded man (to come round); he (to ask) for a glass of water. 22. She (to appear) at the ball; a throng of worshippers (to surround) her. 23. The rain (to stop); the children (to run) out into the yard. 24. My son is a real bookworm. He (to read) the book, which he took from the library; he (to go) there for another.

Exercise 7. Complete the sentences supplying the missing parts.

1. No sooner had the teacher entered the classroom 2. Hardly had he taken the medicine 3. when the actress took off the make-up. 4. when we took a bath. 5. Scarcely had the children fallen asleep 6. She had scarcely gone in 7. than Annie caught sight of her old classmate. 8. Hardly had I made a few steps 9. Scarcely had Mother laid the table 10. No sooner had the water boiled 11. Hardly had I rung the bell 12. than I heard a strange laugh. 13. Scarcely had the traffic lights turned red 14. The proprietor had hardly opened the shop 15. No sooner had I woken up 16. when the actress was smothered with flowers. 17. No sooner had the lights gone out 18. He had hardly put out one cigarette 19. Scarcely had the train started... 20. than we heard a loud knock on the door. 21. than he had to set off again. 22. when he thrust both legs out of bed and rushed to fetch his tobacco pouch. 23. No sooner had love entered his heart 24. when Mrs Thompson came in with the coffee. 25. The clock had hardly finished striking 26. I had scarcely started

Exercise 8. Complete the sentences supplying the missing parts.

1. We had no sooner run out of potatoes 2. He had barely lit a cigarette 3. We had hardly introduced Nellie to our friends 4. than a multitude of invitations followed. 5. when they turned on the central heating. 6. when the first swallows flew back. 7. Hardly had he graduated from the University 8. No sooner had the passengers boarded the train 9. than he recognized the burglar. 10. when a thunderstorm broke. 11. Scarcely had it grown dark 12. No sooner had the captain returned from his long voyage 13. Hardly had the birds flown back 14. before I pulled myself together. 15. when the crowd broke up. 16. Scarcely had the conditions of the competition come out 17. No sooner had the wrestler broken the world record 18. They had hardly gone 19. before a man came up to me. 20. Barely had she set foot on the staircase 21. I had hardly been there five minutes 22. before he came over. 23. when Aunt Julia wandered slowly into the room. 24. Mr Dendy had no sooner bought a house 25. She had scarcely done so 26. Hardly had we assembled

Exercise 9. Use *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. Mrs George (to ask) me to look in and see him. With the simplicity of a country woman who never (to be) further from her home than London, she (to think) that because we both (to be) in China we must have something in common. Of course I (to accept). 2. A few days later, meeting him again, she (to notice) that something (to trouble) him. They (to be) much together since Edward (to leave) Chicago. 3. He (to write) to her by every mail since then, twenty-four letters in all, for the mail (to go) but once a month, and his letters (to be) all that a lover's letters should be. 4. He (to be) about twenty-six years of age, with a soft, light-brown moustache and rather innocent-looking grey eyes. His father, who (to begin) life as an advanced Nationalist, (to modify) his views early. 5. Villona (to be) in good humour because he (to have) a very satisfactory luncheon; and, besides, he (to be) an optimist by nature. 6. Jimmy (to have) a respect for his father's shrewdness in business matters, and in this case it (to be) his father who first (to suggest) the investment. 7. She (to consent) to go away, to leave her home. Was that wise? She (to try) to weigh each side of the question. In her home anyway she (to have) shelter and food; she (to have) those whom she (to know) all her life about her. 8. Winter (to tell) me something about him. Captain Butler (to spend) all his life on the Pacific. He (to be) in much better circumstances than he was now, for he (to be) first officer and then captain of a passenger boat plying along the coast of California, but he (to lose) his ship and a number of passengers (to be) drowned. 9. He (to be) a jolly soul, and the tragic experience he (to go) through (to seem) to have left him unscarred. 10. I (to sit up) on the coping of the bridge, admiring my frail canvas shoes which I diligently (to pipeclay) overnight and watching the docile horses pulling a

tramload of business people up the hill. 11. The cat (to escape) once more and Mahony (to begin) to throw stones at the wall she (to escalade). 12. He (to run) as if to bring me aid. And I (to be) penitent; for in my heart I always (to despise) him a little. 13. As I (to walk) along in the sun I (to remember) old Cotter's words and (to try) to remember what (to happen) afterwards in the dreams. 14. His questions (to show) me how complex and mysterious (to be) certain institutions of the Church which I always (to regard) as the simplest acts. 15. I (to wonder) at this for, as my uncle (to say) the night before, he (to teach) me a great deal. He (to study) in the Irish college in Rome and he (to teach) me to pronounce Latin property. 16. He never (to be) in Corless's, but he (to know) the value of the name. He (to know) that people (to go) there after the theatre to eat oysters and drink liqueurs; and he (to hear) that the waiters there (to speak) French and German. 17. He (to tell) Waid the telephone here (to go) dead so he (to have) to go to a pay station. He (not to say) where, and Waid (not to think) to ask him.

Exercise 10. Use *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. He (to leave) his fish in the creel, intending to put them in the ice-box as soon as he (to wash) them. 2. Although for years she (to hate) her husband, her hatred (to be) always before a quite impersonal thing. He (to be) merely a part of something else that she (to hate). 3. I (to go) directly to the bankers to whom Mr Sabin (to direct) me, and also to the firm of solicitors who represented Mr Sabin in New York. 4. "Why you (to go) in?" "Luther (not to see) me since we (to be) kids and we (to get) to talking. He (to say) he (to book) your passage on the Elizabeth and now he (to have) another for Mr Payson and Fred just (to pay) for it " 5. When he (to come) home from Cleveland where he (to be) in school, he (to shut) himself off from all of his people and (to begin) to make plans. 6. He (to light) the pipe he recently (to learn) to smoke.
7. Lawson (to know) the pool the doctor (to speak of), and suddenly it (to occur) to him that in a way it (to be) just like that pool at Upolu where Ethel (to be) in the habit of bathing every evening. 8. He (to be) vexed that Ethel (to say) nothing to him about the excursion, but he (not to be) disturbed, since of late she (to be) in now and again to Aberdeen. 9. But in a day or two he (to set) about looking for a job. He (to know) that he could not hope for such a position as that, which he (to throw away) to go to England. 10. She (to be) not quite certain that the Edward who (to write) to her now (to be) the same Edward that she (to know). 11. I never (to be) in love before and it (to have) the affect of making me, not dreamy, but intensely perceptive. 12. He (to walk) at ten months, and before his second year was out he (to learn) to speak a number of words. 13. The next mail (to come), and Bateman (to bring) Isabel the letter he just (to receive). 14. When he (to teach) them what they (to wish) to know they (to tend) to forget that he (to play) a part in their lives. 15. She (to stand up), smoothing down her skirts as Mabel (to do), and

Tom (to take) her hand. 16. Just touching sixty, he (to represent) a strange figure of man; one who (to wring) from life all that it (to offer) in the way of material success; a man who literally (to have) more money than he (to know) what to do with it. Some of this money he (to establish) in trust funds, but for the most part he (not to believe) in philanthropy. 17. They both (to know) her when she (to be) a child and they long-legged boys, but for two years she (to be) in Europe to finish her education and it (to be) with a surprised delight that they (to renew) acquaintance with the lovely girl who (to return).

Exercise 11. Use *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. Doctor Reefy (to be) a tall man, who (to wear) one suit of clothes for ten years. 2. One evening I (to go) into the back drawing room in which the priest (to die). 3. He (to remember) the look that (to lurk) in the girl's eyes when they (to meet) on the streets and (to think) of the note she (to write). 4. Then the mother, who (not to be well) for a year, (to die) suddenly, and the father (to become) altogether discouraged. 5. I (to sit down) on the bed and (not to move); I don't know how long I (to be) there when my mother (to come) in. 6. They (to intend) to hang the schoolmaster, but something in his figure, so small, white and pitiful, (to touch) their hearts and they (to let) him escape. 7. Annabel (to be) still a little slip of a thing, but her face (to change), as if by action of many famous cameras, into a mould of her public figuration. 8. A kind of terror he never (to know) before (to take possession) of David. 9. He (to think) of the past, and of his hopes, and he (to be) aghast at what he (to do). 10. Home! She (to look) round the room, reviewing all its familiar objects which she (to dust) a week for so many years, wondering where on earth all the dust (to come) from. 11. We (to follow) him with our eyes and (to see) that when he (to go) on for perhaps fifty paces he (to turn) about and (to begin) to return his steps. 12. Poor George, only a year older than his scapegrace brother, (to look) sixty. He never (to take) more than a fortnight's holiday in the year for a quarter of a century. 13. It seemed most likely that Wexford or Greene (to telephone) from Melbourne and (to tell) Harley Renbo to be on his guard in case I (to turn up). 14. The rain (to stop) by the morning. Tom (to awake) late and (to come) downstairs to find a plate of bacon and eggs kept warm in the oven. 15. Parker (to scratch) his heavy beard. He (to shave) that morning, but five o'clock shadow (to come) at an earlier hour for him, so that he always (to look) somewhat unkempt. 16. At last, one gloomy evening, I (to find) on opening his bundle that he (to buy) a stock of celluloids, and my heart (to tell) me that she (to abandon) him forever. 17. The nurse (to go) off duty and the baby (to lie) beside Annabel, waving his arms and giving sleepy shouts that sometimes (to end) in a yawn. 18. He (to be) honest, industrious and worthy. He (to have) a good wife, to whom he never (to be) unfaithful even in thought, and four daughters, to whom he (to be) the best of

fathers. 19. The notes upon his cuffs which (to be) so copious at his earlier examinations (to be) limited now to a few hints.

Exercise 12. Use *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. When she (to go) I (to begin) to walk up and down the room, clenching my fists. 2. "There (to be) part of a folk in my bun," said Mr Sole when he (to pass) from his hosts' earshot. 3. Brush (to feel) he never (to see) so many beautiful quiet girls in one place before. 4. My heart (to sink). I (to see) them [the asparagus] in the shop and I (to know) that they (to be) horribly expensive. My mouth often (to water) at the sight of them. 5. I (to wonder) what (to happen) during these ten years to make her talk so sadly about the picture. 6. They (to post) their letters on the way and discussed the lunch they recently (to eat). 7. Amanda (to wear) a canary-yellow caftan, which he (to buy) her on their honeymoon in New York. 8. When they (to finish) the picnic they (to go) indoors and all through the house, room by room. 9. His precious bag of golf clubs still (to lie) where he (to drop) it, but he (to shove) it out of the way with his foot and (to leave) it. 10. I (to find) two intact glasses, but all the drink (to go). 11. Brush (to call) in the evening on a family, the Greggs whom he (to meet) on a previous trip. 12. She (to undress) and (to go back) to bed, and (to say) she (to be) sorry she (to make) such a scene. 13. Tom Willard (to have) a passion for village politics and for years (to be) the leading Democrat in a strongly Republican community. 14. The moment he (to buy) the farm, Bert (to feel) free. 15. He (to feel) how useless it was to struggle against fortune, this being the burden of wisdom which the ages (to bequeath) to him. 16. He (not to be) out of his bed for more than a fortnight and really (to feel) too weak to get up and go to the doctor. He (to send) a message asking him to come on board. 17. Naturally, I (not to want) any of them to know I (not to see) him for so long. 18. Lawson (to remember) that he once (to be) captain of a schooner engaged in the slave trade, a blackbirder they call it in the Pacific. 19. Every night when he (to go bed) she (to go) into his room and (to sit) on the floor until he (to fall asleep). 20. Lena (to inform) them that the doctor (to recommend) her to drink burgundy at luncheon and champagne at dinner. 21. Every day Nox (to black) Jaraby's boots, (to tidy) his books and (to help) to wash up the dishes from which Jaraby (to eat). 22. He just (to reach) the elevator when he (to hear) a door open and close with a violent bang. 23. Just as I (to do) six years before, when she first (to come) to see me I (to dust) the picture, (to wrap) it up carefully in several layers of brown paper, (to tie) it with post-office string and (to give) it to her. She (to seem) happy with it under her arm. 24. I (to know) her for over twenty years, almost as long as I (to know) Arnold, yet at the time that I speak of I, as I later (to realize), (not to know) really her well.

Exercise 13. Use *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. When the war broke out he (not to be) long qualified and (to get) experience at various hospitals. 2. In fact things (to become) so hot that he (to think) of shutting up the house and returning to Paris. 3. Two men in outdoor dress (to take) possession of the fireplace and (to chat) familiarly with Miss Healy and the baritone. 4. Carel (to turn) and (to pace) up and down. Marcus sat hunched and stony still, fascinated. 5. We (to come) a good deal nearer while we (to talk) and could now see that it was no longer a house at all, but only its skeleton. 6. The man now (to rise) and (to address) the car. Brush (to start) to edge out by his knees. 7. When he (to be) in Montana for less than a month and things (to go) very poorly indeed, he stumbled on his great discovery. 8. By the time the young woman who (to drive) the car (to switch off) her headlights and (to step) from the car Mason was abreast of her. 9. By this time, he (to take) the mag and (to stare) at it like a stuck pig. 10. Ackroyd (to sit) as I (to leave) him in the armchair before the fire. His head (to fall) sideways. 11. But Dorothy (not to listen). She (to clasp) the necklace round her neck and (to judge) the effect in a small mirror taken from her handbag.

12. Gertrude Morel (to be married) for eight years and (to expect) a third child in two months. 13. Appleby (to walk) to a window and (to look) out thoughtfully over the lawn and the stream beyond. 14. George already (to slip) his arm around another girl, and (to lead) her to the verandah. 15. The lunger (to gather up) the cards and (to shuffle) them over and over, purposelessly. 16. He (to drop) to his hands and knees and (to crawl) about the floor. 17. Amy (to turn off) the TV set and (to sit) on her bed, but not in her previous posture. 18. The man who (to drop) from the window (to gather) himself up on hands and knees.

Exercise 14. Use *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. We (to stand) still in the alley where MacSwain (to stop) running. 2. I (to lean) on my gate in the backyard smoking a pipe of tobacco. I (to have) a busy day on my rounds, an irritating time of it 3. George (to seat oneself) again and (to stare) before him. 4. He liked the intense stillness, and now that the night (to fall) the stars (to blaze) in the sky. 5. The nausea which (to force) him away subtly (to change). 6. She (take off) her hat and cloak and (to stand) before a large swinging mirror, unhooking her waist. 7. She (to put) her hands up to both cheeks of Jolly's horse, and (to rub) her nose against its nose 8. Soames (to halt) in front of them, and (to look) at the light in her windows. 9. By that time the ship (to turn around) and the wind (to blow) a gale. 10. They now (to reach) and (to enter) the break between the two mountains.

11. Delays and reroutings which the storm (to cause) (to take) both scheduling and human patience. 12. I (to have) a scare all right. Come to that, I still (to have) one. 13. They (to sit) on the bench talking about fishing when suddenly he remembered that he (to leave) his book at

home. 14. He quite (to give up) the third dimension when I was there and just (to think) of giving up the second. 15. I (to think) about what Reggie (to say) with increasing jubilation. 16. By the time Lucy was ready her cousin (to do) her breakfast, and (to listen) to the clever lady among the crumbs. 17. The picture was more than half finished. Gombauld (to be) at work all the morning on the figure of the man and now he (to take) a rest – the time to smoke a cigarette.

Exercise 15. Use *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. However, as Rachel (to conjecture), he seemed to have largely recovered his composure. He (to sit) very upright, holding his glass carefully in both hands 2. I was uneasy when Mr Smith trundled to the deep end before he emerged – he (to pass) so close to the spot where the Secretary for Social Welfare (to die). 3. The bar was crowded. Sandy Westcott (to have) a couple of cocktails and he (to begin) to feel hungry. 4. The nurse (to cluck) and (to exclaim), before she was inside, how everyone in the Borghese gardens (to admire) the baby. 5. It appeared that the women who (to go) to clean Annabel's flat (to meet) with some difficulty with a young lady, but she (to come) straight over to the hotel to explain. 6. the bandana handkerchief which he (to tie) about his nose continually (to slip) and (to fall) about his shoulders. 7. Norah (to rise) and (to gather up) the plates. 8. I paid no more attention to him, until about six o'clock, when most afternoon tea customers (to go), and we (to begin) to get the tables ready for dinner. 9. I (to struggle) slowly into the clothes and (to try on) the hat. 10. She (to turn) her back on me and (to fiddle) in a cupboard. 11. Steve and I left for New York right after I (to receive) that telephone call. 12. I looked out of the window. A very tall, dark man with a large black beard (to walk) slowly down the center of the street. 13. He (to begin) to feel somewhat disillusioned. There was something vulgar in his friend which he (not to observe) before. 14. The chief and the man who (to question) Willson (to stand) by the bed. 15. At first it appeared that the six children (to do) well in school. But gradually it came out that the two eldest boys (to run away), another (to join) the Navy 16. He saw in the distance a couple of straggling wretches who long since (to give up) and probably already (to cry) in anger at the prospect of punishment. 17. They (to go), and the daylight of Saturday (to come). 18. An idiot hope struck me that they might think something (to insult) me while I (to write) the cheque and that I (to change) my mind.

Exercise 16. Use *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. Louie (not to notice) that Brush slowly (to rise) to a sailing position. 2. She (to pull) her dressing-gown from the foot of the bed, and (to get up). 3. The chief instinctively (to rise) to greet her, whilst Lady Molly, still and placed (to eye) her with a quizzical smile. 4. She (to

hustle) across the cave and busily (to arrange) her hair with a pool of water as a mirror. 5. Billy was like a worn-out something that one (to buy) years ago on the hire-purchase system, and still (to pay) with no end to it in sight. 6. There was no one in the bungalow. Brevald (to work) on the plantation and his wife (to go) into Apia. 7. I opened my eyes. She (to walk) towards the back of the aeroplane and (to stand) in the aisle beside my seat. 8. One afternoon, the day after a mail (to arrive) from Tahiti, when she (to drive) with Bateman he said to her: "Did Edward tell you when he (to sail)?" 9. Jack, an old sailor who (to spend) many years in the Navy (to walk) along a country road when he (to come) to a farmhouse. 10. Mrs Waddington's breathing (to become) easier, and she (to sit) in her chair with something like the old imperiousness. 11. Mrs Pearson actually (to read) a book, had been reading it that very afternoon, nearly (to finish) it and (to enjoy) it immensely. 12. Winifred (to turn away), and (to take) a long sniff from a little gold-topped bottle. 13. He (to stretch) his legs out and (to look) at his crossed feet. His face did not indicate that he (to think) about anything. 14. Helen (to take) Compton aside and (to speak) to him. 15. Then, one evening, after dinner, Abdul (to clear) away and just (to go off), when he gave a little cough. 16. Suddenly Mackindosh grew conscious that the boy's eyes (to rest) on the revolver which he (to lay) on the desk when Mamma appeared in the doorway. 17. He knew she (to be) at a mission school, and he was amused, and at the same time touched, by the company manners she (to put on) for his benefit.

Exercise 17. Rewrite the sentences.

Model: *He had never lost his footing before. – It was the first time he had lost his footing.*

1. Her father had never flown into a rage before. It was the first time 2. Her daughter had never eaten ice-cream before. It was the first time 3. Nick had never overslept and missed his usual bus before. It was the first time 4. It was the first time I had lost the money. I 5. It was the first time my grandmother had drunk any medicine. My grandmother 6. Pete was heartbroken. He had never failed a test before. It was the first time 7. It was the first time I had seen her smile. She 8. He had never flown in a jet before. It was the first time 9. Jon had never made his bed before. It was the first time 10. Ann had never received a love letter before. It was the first time 11. It was the first time my brother had proposed to a girl. My brother 12. The boy was overcome with nausea. It was the first time he had drunk wine. The boy 13. It was the first time I had a fainting fit. It must have been the heat. I 14. Michael had never sworn before. He must have lost control over himself. It was the first time 15. It was the first time my son had shaved. My son 16. She had never burst into tears in front of so many people before. It was the first time 17. These neighbours had never quarrelled before. It was the first time 18. He had never caught pneumonia before. It was the first time 19. It

was the first time he had gone to sleep at the wheel. He 20. He had never seen the eruption of a volcano before. It was the first time 21. He had not meant to say it. Such a question had not slipped out of his mouth before. It was the first time

Exercise 18. Rewrite the sentences.

Model: *She had never cried before. – It was the first time she had cried.*

1. He had never seen her wearing nothing before. It was the first time... 2. He had never set eyes on any of those three flaxen heads. It was the first time 3. It was the first time Mr Dowse had conversed with him. Mr Dowse 4. He had never felt like that himself towards any woman before. It was the first time 5. I had never seen anyone in such a frightening state of disintegration before. It was the first time 6. It was the first time she had written to me. She 7. No girl had ever taken his fancy. It was the first time 8. He had never bought a copy of the paper from the ancient Negro. It was the first time 9. He had never seen her cry before. It was the first time 10. It was the first time Joe Kane had seen his father. Joe Kane 11. It was the first time she'd dropped off on the tram. She 12. Ackroyd had never been so upset before. It was the first time 13. He had never hidden anything from me before. It was the first time 14. It was the first time his son had lied to her. Her son 15. It was the first time she had been late for classes. She 16. He had never learnt anything worth before. It was the first time 17. I had never heard them gossiping before. It was the first time 18. It was the first time he had brought his wife flowers. He 19. He had never been lost in a dream before. It was the first time 20. It was the first time the police had called at our house. The police 21. He had never fallen so deeply in love before. It was the first time

Exercise 19. Combine the following sentences using *the Past Perfect*. Use the conjunctions *"when", "after", "before", "till", "until", etc.* where necessary.

1. She went. Adrienne sighed and rested her forehead against the cool stone wall. 2. I finished my story. They were silent. 3. Mrs Jaraby took up her knitting. She said nothing. 4. The man went again. He sat hunched in the armchair, frowning to himself. 5. She bought a small alarm clock. She wound it every day. 6. The rain almost stopped. It was good news for my suit. 7. Her parents died. She was born. 8. The young man left the overturned mass of paints and easel. I looked at them. 9. Her brothers, their wives and children left. I stood at the graveside thinking I was alone. 10. She did not rest. She made him confess. 11. The police went. She still sat like an automation in the chair, with no energy to move. 12. He cleaned the yard, installed electricity and a telephone in the house. They were almost enthusiastic about it. 13. We came to America. In England we lived on a farm and raised a few sheep and planted potatoes. 14. I caught him. He

had his morning coffee. 15. Henry went. He looked up at the portrait of his grandfather on the wall. 16. He looked like some animal. He saw it an encyclopedia. 17. Bert waited. The other members went home. 18. She talked about her late husband. He looked after her very well. 19. I was too tired to talk politics. I did a hard day's graft. 20. Elizabeth did not remember her mother. Her mother died when Elizabeth was but five years old. 21. Old T.B. was at the telephone. Shark's quick footsteps died away into the night. 22. In some way his relatives heard of his wealth. They treated him with deference and dignity. 23. He reached the boys. He recognized Heron by his voice.

Exercise 20. Combine the following sentences using *the Past Perfect*. Use the conjunctions *"when", "after", "till", "before", "until", "although", etc.* where necessary.

1. Magdalena departed. I walked to the window at the front of the house. 2. I came downstairs. I prepared myself very carefully for what I had to say. 3. The boys went to bed. They faced each other over coffee on the hotel verandah. 4. I finished hanging out the clothes and wandered into the drawing room. I heard a latch key in the door. 5. Her father disappeared around the corner. She went through the gate and into the street. 6. The tram woke her. She dropped off. 7. She ran a long way. She came to a wire fence. 8. He took several steps. He stopped and looked back.
9. She left the room. I lit a cigarette and walked over to the mantelpiece. 10. A Swedish cook sang one of the students' songs. She was never at college. 11. The two men were never out of touch. They were quite similar in appearance. 12. We clambered up to the ruined cottage. Several more boy scouts appeared on the scene. 13. His eyes showed relief. They [his eyes] watched me anxiously. 14. Julian finally pinned her down. There were a lot of young people waiting to take her out. 15. His visitor went. Gregory stood in the centre of his office and gazed intently at the floor. 16. His breathing became regular again. He returned to the car. 17. Miss Morgan knew the Maltby land when she came to it. She was never there. 18. He told me about Pooles. I never heard of him. 19. Rachel turned round now. We both stood in silence looking up. 20. She realized her mistake. She opened her cloudy eyes. 21. Their mouths opened like landed fish. I told them about the accident. 22. Hay noticed. Lincoln now recovered his colour. 23. He advanced suddenly with hasty steps. The body that belonged to the limp hand and arm became visible.

Exercise 21. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Past Indefinite, Past Continuous* and *Past Perfect* where necessary.

1. ნიკოს დილამდე არ დაეძინა. მთელი ღამე ფიქრობდა იმ თანამდებობაზე, რომელიც მას დირექტორმა შესთავაზა წინა დღეს. 2. ქეთი სულ დედაზე

ფიქრობდა, რადგან მას შემდეგ, რაც იგი ლონდონში წავიდა სამუშაოდ, არ უნახავს. 3. სახლში რომ მოვედი, ბავშვები ტიროდნენ. ჩემი მეგობრის ძაღლი, რომელიც მან რამდენიმე დღით დაგვიტოვა, სახლიდან გაქცეულიყო. 4. მან ყვავილები დარგო და ახლა მათ რწყავდა. 5. როდესაც მშობლები ოთახში შევიდნენ, დაინახეს, რომ ბავშვებს იმ ყვავილებით მოერთოთ ოთახი, რომლებიც დილით დაეკრიფათ. 6. მათ უკვე ისადილეს და ახლა ყავას სვამდნენ.

7. თვითმფრინავი ჯერ არ დაშეებულიყო, მაგრამ მას ბევრი ხალხი ელოდა მოსაცდელში. 8. დედამ სუფრა გაშალა და ბავშვებს ეძახდა. 9. დედამ ქათმები შეწვა და ახლა ხაჭაპურს აცხობდა სტუმრებისათვის. 10. მამამ ბავშვებს საჩუქრები უყიდა და ახლა საყურეებს არჩევდა დედასთვის. 11. ჩემს უფროს დას სუფრა უკვე აელაგებინა და ახლა თეფშებს რეცხავდა. 12. მას ორი სურათი უკვე დაეხატა და ახლა მესამეზე მუშაობდა. 13. ჩვენ რომ მას მივუახლოვდით, იგი ტიროდა. წერილი მიეღია და ცუდი ამბავი შეუტყვია თავის ერთ-ერთ თანაკლასელზე. 14. მას ოთხი გამოცდა უკვე ჩაებარებინა და ახლა მეხუთე გამოცდის ჩასაბარებლად ემზადებოდა. 15. გარეთ რომ გავედით, წვიმას უკვე გადაეღო და მზე ანათებდა. 16. როდესაც სახლში მივედით, სტუმრები უკვე სუფრასთან ისხდნენ და მხიარულობდნენ (to make merry). 17. ჩვენ ტესტები უკვე დავწერეთ და ახლა გამოცდებს ვაბარებდით. 18. მასწავლებელმა სტუდენტების ტესტები შეაგროვა და ასწორებდა. 19. წუხელ მთელი ღამე თოვდა და დილისთვის თოვლს მთელი ეზო დაეფარა. 20. მას გაზეთი უკვე წაეკითხა და ახლა ტელევიზორს უყურებდა. 21. მამას ყვავილები ეყიდა და ახლა სახლში მიჰქონდა დედისთვის. 22. ბავშვებს ბურთი ეზოში გამოეტანათ და ფეხბურთს თამაშობდნენ. 23. მას ფანჯარა გაეღო და გარეთ იყურებოდა. 24. დედას ოთახები დაელაგებინა და სადილს ამზადებდა. 25. დას წერილი უკვე წაეკითხა და პასუხს წერდა. 26. მეზენახეებს ყურძენი დაეკრიფათ და ახლა ღვინოს წურავდნენ. 27. ბაშვებს ნაძვის ხე მოერთოთ და ახლა ტელევიზორს უყურებდნენ. 28. დიკი ცუდად იყო, რადგან მთელი კვირა აავადმყოფობდა.

29. ოთხი საათისთვის ისინი სახლში დაბრუნდნენ და უკვე ხუთ საათზე ყველა ერთად სადილობდა.

Exercise 22. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Past Indefinite* and *Past Perfect* where necessary.

1. როდესაც დედამ შეიტყო, რომ მისი ქალიშვილი ცოლად გაჰყვა იმ ქარაფშუტა ბიჭს, მას გული წაუვიდა. 2. სანამ ჩვენ მივიდოდით, მათ კლუბი

დატოვეს. 3. ვერც კი მოასწრო დაქორწინება, რომ ცოლმა სცენების გამართვა დაუწყო. 4. ჩვენ ძალიან გაგვიკვირდა, როდესაც გავიგეთ, რომ ანა პეტრეს ცოლად გაჰყვა. რა ნახა ანამ პეტრეში ისეთი, რომ ცოლობაზე დათანხმდა.
5. ვერც მოეასწარი დაძინება, როდესაც უეცრად ყვირილმა გამომაღვიძა.
6. სანამ ინსტიტუტში შევიდოდა, ჩემი მეგობარი ინგლისურს სწავლობდა.
7. სანამ წვიმა წამოვიდოდა, უკვე სახლში დავბრუნდით. 8. როდესაც მან საფულე იპოვა, ვიღაცას ფული უკვე ამოეღო და იგი ცარიელი იყო. 9. ჩვენ მას სამჯერ დავურეკეთ, მაგრამ ის ქალაქიდან გასული იყო. 10. რატომ ხართ ასეთი მოწყენილი? რა მოგიყვათ მან, სანამ მე სახლში მოვიდოდი? 11. სანამ თბილისში საცხოვრებლად გადმოვიდოდა, ის სოხუმში ცხოვრებდა ათი წელი. 12. მე არ ვიცოდი, ვინ გამომიგზავნა ის წერილი. 13. მათთან ყავა არ დაველიე, რადგან ორი ჭიქა უკვე დალეული მქონდა. 14. როდესაც სახლში მივედი, გამახსენდა, რომ ყავა არ მიყიდია. 15. მათ ძალიან გაუკვირდათ, როდესაც გაიგეს, რომ ნიკოს მათთვის თავისი ნამდვილი სახელი არ უთქვამს. 16. ჩვენ უკვე ვისადილეთ, როდესაც დედა სამსახურიდან მოვიდა. 17. რატომ ვერ იცანით ნელი გუშინ? – ძალიან შეცვლილა. 18. როდესაც სადგურში მივიდა, მისი მატარებელი უკვე გასულიყო და უკან სახლში დაბრუნდა. 19. მე არ ვიცოდი, რომ მათ არ უსწავლიათ ეს ლექსი სკოლაში. 20. რატომ დაწექი გუშინ, სანამ მე სახლში მოვიდოდი? რატომ არ დამელოდე? 21. როდესაც მათ დავურეკე, იმ დროისთვის დეპეშა უკვე მიეღოთ და ყველაფერი იცოდნენ. 22. პატარა ანი ძალიან ლამაზად გამოიყურებოდა. მას ახალი კაბა ეცვა, რომელიც თოვლის ბაბუამ მოუტანა ახალი წლის ღამეს. 23. ჩვენ ყველას გაგვიკვირდა, როდესაც მან პრიზი მოიგო. 24. მას შემდეგ, რაც ბავშვებმა დაგვირეკეს, ბათუმში უკვე ჩავედით და კარგად მოვეწყვეთო, ჩვენ დავმშვიდდით. 25. გოგონა ბევრად უფრო ლამაზი აღმოჩნა, ვიდრე მოველოდით. 26. კრება არ დაწყებულა, სანამ ჩვენ არ მივედით. 27. როდესაც ქუჩაში გამოვედი, გამახსენდა, რომ მეგობრის წიგნი, რომელიც მან ორი დღის წინ მათხოვა, არ წამომიღია. 28. მათ მითხრეს, რომ იმ წელს ახალ ბინაში გადასულიყვნენ. 29. დედა გაუწყრა ბავშვებს, რომლებსაც ფანჯარა ჩაემტვრიათ ფეხბურთის თამაშის დროს. 30. ის ძალიან აღელვებული ჩანდა, რადგან მშობლიურ ქალაქში ბავშვობიდან არ ყოფილა. ყველაფერი შეცვლილი დახვდა.

Exercise 23. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Past Indefinite* and *Past Perfect* where necessary.

1. სასტუმროში გვიან დაებრუნდით, რადგან უცხო ქალაქში გზა აგვერია.
2. იმის გამო, რომ იმ დღეს სახლში ადრე მიველი, ჩემი შვილი ჯერ დაწოლილი არ დამხვდა. 3. სანამ მივიდოდი, მას გადაწყვეტილება უკვე მიღებული ჰქონდა. 4. ქეთომ მაჩვენა პატარა კნუტი, რომელიც ქუჩაში ეპოვა. 5. საღამოსთვის თოვლმა მთელი მინდორი დაფარა. 6. მან წერილი გახსნა და პირველი სტრიქონის წაკითხვაც ვერ მოასწრო, რომ ცრემლები წასკდა. 7. სასწრაფო დახმარება რომ მოვიდა, ავადმყოფი უკვე გონს მოსულიყო. 8. გუშინ ქუჩაში შევხვედი ერთ ჩემს ძველ მეზობელს, რომელიც უკვე ათი წელია არ მენახა.
9. როგორც კი იეახშმეს, სასეირნოდ წაიდნენ. 10. მას აინტერესებდა, ჩვენ სად გაეატარეთ ზაფხული. 11. როდესაც თეატრში მივედი, სპექტაკლი უკვე დაწყებულიყო. 12. როდესაც დაეინახე, რომ ვიღაცას ჩემი ბინის კარი ჩაემტვრია, უცებ პოლიცია გამოვიძახე. 13. დედა ძალიან დაღლილი ჩანდა, რადგან ყველა ფანჯარა გაერეცხა და იატაკებიც მოეხეხა. 14. მხოლოდ მას შემდეგ, რაც დირექტორი კარგად გაეცნო ჩემს სარეკომენდაციო წერილს, დათანხმდა, სამსახურში ავეყვანე. 15. ვერც კი მოასწრო ჯგუფელმა იმის თქმა, მასწავლებელი ავადაა და დღეს არ მოვაო, რომ ბავშვები ქუჩაში გავარდნენ.
16. იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც მაღაზიაში მივედი, მათ ყველა წიგნი უკვე გაეყიდათ. 17. ვერც კი მოასწრო ქურდმა ჩემს ჯიბეში ხელის ჩაყოფა, რომ ჩემმა მეგობარმა მას ხელი ჩაავლო. 18. პირველი წინადადების თქმაც ვერ მოვასწარი, რომ ანამ თვალით მანიშნა, არაფერი წამოგცდესო. 19. მტერმა ქალაქის აღება ვერ მოასწრო, რომ თავისი წესები შემოიღო და კომენდანტის საათი (a curfew) გამოაცხადა. 20. სახლში შემოსვლა ვერც კი მოვასწარი, რომ ცოლმა საშინელი ამბავი დამახვედრა. 21. არ ვიცოდი, რომელი საათი იყო, რადგან ჩემი საათი გაჩერებულიყო. 22. ნახევარი გზა უკვე გავლილი გვქონდა, როდესაც ქარი ამოვარდა. 23. როდესაც ნინო სახლში დაბრუნდა, ვიღაცას მის კარებთან ყვავილების დიდი კალათა დაედგა. ის ვერაფრით ვერ მიხვდა, ვინ გაუკეთა ასეთი ლამაზი საჩუქარი. 24. რატომ არ მოხვედი ჩვენთან წუხელ? – სტუმრად ვიყავი ჩემს ძველ მეგობართან. მან ორი კვირით ადრე დამპატიჟა. 25. ნიკო ისეთ კაცს ჰგავდა, რომელიც ეს-ეს იყო გადაურჩა რაღაცა დიდ ხიფათს. 26. თბილისი უკვე ის ქალაქი არ იყო, რომელიც მან ათი წლის წინ დატოვა. 27. მხოლოდ მას შემდეგ, რაც ბავშვები დააძინა და თეფშები გარეცხა, ის ტელევიზორს მიუჯდა თავისი საყვარელი ფილმის სანახავად. 28. ლიზა ძალიან თაყმომწონე

და ამპარტავანი გოგონაა. მას შემდეგ, რაც მან ეს ჯილდო მიიღო, არავის არ ესალმება და ყველას ზემოდან დასცქერის. 29. როდესაც ჩემი სტუმრები წავიდნენ, გამახსენდა, რომ ნაყინის გამოტანა დამავიწყდა.

Exercise 24. Translate the sentences into English.

1. ა) ყველანი მზად იყვნენ გასამგზავრებლად, თუმცა მანქანა ჯერ კიდევ არ მოსულიყო.

ბ) მანქანა დროზე მოვიდა და ჩვენ გზას გავუდექით.

2. ა) მერი გათხოვდა და ბავშვს ელოდებოდა.

ბ) მერი ორი თვის წინ გათხოვდა.

3. ა) ლევანმა გაიღვიძა და კომპიუტერზე თამაშობდა.

ბ) ლევანმა გაიღვიძა და კომპიუტერს მიუჯდა.

4. ა) როდესაც სტადიონზე მივედი, მათეს ორი ბურთი (გოლი) უკვე გაეტანა და მესამე გოლის გასატანად ემზადებოდა.

ბ) მათემ იმ დროს ისე კარგად ითამაშა ფეხბურთი, რომ ხელმძღვანელობამ გადაწყვიტა, ის მთავარ გუნდში გადაეყვანა.

5. ა) ირაკლიმ ინგლისური ენა ისწავლა და ფრანგულს სწავლობდა.

ბ) ირაკლიმ ინგლისური ენა ისწავლა და ინგლისში წავიდა დელეგაციასთან ერთად.

6. ა) პატარა ლიზამ თოჯინას ტანსაცმელი გახადა დაბანდა.

ბ) პატარა ლიზამ თოჯინას ტანსაცმელი გახადა და დაბანა.

7. ა) როდესაც სახლში მივედი, ქურდს ბინა უკვე გაეტეხა და ჩემი კომპიუტერი ბინიდან გაჰქონდა.

ბ) ქურდი სახლში შეიპარა და იქიდან ყველაზე ძვირფასო ნივთები გამოიტანა.

8. ა) მეხანძრეებმა ცეცხლი ჩააქრეს და უკან ბრუნდებოდნენ.

ბ) მეხანძრეებმა ცეცხლი ჩააქრეს და უკან დაბრუნდნენ.

9. ა) ნიკომ ნელი ვაგონში ჩასვა, ახლა ბაქანზე იდგა და ნელის დამშვიდობების ნიშნად ხელს უქნევდა.

ბ) ნიკომ ნელი ვაგონში ჩასვა და დაემშვიდობა.

10. ა) გიოს ორი წელი შეუსრულდა და უკვე დარბოდა და ლაპარაკობდა.

ბ) როდესაც ორი წლის გახდა, ნიკომ ლაპარაკი ისწავლა.

11. ა) ნელიმ თეფშები გარეცხა და ამშრალებდა.

ბ) ნელიმ თეფშები გარეცხა და გაამშრალა.

12. ა) ქეთიმ კაბა შეიკერა და იცვამდა.

ბ) ქეთიმ კაბა შეიკერა და ჩაიცვა.

13. ა) ბიცოლამ ძროხა მოწველა და რძეს ადუღებდა.

ბ) ბიცოლამ ძროხა მოწველა, რძე ადუღა და ბავშვებმა დიდი სიამოვნებით დალიეს.

14. ა) პატერსონებმა ქალაქში სახლი გაყიდეს და სოფელში სახლს ყიდულობდნენ.

ბ) ორი წლის წინ ჩვენ სოფელში სახლი გავყიდეთ და ქალაქში გადავედით საცხოვრებლად.

15. ა) ნიკომ რამდენიმე გაკვეთილი გააცდინა, თანაკლასელებს ჩამორჩა და ახლა დღე და ღამე მეცადინეობდა.

ბ) გასულ კვირას ნიკო ავად იყო და რამდენიმე გაკვეთილი გააცდინა.

16. ა) დიასახლისმა წვენი ჭიქებში ჩაასხა და ბავშვებს ურიგებდა.

ბ) დიასახლისმა წვენი ჭიქებში ჩაასხა და ბავშვებს დაურიგა.

17. ა) მამა სამსახურიდან მოვიდა და ეზოში მეზობლებს ელაპარაკებოდა.

ბ) მამა სამსახურიდან მოვიდა და ეზოში ჩამოჯდა მეზობლებთან სალაპარაკოდ.

18. ა) მან რესტორანში სადილი შეუკვეთა, მაგიდასთან იჯდა და ელოდებოდა.

ბ) რესტორანში მან სადილი მიირთვა და ყავაც დალია.

19. ა) როდესაც სამზარეულოში დავბრუნდი, ჩემი რძე უკვე გადმოსულიყო.

ბ) სამზარეულოში შევედი, რძე ავადულე და ფინჯნებში ჩავასხი.

20. ა) როდესაც ის მორჩა საუბარს ტელეფონზე, მისი ჩაი უკვე გაციებულიყო და დედა ჩაის ხელმეორედ ადუღებდა.

ბ) დედამ ჩაი აადუღა და ჩვენ დაგვიძახა.

21. ა) კარებზე რომ დაეკაკუნე, კარი არავინ გამიღო. ყველა დაწოლილიყო და ეძინა.

ბ) უკვე გვიანი იყო, ყველა დაიღალა, დაწვნენ და მალე ჩაეძინათ.

22. ა) ჩიტები უკან მოფრინდნენ და ბუდეებს იშენებდნენ.

ბ) ისინი მოსკოვიდან დაბრუნდნენ და სახლიც აიშენეს თბილისში.

23. ა) ის ციხიდან გამოვიდა და ახლა პატიოსან ცხოვრებას ეწეოდა.

ბ) ის ციხიდან გამოვიდა და ოჯახი შექმნა.

24. ა) ის ორმოცი წელი მარტო ცხოვრებდა, როდესაც გადაწყვიტა დაქორწინებულიყო.

ბ) ის სამი წლის წინ დაქორწინდა და ახლა თავის პატარა ვაჟიშვილს ოთახში სიარულს ასწავლიდა.

25. ნელის დეიდას გული წაუვიდა და ექიმი ახლა ყველაფერს აკეთებდა, რომ

ის გონზე მოეყვანა.

ბ) ნელის დეიდა მალე გამოჯანმრთელდა და საწოლიდან ადგა.

26. ა) მას ფანჯრის მინა გაუტყდა და ახლა ახალ მინას დგამდა.

ბ) ბაღშეებმა ფანჯრის მინა გატეხეს, მაგრამ მამამ ახალი ჩადგა.

27. ა) გოგონებმა ყავა დალიეს და ახლა ყავაზე მარჩიელობდნენ.

ბ) გოგონებმა ყავა დალიეს და ანა დეიდამ მათ ყავაზე უმარჩიელა.

28. ა) ტურისტებმა ყველა ღირშესანიშნაები ადგილი დაათვალიერეს ლონდონში და ახლა ტეიტის გალერეაში მიდიოდნენ.

ბ) ტურისტებმა დილით ტეიტის გალერეა მოინახულეს და საღამოს თეატრში წაიდნენ.

29. ა) ჯონი ჭადრაკს ეთამაშებოდა თავის ბიძაშვილს პეტრეს, რომელიც ორი დღის წინ სტუმრად ჩამოვიდა სოფლიდან.

ბ) ჯონი და პეტრე დილით ზღვაზე წავიდნენ საბანაოდ და საღამოს კი ჭადრაკი ითამაშეს.

30. ა) როდესაც ისინი კრებაზე მიიდნენ, კრება უკვე დაწყებულიყო და მომხსენებელი სიტყვით გამოდიოდა.

ბ) გუშინ კრება 5 საათზე დაიწყო და სამ საათს გაგრძელდა.

31. ა) როდესაც საღამო დადგა, ჯონი სახლიდან გავიდა.

ბ) უკვე დაღამდა, მაგრამ მათე და ლევანი ეზოში ფეხბურთს თამაშობდნენ.

32. ა) როდესაც სახლში მივედი, ბაბუა სოფლიდან დაბრუნებულიყო, ბუხართან იჯდა და თბებოდა.

ბ) როდესაც აცივდა, ჩვენ ბუხარში ცეცხლი დაანთეთ.

Exercise 25. Translate the sentences into English.

1. ა) მან სუფრა გაშალა და სტუმრები მიიპატიჟა.

ბ) მან სუფრა გაშალა და სტუმრებს ეპატიჟებოდა.

2. ა) მან ახალი კაბა ჩაიცვა და სარკის წინ აქეთ-იქით ტრიალებდა.

ბ) მან ახალი კაბა ჩაიცვა და ქუჩაში გავიდა.

3. ა) მათ სახლი იყიდეს და ახალმოსახლეობას აღნიშნავდნენ.

ბ) მათ სახლი იყიდეს და ახალმოსახლეობა აღნიშნეს გასულ თვეს.

4. ა) ჩვენ ეისადილეთ და ყავაც დავლიეთ.

ბ) ჩვენ ეისადილეთ და ყავას მივირთმევდით, როდესაც მამა მოვიდა სამსახურიდან.

5. ა) მან ტელეფონის ნომერი აკრიფა და პასუხს ელოდებოდა.

ბ) მან ტელეფონის ნომერი აკრიფა და ანის სთხოვა ტელეფონთან.

6. ა) მამამ პირი გაიპარსა და ოდეკალონი სახეზე მიისხა.

ბ) მან პირი გაიპარსა და შხაპს ღებულობდა.

7. ა) დედამ ყვავილები დარგო ეზოში და მერე მორწყა.

ბ) დედამ ყვაეილები დარგო და რწყავდა მათ.

8. ა) ნიკომ საშინაო დაეალება შეასრულა და მამას ეხმარებოდა მანქანის გარეცხვაში.

ბ) ნიკომ საშინაო დაეალება შეასრულა და მამას მოეხმარა მანქანის გარეცხვაში.

9. ა) საღამოს იწვიმა და ქარმაც დაუბერა.

ბ) წვიმამ გადაიღო და ქარი ქროდა.

10. ა) ჩიტებმა ბუდე ააშენეს და ბარტყებიც გამოჩეკეს.

ბ) ჩიტებმა ბუდე ააშენეს და ბარტყებს ჩეკდნენ.

11. ა) დედამ ხორცი იყიდა და ხილს ყიდულობდა.

ბ) დედამ ხორცი სუპერმარკეტში იყიდა და ხილის საყიდლად ნიკო გაუშვა მაღაზიაში.

12. ა) ბავშვებმა ბურთი დაკარგეს და ეძებდნენ.

ბ) ბავშვებმა ორი დღის წინ ბურთი დაკარგეს მინდორში.

13. ა) მან ფანჯარა გააღო და გარეთ იყურებოდა.

ბ) მან ფანჯარა გააღო და გარეთ გაიხედა.

14. ა) მან სიგარეტს მოუკიდა და მოსწია.

ბ) მან სიგარეტს მოუკიდა და ეწეოდა.

15. ა) მან ორი ინგლისური წიგნი წაიკითხა და მესამე წიგნის კითხვა დაიწყო.

ბ) მან ორი ინგლისური წიგნი უკვე წაიკითხა და მესამეს კითხულობდა.

16. ა) მან წერილი დაწერა და ფოსტაში წავიდა გასაგზავნად.

ბ) მან წერილი დაწერა და ფოსტაში მიდიოდა მის გასაგზავნად.

17. ა) ბავშვებმა ნაძვის ხე მორთეს და მის ირგელივ ცეკვავდნენ და მღეროდნენ.

ბ) ბავშვებმა ნაძვის ხე მორთეს და დედას დაუძახეს.

18. ა) მზე ჯერ ამოსული არ იყო, როდესაც გზას გავუდექით.

ბ) მზე ამოდიოდა, როდესაც გზას გავუდექით.

19. ა) მასწავლებელმა სია ამოიკითხა და ახალი გაკვეთილის ახსნა დაიწყო.

ბ) მასწავლებელმა სია ამოიკითხა და ახალ გაკვეთილს ხსნიდა.

20. ა) მან ექსპედიციაში მონაწილეობა არ მიიღო, რადგან ჯერ კიდევ კარგად არ იყო.

ბ) ის უკვე გამოჯანმრთელდა და ექსპედიციაში მონაწილეობას ღებულობდა.

21. ა) ჯიმიმ მანქანა შეაკეთა და მეგობრები ქალაქგარეთ წაიყვანა.

ბ) ჯიმიმ მანქანა შეაკეთა და მეგობრები ქალაქგარეთ მიჰყავდა.

22. ა) ის გამოცდებზე ჩაიჭრა და ახლა ძალიან ბეჯითად მეცადინეობდა.

ბ) ის გამოცდებზე ჩაიჭრა და სტუდენტი ვერ გახდა.

23. ა) მან საშუალო სკოლა დაამთავრა და ინსტიტუტში მისაღები გამოცდები ჩააბარა.

ბ) მან საშუალო სკოლა დაამთავრა და ინსტიტუტში მისაღები გამოცდებისთვის ემზადებოდა.

24. ა) პატარა ლიზიმ ფინჯანი გატეხა და ტიროდა.

ბ) პატარა ლიზიმ ფინჯანი გატეხა და ნატეხები გადამალა.

25. ა) იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც მათთან მივედი, სუფრა უკვე გაეშალათ და სადილობდნენ.

ბ) მათ სუფრა გაშალეს და ისადილეს.

26. ა) როდესაც მათთან მივედი, სტუმრები სუფრასთან ისხდნენ და თამადა სადღეგრძელოებს წარმოსთქვამდა.

ბ) მან ჭიქაში ღვინო დაისხა, სადღეგრძელო წარმოთქვა და დალია.

27. ა) როდესაც სახლში მივედი, ეიღაცას სასწრაფო მანქანისთვის გამოეძახა და მანქანა ჭიშკართან იდგა.

ბ) როდესაც ბებიას გული წაუვიდა, ჩვენ სასწრაფო მანქანა გამოვიძახეთ.

28. ა) საგანი ბევრად უფრო ძნელი აღმოჩნდა, ვიდრე გვეგონა.

ბ) საგანი ძნელი არ იყო და ჩვენ ყველაფერი უცებ გაეიგეთ.

29. ა) დედა ტიროდა. მას დეპეშა მიელო სოფლიდან ბაბუას ავადმყოფობის შესახებ.

ბ) როდესაც დეპეშა მივიღეთ ბაბუას ავადმყოფობის შესახებ, ჩვენ უცებ მამის მანქანაში ჩავსხედით და სოფლის გზას გავუდექით.

30. ა) მდივანმა ყველა საბუთი დაბეჭდა იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც დირექტორი სამსახურში მოვიდა.

ბ) როდესაც მდივანი სამსახურში მოვიდა, მან დაბეჭდა ყველა საბუთი.

31. ა) ორი გაკვეთილი დამთავრდა და ბავშვები ეზოში თამაშობდნენ.

ბ) ორი გაკვეთილი დამთავრდა და მესამე დაიწყო.

The Future Perfect Tense

The Future Perfect is formed by means of the auxiliary verb ***"to have"*** in the Future Indefinite and Participle II of the notional verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I shall have written	Shall I have written?	I shall not (shan't) have written
You will have written	Will you have written?	You will not (won't) have written
He (she, it) will have written	Will he (she, it) have	He (she, it) will not (won't) have
We shall have written	written?	written
You will have written	Shall we have written?	We shall not (shan't) have written
They will have written	Will you have written?	You will not (won't) have written
	Will they have written?	They will not (won't) have written

The Future Perfect is very rarely used either in conversation or in writing.

The Future Perfect is used:

1. To denote an action already completed at a given future moment or before another future action. The moment in the future before which the action will end may be marked by adverbials (***by that time, by the next spring, by 5 o'clock, soon, etc.***) or other verbs denoting future actions or by the whole context or situation.

By six o'clock she will have already laid the table and at six o'clock she will be asking the guests to table.

I shall have managed to see the most interesting sights of London by the end of my stay there.

By this time I shall have boarded the train and will be travelling to London.

When the epidemic has run its course six hundred people will have died.

If you come after seven I shall have done my lessons and we can go for a walk.

Note: In the subordinate clauses of time and condition instead of the Future Perfect the Present Perfect is used.

When you have seen him, go into the drawing room and talk with Lord Hunstanton.

After we have eaten dinner we shall wash up.

2. To denote an action that will begin before a certain moment of time in the future and will still be going on at that future moment (Future Perfect Inclusive). The actions in this case are expressed by statal verbs, which are not used in the continuous forms, or by certain actional durative verbs.

I shall have lived in Tbilisi for twenty years next spring.

Mother will have been ill with the flu for a week on Monday.

They will have been engaged for three months when they get married in October.

Our telephone will have been out of order for a week tomorrow. He will have owned that villa for ten years next year.

Exercise 1. Comment on the use of *the Future Perfect* in the following sentences.

1. I shall have started out on my round by the time you go, so I'll say good-bye to you now.

2. "He's very young." "Yes, we needn't worry about him for fifteen years and with luck. I'll have had an idea by then. 3. "What happens next?" "You will have been presumably the victim of a robbery," she said. "Somebody will have added a few knock-out drops to your drink, and will have stolen your wallet from you." 4. " women are fickle," he said, "and in twelve months she will have forgotten all about me." 5. Why not let this matter wait until you reach the Mainland? By that time your daughter will have had an opportunity to become better acquainted with young Hungerford 6. She will have booked dinner for my arrival tonight and we will eat together with the children. 7. You will have made inquiries at the station then, of course. 8. By the time our children grow up, the world will have changed completely. 9. Some firms dismiss women as soon as they marry, but you will have noticed that all our senior girls are married.

10. If he continues squandering his money he will have spent all his money before the end of the month. 11. I dare say you'll have gone to bed by the time. I've finished. 12. In that case you'll have lost nothing. 13. I shall finish my life's work on my way back; and then I shall have lived long enough. 14. "Think of her wandering for hours lost in the dark!" – "There is no need to worry, Max, she will have suffered at most a little discomfort and alarm." 15. In a week's time, Millicent and Alison, who have lived together in the cottage for nineteen years, will have left it forever and the new people will have moved in. 16. Very often a jury will have concluded little and yet it will have reached a verdict. 17. Before his price is due you will have watched for many years form this place the sunset over cloudless days of happiness and the moon rise over starlit night of dreams. 18. "What's biting you?" – "I'm worried we'll have lost our place in Selby Street," he mumbled. 19. "We shall see what your father says – he'll have talked to your uncle Lionel!" 20. But perhaps somebody will wait for me, for he will have told them I am out!"

21. "What does he think will have happened in six months?" 22. We shall have finished paying off the loan by June. 23. "He'll have realized by then that we are engaged." 24. "We will, all of us, have made our fortunes by then." 25. By that time the tortoise will have got some way ahead.

26. "It was a terrible shock, Thomas, but in a week, you'll see, we'll have forgotten it."

Exercise 2. Use *the Future Perfect* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. He (to forget) altogether that we're going out tonight. 2. By April Isaak says Virginia (to go),

too. Along with Maryland! 3. By the time you get your beautiful new world, true science (to perish). 4. "She probably won't ever notice that I've gone." "In that case, you (to lose) nothing. And you (to save) your pride." 5. By the time you get home we (to cook) dinner. 6. I (to do) my homework by evening. 7. We (to finish) working by 3 o'clock and at three we shall be free to discuss our plans. 8. By the time we arrive at the Institute the first lecture (to start). 9. In twenty years' time, ordinary telephone (to disappear). 10. By that time I (to get old) and (to retire). 11. By the middle of the 21st century we (to build) space stations, which will circle the Moon. 12. You (to forget) everything by the time he comes. 13. Your father (to bring) his young wife home from Anglebury by tomorrow. 14. By 12 o'clock he probably (to come back) and will be sleeping here. 15. By the time you come back form Italy your son (to finish) school. 16. When I have worked here for 20 years I (to have) much experience. 17. The world (to change) a lot by 2100. 18. In a year's time my car (to travel) twenty thousand miles. 19. I'm not sure if he (to pass) all the exams by then. 20. Another twenty years and four more children and you (to forget) all about it. 21. It will show you a piece of country you (not to see) before. 22. Long before that these pretty arms (to turn) into little short fat ones. 23. He (to follow) by his growing family, year after year, their pilot and their general. 24. "Some day I (to wear) out the selfishness." "It is only home-sickness. I (to get) over it soon!" 25. He (to go) two years next October. 26. Another month will make seven weeks. Seven weeks that I (not to see) him. 27. He would be cut, if he dared cross the Boarder. Unless he (to cut) already. 28. Besides, you (to do) something worth doing when you have to give up. 29. When I've got Gerola off my hands I (to do) being a mother. 30. You'll sleep, and when you wake these fancies (to go). 31. However, the mares (to have) their baptism by the time they get there. 32. She asked me to send her a copy of the book. I am sure by the time it reaches her she (to travel) far on her spiritual pilgrimage.

Exercise 3. Complete the following sentences using the verb in *the Future Perfect.*

1. By the time you get to the Institute . 2. By the time I am twenty-four 3. By the time Nick comes home . 4. By the time it gets cold . 5. By the time my children grow up 6. Before the day breaks . 7. before you know where you are. 8. By the time we arrive at the station . 9. before you get the money to buy that car. 10. By Friday .11. Don't worry, by this time tomorrow . 12. By the time he reads one book . 13. In a fortnight 14. Before you come home . 15 before the vacation starts. 16. By then .17. Before you learn to speak Italian well 18. By the end of the year .19. Before you can say Jack Robinson . 20. By the time we get our salary . 21. Before we leave . 22. In a year 23. before my parents come home from work. 24. By the time you arrive at the station 25. By the end of the day . 26. By the time he's forty . 27. Before we telephone them

28. By the time my letter reaches him . 29. By the time he recovers . 30. In two years' time . 31. by tomorrow evening. 32. When you get to the shop

Exercise 4. Complete the following sentences.

1. after he has done his homework. 2. before you have apologized to me. 3. As soon as we have finished our work 4. until he has told me the truth. 5. unless he has recovered. 6. after she has tidied the flat. 7. after they have had dinner. 8. as soon as it has stopped raining. 9. unless we have learned all the words. 10. until I have spoken to him. 11. till I've heard the whole story. 12. until he has explained me everything. 13. after Nick has graduated the Institute. 14. before he has served in the army. 15. when you've typed these letters. 16. before I have received the fax from the head office. 17. before you have opened the mouth. 18. after they have received the latest information. 19. before he has taken any decision. 20. as soon as she has had her hair done.

Exercise 5. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense using *Indefinite* (*Present, Future*), *Perfect* (*Present, Future*).

1. "He (to be) all right when I (to lick) him into shape," he said. "He's a good dog and he loves his master". 2. So when you (to settle down) you will be getting silk scarves again. 3. You (to remain) with me until such time as you (to mend) your ways. 4. As soon as I (to go) they (to try) to find evidence which (to show) that Fremont wasn't killed until the evening of Tuesday the sixth. 5. By the time that Fell girl (to get) into the Superior Court she (to rehearse) her testimony so much in her own mind that it'll be impossible to shake her. 6. Mason said, "All right, after you (to ask) her, and (to hear) what she has to say, we (to talk) about letting you contribute something toward my fees." 7. The captain shook his head. "It's something I'm not going to discus until I (to see) if it's in there." 8. It's my duty to see her. I (not to act) till I (to give) her every chance. 9. The very moment I (to drink) my coffee I (to leave) this apartment for ever. 10. He probably (not to confess) till I (to work) on him a while. 11. "I (not to rest) until I (to find out) – if I ever can – just what was back of it." 12. You're nothing but a damned official. But you're not a bad fellow; when you (to be) out here a year or two you (to be) all right. 13. When I (to kill) him something (to snap) within myself and (to die) also. 14. And a week after I (to be) dead they (to forget) even my name. That's what the public is. 15. But I (to finish) reading by the time you (to come). 16. By the time you (to get back) I (to retreat) to the pines. 17. I (to tell) you what I (to know). Stop me when you (to hear) enough. 18. "But seriously," said Lockert, "you (to be) more English than I am, after you (to live) there a year."

Exercise 6. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense using *Indefinite* (*Present, Future*), *Perfect* (*Present, Future*).

1. My dear, this is so awful I can hardly write it When you (to get) this I (to go away) and don't try to find me. 2. You (to feel) better when you (to find) your own way to the shops. 3. We (to buy) a new puzzle when we (to finish) this one? 4. He will know how important Mr Smith is, for he undoubtedly (to read) my article. 5. I (to make) a garden out of what so short a while ago was a wilderness. I (to create) something. In my small way I too (to live) in beauty. 6. His ambition was to make a road round the island. "In two years I (to do) it and then I can die or they can fire me, I (not to care). 7. Rachel said, "Leave her there for a day or two. Then she (to recover) and you can take her away." 8. You (to be) like a dope-fiend when he (to break) from his drug. 9. "Let me know what you (to decide) to do." "I will. When I (to decide)." 10. "But seriously," said Lockert, "you (to be) more English than I am, after you (to live) there a year." 11. "If I (not to return) in two hours' time," he said, "act for the best to save yourselves and do what you like with the prisoner." 12. I will tell you what I know. Stop me when you (to hear) enough.

Exercise 7. Use *the Future Perfect* or *the Future Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. If she deserts me I (to follow) her. 2. He would be cut, if he dared cross the Boarder. — Unless he (to cut) already. 3. What does he think (to happen) in six months? 4. We (to finish) paying off the loan by June. 5. If there's some talking to be done I (to do) it myself. 6. If she sees us, she certainly (to warn) her accomplice. 7. When I come back, all the formalities (to complete). 8. We, all of us, (to make) our fortunes by then. 9. He (to realize) by then that we are engaged. 10. If they're out to do it to you, then they certainly (to accomplish) it in the end. 11. I (to call) you tomorrow evening. 12. It was a terrible shock, Thomas, but in a week, you'll see, we (to forget) it. 13. Long before that these pretty arms (to turn) into little short fat ones.
14. You (to take care) of Carmen, won't you? 15. "I doubt if Rachel (to want) to see me next Sunday." 16. I (to give) you two hundred yen to the dollar myself. 17. Another month will make seven weeks. Seven weeks that I (to see) him. 18. I (to talk) to him later. 19. I (to have) a drink after we've had a little chat. 20. Call on me at about 7 o'clock. I am sure they (to leave) by then. 21. By the time you get free I (to finish) my work. 22. He (to arrive) before you have done talking. 23. I do believe that before that year is run I (to succeed). 24. When you are stuffed and inert with everything you want, then (to be) the time for me. 25. He (to go) two years next October. 26. You'll sleep, and when you wake these fancies (to go). 27. I'm afraid he (to post) the letter by the time we come. 28. "The minute I hear myself snoring, I (to come) to bed," he said.

Exercise 8. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Future Perfect* where necessary.

1. მშობლები დღეს სახლში 5 საათზე დაბრუნდებიან. ამ დროისათვის გაკვეთილებს უკვე დავამზადებ, რადგან მათ უნდა ეთხოვო, რომ ფეხბურთის სათამაშოდ გამიშვან. 2. იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც ინსტიტუტში მივალ, პირველი ლექცია უკვე დამთავრებული იქნება. 3. იანვრის ბოლოსთვის ყველა გამოცდას ჩაეაბარებ და თებერვლის დასაწყისში ბაკურიანში წავალ ჩემს მეგობრებთან ერთად. 4. ხვალისათვის ამ წიგნს უკვე წაიკითხავ? ხვალ შენთან მოვალ და ამ წიგნს წავიღებ. 5. თუ თქვენ მათთან 8 საათზე მიხვალთ, ისინი ჯერ კიდევ სახლიდან არ იქნებიან გასული. 6. შეგიძლიათ თორმეტ საათზეც დამირეკოთ, მე ჯერ დაძინებული არ ვიქნები. 7. ჩემი ძმა იმედოვნებს, რომ წლის ბოლოსთვის სამუშაოს იშოვის. 8. მარტის ბოლოსთვის ისინი ახალ ბინაში გადაველენ და იქ შეგიძლიათ მოინახულოთ აპრილში. 9. სანამ სტუმრები მოვლენ, დედა სუფრას უკვე გაშლის. 10. დარწმუნებული ვარ, სანამ სპექტაკლი დამთავრდება, თითქმის ყველა მაყურებელი დატოვებს დარბაზს, რადგან ძალიან უშინაარსო სპექტაკლია. 11. შენს მოსელამდე მე მოერჩები გაკვეთილების მომზადებას და მერე ერთად ვუყუროთ ფეხბურთის მატჩი. 12. იჩქარე, თორემ სანამ შენ იქ მიხვალ, უკვე დაღამდება. 13. იმ დროისათვის, სანამ მეხანძრეები ხანძარს ჩააქრობენ, ცეცხლი უკვე ასობით ჰექტარ ტყეს გაანადგურებს. 14. იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც ოკუპანტები საქართველოს დატოვებენ, ისინი ბევრ ხიდსა და სახლს ააფეთქებენ. 15. წლის ბოლოსთვის ჩვენ უკვე ათი ინგლისური წიგნი გეექნება წაკითხული ორიგინალში. 16. იმ დროისათვის, როდესაც ბავშვები გაიღვიძებენ, თოვლის ბაბუას საჩუქრები უკვე მოტანილი ექნება. 17. იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც მე ამ წიგნის წერას მოვრჩები, ზაფხული უკვე დამთავრდება და ვერსად ვერ წავალ დასასვენებლად. 18. ნოემბრის ბოლოსთვის ოკუპანტები ჯარებს გაიყვანენ ჩვენი ქვეყნიდან. 19. სანამ სადგურში მივალთ, ჩვენი მატარებელი უკვე გასული იქნება. 20. იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც ნიკო სკოლას დაამთავრებს, მისი პატარა ძმა სკოლაში წავა. 21. შენ სანამ რამეს მიხვდები, ისინი თავის საქმეს მორჩებიან. 22. ამ თვის შუა რიცხვებისთვის ის უკვე დახარჯავს თავის ხელფასს და მერე როგორ აპირებს ცხოვრებას?

23. თავისი ცხოვრების მიწურულისთვის ჩემი ძმა უკვე მოიელის ნახევარ მსოფლიოს. მას ძალიან უყვარს მოგზაურობა. 24. ვიჩქაროთ, თორემ სანამ ინსტიტუტში მივალთ, გამოცდა უკვე დაიწყება. 25. თებერვლისთვის ჩვენ ყველა საზამთრო მარაგი გამოგველევა (to run out) და მერე რა ვქნათ? 26. იმ

დროისთვის, როდესაც იმ ქარხანაში მუშაობას დაეიწყებთ, მისი ამჟამინდელი დირექტორი უკვე პენსიაზე გავა. 27. მომავალი წლისთვის ჩემი უფროსი ვაჟი სკოლას დაამთავრებს. 28. მე ვიცი, რომ ჩემს იქ მისვლამდე ანა მოუყვება მათ ყველა ჩემ საიდუმლოს, ის ენას ვერ აჩერებს. 29. თუ ახლა არ წახვალ, იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც შენ იქ მიხვალ, მაღაზია უკვე დაიკეტება. 30. იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც შენ ადგები, მზე უკვე დიდი ხნის ამოსული იქნება და მერე ასეთ სიცხეში სად წახვალ?

Exercise 9. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Future Perfect* where necessary.

1. ჩვენ მოვამზადებთ ყველა საჭირო დოკუმენტს იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც ოფისში მოხვალ. დირექტორიც უკვე მოგიწერს ხელს. 2. კაფეში დაგელოდებით 5 საათზე. შენ უკვე მორჩები ყველა შენს საქმეს იმ დროისთვის? – არა მგონია. ჯობს, არ დამელოდოთ. მე შემოგიერთდებით, როგორც კი გავთავისუფლდები.

3. რას გააკეთებს ნიკო 7 საათისთვის? – არ ვიცი, მაგრამ ეფიქრობ, იმ დროისთვის ის გამოცდას უკვე ჩააბარებს და თავისუფალი იქნება. 4. ზამთრის ბოლოსთვის ისინი ახალ ბინაში გადაეყენენ და ახალმოსახლეობას გაზაფხულზე იზეიმებენ. 5. იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც პეტრე დამირეკავს, სარეცხი უკვე დამთავრებული მექნება და შევძლებ მასთან ერთად კინოში წასვლას. 6. შენ ყველაფერს მორჩები ჩემს მოსვლამდე? – რატომ მეკითხები? – ახალი ვიდეოკასეტა ვიშოვე და მინდა ერთად ვუყუროთ. 7. სადგურში დაგხვდები ხვალ 9 საათზე. – იმ დროისთვის ჩემი მატარებელი უკვე ჩამოსული იქნება. ჯობია ცოტა უფრო ადრე მოხვიდე. 8. ის ახლა ორ უცხო ენას სწავლობს ინტენსიურად. ამბობს, სანამ საზღვარგარეთ წავალ, ესპანური და ინგლისური უკვე ნასწავლი მექნებაო. 9. როდესაც სახლში მოვალ დღეს, დედას სადილი უკვე გამზადებული ექნება. მან იცის, როგორი მშიერი ვიქნები, რადგან დილით არ მისაუზმია. 10. რის გაკეთებას აპირებ ხვალ? – ორი საათისთვის გაკვეთილებს დავამზადებ და მერე მთელი დღე ტელევიზორს ვუყურებ. 11. რას გაამზადებ სამი საათისთვის? 12. იანვარში უკვე სამი წელი შესრულდება, რაც ისინი დაქორწინებულები არიან. 13. იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც პოლიცია მოვა, ეს ქურდი ნახევარ სასტუმროს გაძარცვავს. 14. იმ დროისთვის, სანამ შენ ერთ წიგნს წაიკითხავ, მე სამი წიგნი უკვე წაკითხული მექნება. 15. მასწავლებელი გეპირდება, რომ გაასწორებს ჩვენს ტესტებს შემდეგი გაკვეთილისთვის. 16. ნუ დარდობ, ყველაფერი კარგად იქნება. შაბათისთვის დედა ახალ კაბას

შეგიკერავს. 17. ხვალისთვის ჩემი შეღებილი იატაკი უკვე გაშრება და კვირას სტუმრების მიღებას შეეძლებ. 18. იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც მშობლები სახლში მოვლენ, მე სადილი უკვე გამზადებული მექნება. 19. თმები უნდა შეიჭრა. ზაფხულისთვის მაინც გამეზრდება. 20. წლის ბოლოსთვის ბენზინზე ფასები კვლავ აიწევს. 21. სასეირნოდ საღამოს 9 საათზე წავალთ. იმ დროისათვის წვიმა უკვე გადაიღებს. 22. როგორც კი გათენდება, გზას გაუდგებით. 11 საათისთვის ნახევარი გზა უკვე გავლილი გვექნება და ცოტასაც შევისვენებთ. 23. გადაჭრი ყველა პრობლემას ჩვენს მომავალ შეხვედრამდე? 24. ვიმედოვნებ, რომ წლის ბოლოსთვის სადიპლომო ნაშრომი უკვე შესრულებული მექნება.
25. იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც მზე ამოვა, ჩვენ უკვე ნახევარ გზას გავივლით.
26. ნახევარი გზაც არ გვექნება გავლილი, როდესაც ბენზინი გამოგველევა, ამიტომ მეტი ბენზინი უნდა ჩავასხათ. 27. ლონდონში თავისი სტუმრობის დასასრულისთვის ის უკვე მოინახულებს ყველა მუზეუმს და სამხატვრო გალერეას. 28. შენ სანამ პოლიციას შეატყობინებ, ქურდები უკვე გაიქცევიან.
29. თვის ბოლოსთვის მთელი ქალაქი უკვე ნახავს ამ საინტერესო გამოფენას.
30. 5 საათისთვის ჩემი თეთრეული გაშრება და 5 საათზე უკვე დავაუთოვებ მას.

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

The Present Perfect Continuous is formed by means of the Present Perfect of the auxiliary verb ***"to be"*** and Participle I of the notional verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
	Have I been writing?	I have not (haven't) been writing
I have been writing	Have you been writing?	You have not (haven't) been writing
You have been writing	Has he (she, it) been	He (she, it) has not (hasn't) been
He (she, it) has been writing	writing?	writing
We have been writing	Have we been writing?	We have not (haven't) been writing
You have been writing	Have you been writing?	You have not (haven't) been writing
They have been writing	Have they been writing?	They have not (haven't) been writing

The Present Perfect Continuous is used mainly in conversation.

The Present Perfect Continuous is used with actional verbs to denote:

1. An action in progress which began in the past and is still going on, i.e. continues into the

present. In this case either the starting point of the action or the period of time during which it has been in progress is usually indicated. The Present Perfect Continuous Inclusive is generally used with ***since, for-phrase, these days, lately, etc.*** If the conjunction ***"since"*** introduces a subordinate clause, the verb in this clause is usually in the Past Indefinite. But the Present Perfect is used in the subordinate clause if it denotes an action begun in the past and continued into the present.

I have been working for years, bringing in money here – putting it in your hand like a kid.

I have been trying to get you on the phone all morning.

They have been fighting for an hour and a quarter by the watch.

How have you been amusing yourself since we have been away?

We've been looking for you since you left us.

This factory has been manufacturing motor cars since it opened.

We traced this particular car to that garage where your lad's been working lately.

I have been phoning you since I found your telephone number.

You've been serving at Mass for two years at a regular time.

2. An action begun in the past, continued up to the present but no longer going on at the present moment (The Present Perfect Continuous Exclusive).

What is it? Have you been taking this stuff?

You see crime everywhere. You have been reading detective stories.

The grass is wet. It has been raining.

Why are you laughing? Has Nick been telling you anecdotes?

I am tired. I have been cleaning the house.

Note:

a) One should be careful not to mix the Present Perfect Continuous Inclusive with the Present Continuous. The Present Continuous denotes an action going on at the present moment, no previous duration is implied. The Present Perfect Continuous Inclusive is used to denote the previous duration of the action:

I am trying to get him. – I have been trying to get him all night.

She's waiting anxiously for her husband. – She's been waiting anxiously this last twenty minutes.

They are travelling in the South. – They have been travelling in the South since the beginning of the month.

b) The Present Perfect Continuous can be used with some verbs which are normally not used in the continuous form so as to express emotions:

For years I've been wanting to get at you, to talk with you, and this is my chance.

I've been meaning to have a chat with you and Joyce.

It's strange, but that's just what I've been feeling today.

Sam! I've been thinking lately. I didn't want to speak to you about it.
I've been noticing a few little things myself.

Exercise 1. Comment on the use of *the Present Perfect Continuous* in the following sentences.

1. "What have you been doing? What's all this?" Diana indicated the table. "Invitation. For my farewell party. I hope that you can come." 2. I've been trying to see you for ages. I thought that female would never stop yapping. 3. This is Pat Hobby. I've been working on a script with Pené Wilcox, and Mr Berners would like to have it mimeographed by half-past three. 4. I've been reading books and I've been thinking. I'm going to try to amount to something in life. 5. The idea came into his mind – suppose I have been writing postcards to myself? People did such things, especially people with split personalities. 6. We never allowed to indulge ourselves in rich foods, and besides, they've been discovering more about heart disease in relation to butter, haven't you read that in the newspaper, Esme? 7. "Manny," he said to his youngest boy, "you haven't been digging in the orchard, have you?" 8. Belle Newberry put her hair back into place, laughed and said, "That's what's known as a windblown bob. I've been hearing a lot about you, Mr Mason." 9. I've been questioning the servants. They all declare that no one has been to the back door tonight. 10. I see Muriel has been telling you about George. The damned fool! I have no patience with him. 11. I have been watching you and Miss Honeychurch for quite a little time. 12. He has been waiting for you all the afternoon. 13. I know that the last week or two she's been seeing you more than ever. 14. Well, what's been bothering you today? You started to tell me and then didn't. 15. May I have a look at what you've been painting? 16. The fact is I've been having some very tiresome dreams lately. 17. I'm not feeling so well, Mr Smeeth, but it isn't that, really. It's just – oh, I dunno – well, you see, Mr Smeeth, it's a girl. That's what's been bothering me just lately. 18. Tell me – has Clive been teasing you? He can be very naughty. 19. "I am Mary Morgan." "Oh, yes, Miss Morgan, I've been expecting you. Won't you sit down?" 20. I've been ringing up parents like mad for the last hour and a half. Don't I sound hoarse? Honestly, I've been screaming and screaming down the telephone. 21. "I've been seeing him again, Martyn. I'm sorry, Frank, I " "Seeing him? Sleeping with him?" 22. The fact is – I've been thinking about it and – I'm scared to go." 23. He's been travelling since six this morning. 24. Ever since I was a young girl I've been trying not to take things seriously and I'm afraid now I'm hopelessly frivolous. 25. He still had my volume of Calderon in his hands, and now he idly turned the pages. "Which of the plays have you been reading?" "El Medico de su Honra." 26. "I have been telling Captain Black of the mission which brings us here," he explained. 27. Have you been attending Mr Maltravers recently? 28. We've been working for the past fifteen minutes, sweetheart. Or didn't you notice? 29. "You low-down skunk, what have

you been saying about me to the governor?" she was spluttering with rage. 30. "What have you been doing for the last two weeks, Dell?" he asked.

Exercise 2. Say how long something has been happening.

Model: *We are travelling now. We began travelling three hours ago. – We have been travelling for three hours.*

1. The teacher is examining Tom. He began examining him twenty minutes ago. 2. The visitor is waiting in the hall. He came an hour ago. 3. They are looking for separate flats. They started to look for them when they divorced. 4. I am thinking about you. I started thinking when I first met you. 5. He is asking about you. He started asking about you after your departure. 6. She is keeping her secrets from her friends. She started doing so after their betrayal. 7. He is living alone. His wife died three years ago. 8. I am watching you attentively. I came here half an hour ago. 9. They are dating. Their first date was the third of May. 10. The actors are rehearsing W. Shakespeare's comedy. They started rehearsing it last month. 11. My son smokes. He started smoking at school. 12. Patrick is ringing up his parents but nobody answers. He began ringing an hour ago. 13. You are keeping company with a man you hardly know. You only got acquainted last month. 14. She is making the most awful scenes. She found about her husband's liaison. 15. She is taking music lessons. She started taking them two years ago. 16. We are travelling. We boarded the train early in the morning. 17. Pete is reading a book. He began reading it last Friday. 18. What chatter-boxes those women are. They started talking as soon as they got on the bus and are still talking. 19. Our teacher is lying in bed with pneumonia. She fell ill on Monday. 20. Nick is working hard at his paper. He started working at it last week.

Exercise 3. Ask questions beginning with *"How long".*

Model: *I am going in for sports. – How long have you been going in for sports?*

1. The children are sleeping. 2. My father works at a factory. 3. Pete is writing an essay. 4. It is raining. 5. Alan is playing computer games. 6. They are watching TV. 7. Mother is washing up. 8. Ann is playing the piano. 9. My mother-in-law is staying with us. 10. She is baking a birthday cake. 11. Nelly is making up in front of the mirror. 12. The boys are fighting in the yard.
13. Nick is swimming and Nelly is sunbathing. 14. This firm is building houses all over the country. 15. My father is smoking. 16. Nick and Nelly are dating. 17. My brother is serving in the army. 18. He is earning five hundred dollars. 19. They are growing citrus fruit in Abkhazia. 20. They are looking for a house to rent. 21. It is raining now. 22. She is having problems with her in-laws because of her character. 23. My mother-in-law grows ornamental flowers in our flat.

Exercise 4. Ask questions beginning with *"How long".*

Model: *It is snowing. How long has it been snowing?*

1. I am expecting a message from her. 2. She is travelling and is very tired. 3. You are living in Paris, aren't you? 4. I am ringing the bell but nobody answers. 5. Are you waiting for me? 6. How beautifully they are dancing! 7. That car is tailing us around town. 8. Nellie's husband is a drug addict. 9. There is one person who is blackmailing her for huge sums. 10. It seems the orator is not going to bring his speech to a close. 11. It is freezing. 12. I am on a diet. 13. I am keeping this chain in his memory. 14. They are meeting regularly. 15. My neighbour Paul drinks like a fish. 16. They are building a multi-storeyed house in our neighborhood. 17. The children are playing football in the yard. It's time to call them in. 18. I see you are wearing spectacles. Are you near-sighted? 19. Irma drives a car like a pro.

Exercise 5. Read the sentences and add a sentence with *the Present Perfect Continuous*.

Model: *Kitty is crying. (Mother / scold her) – Mother has been scolding her.*

1. Mother is carrying a heavy bag. (She / shop) 2. Jane is drying her bathing-suit. (She / swim) 3. The teacher's fingers are in red ink. (She / correct / the copy-books) 4. Look, the grass is wet. (It / rain) 5. Why have you stopped talking? (You / talk / about me?) 6. She looks all worn-out. (She / work / hard) 7. Father is washing his hands in the bathroom. (He / fix / his car) 8. Your eyes are all red and sore. (You / read?) 9. She is all strained. (The wear and tear of life / tell / on her nerves) 10. Mother is angry with me. (What / you / tell / her?) 11. The house is full of the smell of cookies. (Mother / bake) 12. Jack is staggering. (He / drink) 13. Why do you look so bored? (My wife / nag / me) 14. My feet are all sore and swollen. (I / climb / the mountain) 15. Why are they running amok? (They / see / ghosts?) 16. Why are you laughing? (Pete / tell / his jokes?) 17. Why are people staring at me like that? (Anybody / gossip / about me?) 18. The students are yawning. (They / listen / to Mr Parker's tedious lecture) 19. You are all red and your nose is peeling. (You / lie / in the sun?) 20. My eyes are filled with tears. (I / chop / onions) 21. The children are puffing and panting. (They / run)

Exercise 6. Use *the Present Perfect Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. I (to clean) for Twiggs and Dersigham's for seven years. 2. He (to go) to Maidstone a lot lately, and driving to a little village about five miles out. 3. I (to trail) Reeder for a week, and that fellow wants some trailing. 4."You (not to talk) to that Jimmy Munroe?" "No, Papa." "Well, just do not let me catch you at it." 5. I suppose someone (to clean) it [the pistol] and left it somewhere. 6. You don't suppose, Ted, that I (to tell) lies tonight, do you? 7. I (to hesitate) whether or not to tell the inspector of my discovery. 8. Muriel, what's the matter with you? I (to

talk) to you and you aren't listening. 9. "Tell me, Mr Mason, is Moms planning to sue Carl for divorce?" "That isn't what we (to talk) about," Mason said kindly. 10. You (to lead) an abnormal life. I think it is time for you to lead a more normal one. 11. I (to do) a little detective work on my own, you know. 12. I (to manufacture) motor cars – the Revelation – thought it was about time to quit. 13. Supposing I was to go straight off and tell the police about what you (to say)? 14. They will assert that I (to deceive) myself all through, in the most absurd way. 15. You know, after I (to examine) corpses for a while, you forget that someone was responsible for the corpse. 16. I (to stand) here for ages hoping to frighten somebody. 17. How long this embezzlement (to go on)? 18. I (to feel) for some time now that I must perform an act. 19. "You (to steal) again?" "No. Worse. But I (not to tell) you that?" 20. "What is there in it?" "A lot of jolly fine pebbles that I (to collect) on the beach," he said. 21. My Charlie (to go) with that girl? 22. I just (to get) Mr Chalmers to give me all the particulars about this man Courage. 23. I (to live) in British Guiana-plantation – no soda for your whisky, and always the chance of finding a snake curled up in your chair. 24. The hem of her dress has a dark terminal line where it (to sweep) the dusty verandah.

Exercise 7. Use *the Present Perfect Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. I thought it would be a kindness to take that girl somewhere. She (to have) a lot of trouble at home. 2. "You (to blab) to Dowse." Jaraby was frowning. 3. I (to make) mistakes all my life. 4. "You foolish boy, why you (to try) to make me miserable?" 5. Brush descended a few steps. "Herb (to drink) bad, Queenie?" "Well, you know I never know what goes on, but I think he (to drink) some. 6. You all want to know something (to worry) me all day? 7. We (to talk) it over ever since we got your letter last month. 8. Frederick, do you know I (to give) Sophie dancing lessons, or trying to? 9. I (to listen) to news of them for the last 20 years. 10. Darling, it seems ages since I've seen you. What you (to do) with yourself all this time? 11. "What you (to do) with her? I want an answer from you immediately!" 12. Charles Sabin got to his feet at once, as Mason entered. "You must be a mind-reader Mr Mason," he said. "I (to try) to get you for the last half hour!" 13. "Herb," she said. "You haven't been around to see me lately. Where you (to keep yourself?" 14. "I (to look) for you everywhere," she said. "I was afraid you'd gone."

15. Poor Mrs Farquhar. She had a wee stroke, and she (to go) downhill, by all accounts, ever since. 16. Tommy rang up this morning, and I've said I'll play golf with him on Saturday and my conscience (to prick) ever since. 17. "She'll smell a rat the moment she sees them," answered a sneering voice inside his head." Probably think you (to flirt) with one of the typists. 18. Syd dear, don't think I'm being silly. It's not just today, it (to grow) on me. I can't sleep at night thinking of it. 19. "I (to doze). How many hours have passed?" 20. He (to speak) of Julie

most of the night. 21. "Now listen," he said, "you boys (to kick) me around because I gave Mason a break." 22. He knows you (to talk) a lot with Mom 23. "Celinda Dail (to try) to see her," Della Street said. 24. It occurs to me that I (to break) the law. 25. "Where you (to live), Mr Ahearn?" she asked interestedly. 26. He's the bloke you (to want), the man at the back of the Morrison case. 27. We (to keep up) appearances for three long months at Ashleigh Court and it's time we stopped. 28. What (to weigh) on Friston's mind for some time is his retirement. 29. I just (to tell) Mrs Brown how madly he drives. 30. Ever since I came here I (to expect) a war to break out here any minute. 31. Ever since they got acquainted they (to date) regularly. 32. What have I not seen of human nature during the fifteen years that patients (to come) to my dingy back room in Wimpole Street? 33. I (to look) to see if Dave the mechanic has been behind the wheel but it isn't him.

Exercise 8. Identify the difference in the meanings of *the Present Continuous* and *the Present Perfect Continuous*. Translate the sentences into Georgian.

1. a) Why are they laughing? Has Tom been telling them his anecdotes? b) Why is Tom telling them his anecdotes? They must do their lessons. 2. a) You have been watching TV since morning. Haven't you got anything else to do? b) It's late already and you are still watching TV. 3. a) I have lost my appetite. I have been eating chocolates. b) You are eating chocolates again. You will spoil your appetite before dinner. 4. a) They have been dating since they got acquainted at Mary's birthday. b) Mary is dating both these boys and she hasn't made a choice yet. 5. a) The room is full of tobacco smell. Who has been smoking? b) You are smoking again! Your mother will give you a good dressing down for it. 6. a) They are building a house in the country and are going to move in soon. b) They have been building a house in the country for two years. 7. a) My mother is making a new dress for me. So I'll look foppish at the party.
b) My mother has been making a new dress for me since last Monday and I'm afraid it won't be ready for my party. 8. a) Why are you always quarrelling? The neighbours are already grumbling and complaining. b) This couple has been quarrelling since their wedding day. I think their marriage will not last long. 9. a) My old man is constantly complaining about some ailment. I'll have to take him to the doctor. b) I see you have just left the manager's office. Have you been complaining again? 10. a) Ann's husband has been drinking and he'd better not drive his car tonight. b) What are you drinking tonight – Kindzmarauli or Kakhuri? 11. a) I am sick and tired of everything. You've been pulling my leg lately. b) Are you in earnest? Are you pulling my leg again? 12. a) This orator is speaking so enthusiastically that you can't help listening to him. b) This orator has been speaking for nearly an hour. I wish he would wind up his speech. 13. a) Who has been meddling with my papers? Now I can't make head or tail of

anything. b) Again you are meddling with your daughter-in-law's affairs. Can't you leave her to herself? 14. a) Our dog has been barking for the whole hour. I must see what's wrong. b) Our dog is barking. Somebody must be at the gates. 15. a) She has been sunbathing since morning. It's time she left the beach. b) Where is Nellie? – Oh, she is sunbathing as usual.

Exercise 9. Identify the difference in the meanings of *the Present Continuous* and *the Present Perfect Continuous*. Translate the sentences into Georgian.

1. a) Pete has been playing football since early childhood and hopes to become a professional player. b) It's already dark and Pete is still playing football in the yard. 2. a) I am looking for a job. Will you please help me to get one? b) I have been looking for a job since I lost my last work and without much success so far. 3. a) Oh, it is still raining. I must take my umbrella. b) It has been raining for two days and the streets are all in puddles. 4. a) What book are you reading? You are so absorbed that it must be interesting. b) When are you going to return me my book? You have been reading it so long. 5. a) Nellie is making up again. I think she is going out with her boyfriend. b) Oh, how long you have been making up! Now we are going to be late for the concert because of you. 6. a) Hear the wind! It's blowing hard tonight. b) It has been blowing hard since morning. How boring it is to be in the whole day! 7. a) A man is waiting for you downstairs. He says it is on urgent business. b) Oh, my God, has he been waiting for me since then? I have clean forgotten about him. 8. a) My sons are learning English now. b) They have been learning English for three years. 9. a) Those girls have been prattling since they got on the bus. How exasperating they are! b) When these girls are prattling you can't get a word in edgeways. 10. a) You can still see the students in the hall. They are rehearsing a play for the literary evening. b) The students have been rehearsing the play the whole day and are not satisfied with the result yet. 11. a) I can't go to the theatre with you. I am reading for my exam. b) I am very tired. I have been reading for my exam. 12. a) Mummy, what have you been baking? It smells of my favourite cake. b) Mummy, are you baking this cake for me?

13. a) Your shirt is all torn. Have you been fighting? b) Look out into the yard! Is Nick fighting there again? 14. a) The children are so quiet. Are they playing chess? b) The children must be tired. They have been playing chess since five o'clock. 15. a) Ann is sleeping. Try not to wake her up. b) Ann has been sleeping for three hours. It's time to wake her up.

Exercise 10. Make up sentences of your own beginning them with *"No wonder*

Model: *Our yard is covered with snow. (snow for three days) - No wonder, it has been snowing for three days.*

1. She speaks English fluently. (learn it since childhood) 2. Her flat looks spick-and-span. (tidy

it the whole day) 3. Pete is as drunk as a lord. (drink since morning) 4. Nick's father is in a rage with him. (gad about lately) 5. His coat is threadbare. (wear it for three years) 6. The streets are all flooded. (rain cats and dogs for three hours) 7. Pete is a professional football player. (play since he was five) 8. He is sick and tired of such a dog's life. (live from hand to mouth for five years) 9. He is quite at home on the stage. (perform on the stage since he finished school) 10. She is a virtuoso on the piano. (take music lessons since childhood) 11. He can hardly drag his feet. (walk the whole day) 12. She's got a heat rash. (sunbathe since early morning) 13. She has a sore throat. (eat too much ice-cram lately) 14. Nelly is angry with her colleagues. (gossip about her) 15. The children's hands are stiff with cold. (play snowballs and make snowmen for three hours) 16. His sister is nothing but skin and bones. (diet for the whole year) 17. She is a very educated and experienced teacher. (teach for twenty years) 18. Her skin is all in an itchy rash. (use a dubious cream recently) 19. I am run off my legs today. (receive so many guests for two days) 20. Kitty's mother is a dab hand at making dresses. (make them for many years) 21. He has a long beard. (grow it for three months)

Exercise 11. Use *the Present Perfect Continuous* or *the Present Perfect* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. She said you were going to see him. I (to wait) here, hoping you'd show up. 2. "Kitty, you don't want to live here." "It's what people (to say) to me all my life." 3. "And so you start out by telling me you (to look) for me?" he inquired, smiling. 4. Sabin is the man who (to furnish) finance to the citizens' committee which (to investigate) vice conditions and (to transmit) information on graft to the Grand Jury. 5. All this nonsense you (to talk) (to make) me forget about your father. 6. You miss a woman when she (to live) with you in the same house for six years, no matter what sort of cat-and-dog life you led together. 7. He stood up again. "We (to read) this part of the Bible for a month, so you should be able to answer my question." 8. Today I (to finish) the printing of my History of Crome. 9. Ever since I started travelling, people in restaurants and night clubs (to stare) at me, nudging each other and whispering. 10. Mabel, I (to look) for you everywhere. 11. "I thought you'd be too busy helping Mabel." "I (to work) like a slave." 12. "What sort of weather we (to have)?" "It (to be) all bright and beautiful all the time." 13. I (to investigate) those accusations as thoroughly as I can. 14. Mason said, "Before we go round there, Paul, anybody else (to try) to get in touch with Gibbs?" "I don't think so." 15. "I (to wait) for you," she said, fixing me with a furious eye. 16. It is the first real property I ever (to possess). I own it completely. 17. Belle Newberry said, "That's what's known as a wind-blown bob. I (to hear) a lot about you, Mr Mason." 18. Be absolutely certain not to tell them anything about your past, where you (to live), or anything about it. 19. I (to think) about what happened

out on the tracks, and I ought to say to you all that I'm sorry I did it. 20. Miss Corey, I (to make) a great study of girls. And I (to study) you too. 21. She and the Dail girl (to run) neck and neck. 22. "I (to look) at fires since before you were born," he said. 23. "Man, that's an interesting thing you (to tell) me! So it was blood on her slipper?" 24. "Mr Poole, I think, (to have) an inkling of it." "It certainly (to hover) in my head for some time." 25. Well, I suppose they haven't got my address, I (to move) about so much lately.

Exercise 12. Use *the Present Perfect Continuous* or *the Present Perfect* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. She says lots of things in there about what she (to do), things you were going to tell me from her writing. 2. I could tell you quite a good deal about your sister, what she looks like, where she (to be) recently, what she (to do). 3. "I (to look) all over for you, Chief," she said. "I was up on deck," he told her. 4. Marriage is a curious institution, as I already (to remark). 5. Dritton cleared his throat and said heartily: "It's a splendid morning. We (to have) splendid weather."
6. He'll probably bring in a couple of the other experts, who (to wait) to take a rap at you.
7. Hello, Tommy, old hero. Here you are! Well, how you (to pull along) since I saw you last?
8. Trace the sale of new cages. Find out people who (to inquire) about the care and feeding of parrots. 9. I don't think I did fail. At least, that's what I (to imagine). 10. Brush descended a few steps. "Herb (to drink) badly, Queenie?" 11. I'll tell the judge. I'll tell everybody what I (to say).
12. But the money you deposited here that money (to earn) money for us. 13. Look here, I (to want) to have a few words with you, Lawson. 14. She just (to tell) me that she (to come back) full of grand resolutions. 15. My advice is to try something intellectual for a change. Sit down with your champagne – on which you (to chew) since early afternoon. 16. He (not to be) to bed all night. She heard him go out. If he (to walk) about since then he will be absolutely dead.
17. For some little time I (to endeavour) to instruct you in the principles of pure English. 18. I (to tell) you a thousand times I don't like you when you're sarcastic. 19. "It's Pat Humbert. Where you (to keep) yourself, Pat?" "I (to study) at night." 20. I (to come) in here, week in and week out, for Mr Benenden's Own Mixture for years. 21. I (not to speak) to a white person for two years. I (to long) for good old talk. 22. "You (not to describe) her at all. Now, what she (to do)?" "Well, she (to nurse) someone". 23. I (to read) so much about you from time to time that it's a real pleasure to meet you in the flesh. 24. Of course he (to try) to drive me to run away and then say it's my fault.

Exercise 13. Use *the Present Perfect Continuous* or *the Present Perfect* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. I (to travel) half the day and I'm as tired as you are. 2. Well, this happens to be something I know about. For years I (to hear) and (to read) people talking about John Helds' girls and Fitzgerald's 3. Goblins and fairies at midnight – and as a consequence of his encounter with them he (to try) out some sort of exorcism. 4. See here, young fellow, I understand you (to knock) Mrs Lawson about again. I'm not going to stand for that. 5. He was worried. He (to ring) you for days. He (to have) the line checked but there (to be) no reply. 6. I (to look) for you for the last hour! 7. You'll see then that for two years you (to breathe) poisoned air. 8. You (to become) a media celebrity, my son. Unfortunately, the publicity you (to get) is most unfavourable. 9. You (not to forget) how to flirt. 10. I (to meet) him twice. 11. Now I forbid you to cry. We don't want every one to know what we (to say) to each other. 12. So far, I (to act) on the assumption that Celinda Dail stole the picture and sent it by air mail to Roomy for an investigation. 13. Darling, you don't know how happy you (to make) me. 14. "He's my pal," Christie said. "And you (to see) him lately?" 15. My God, Evylyn, I (to sit) down at the office all day looking at the outside of your letter. 16. My God, Perry, I (to be) friendly with Della, and it (to be) sort of a give-and-take informal relationship. 17. I (to let) this thing drift far about a year now, while I got my financial affairs in shape. 18. For some time past she (to call) at the house almost every evening, and (to take) me out in her motor, and (to invite) me to concerts. 19. His face showed his relief at seeing the lawyer. "C.W. (to try) to get you on the phone," he said. "I (to call) every few minutes." 20. "My husband (to feel) unwell for some weeks," she said concisely. 21. I rather (to expect) you to drive in any time during the last hour. 22. I (to look) after myself for the last three years. 23. You see, I (to think) about money and banks a lot lately. 24. We now (to deal) with the second killing, and (to establish) the fact that no one of us can be completely exonerated from suspicion.

Exercise 14. Use *the Present Perfect Continuous* of the verbs in the box.

have, dream, think, go, see, work, make, accuse, pay, go, live, say, think, want, get, take, feel, suggest, accuse, work, feel, try, talk, worry, see, draw, wonder, make, feel, drink, feel, make, keep up, say, insult, play, expect

1. "I suppose George a grand time in Germany," I said. 2. I don't know how George both ends meet. 3. She on a method for improving high-speed steel. 4. You the long bow a bit, haven't you, with all those stories I hear of your gallantry in the trenches? 5. You know, I if there mightn't have been something slightly curious going on about the time the old man died.

6. You bloody awful for a couple of months. Because you too much. 7. "I about you all week. I about you, do you know that?" 8. "It's a long story. Things well with me, doctor." 9. "You her?" "Alice Ryder? Hardly." 10. What offence have you committed this time? You the gentry again? 11. He certainly me compliments. 12. We appearances for three long months. 13. Do you know how long the cinema ..? Since about 1900. 14. You low-down skunk, what you about me to the governor? 15. "You long here?" "I started yesterday." 16. How you today? 17. What's this? She into any trouble? 18. She died of an overdose of veronal. She it lately for sleeplessness. 19. My opinion is, Turgis, – you not up to the mark lately. 20. She , you know, that I wasn't much use to anyone. 21. She the most awful scenes. 22. She herself of selfishness towards us. 23. I to decide whether to make a clean breast of things or not. 24. She herself of selfishness towards us. 25. "The servants ?" I asked. "What about?" 26. " So Soames you?" he said. "I had a visit from him last night." 27. Evidently she around with a bunch of crooks. 28. I have just come from there, and I there. 29. I just I've enjoyed your singing so awfully much. 30. I about it a lot. The solution came to me during the performance. 31. I to talk to you for a long time. 32. The lady and I each other. But what the devil has that to do with Cynthia' death? 33. I a war to break out here any minute.

Exercise 15. Use *the Present Perfect Continuous* of the verbs in the box.

hear, tell. dance, put in, plague, suspect, puzzle, try, spread, call, come, keep, read, watch, look, drink, work, think, blackmail, feel, rain, listen, lay, check, live, tell, paint, talk, let, want, do, see, wait, keep, want, do

1. Well, I suppose she you that I'm a selfish brute. 2. It seems that he constant attendance on a Miss Dail, but since he's met Belle he more and more time with her. 3. Oh! Buzz along. And take that silly ball with you. It us to death all morning. 4. I to get rid of her for ages, but I never had a real good excuse. Now thanks to you I got one. 5. "We're going to live in a new house." "I about it. I'm going to come and see it." 6. I should tell you that if I find that you these lying stories about me, I shall immediately start proceedings for slander. 7. Mr Alleyne for you. Where were you? 8. I to the officers, and they are going to search the orchard over again. 9. I for a similar advertisement in all the dailies the last three months. 10. I forward to this invitation for six months. 11. It seems that there is one person who has known all along – who her for huge sums. 12. My husband unwell for some weeks. 13. "It ... for nearly four hours," she said at last. 14. We pipes for the gateway for two weeks. 15. He up on the family. Knows more about them than I do. 16. "Is she married?" "I hope so,

she with him nearly ten years." 17. I my head for the last five minutes, wondering what was wrong with you. 18. Well, I'm disappointed in you, I really am, Matfield. I .. some time that you were in a dark house. 19. I for an hour. I thought you'd never come. 20. You every night to the Reja and you never came near me? Oh, how cruel! 21. You company with a man whom you knew as Morgan Eves for some time? 22. People are always sending me funny books to read. I one and it depressed me. 23. "Michael, where you yourself?" "Around here". 24. "Do you like me at all, Bertha?" he asked. "I to ask you ever since you came here." 25. "What you ?" "Lying in the sun mostly." 26. "I Irene," said Jolyon when the cab had started. "Indeed!" 27. I it over with mother, and I'll tell you what I've decided. 28. I this thing drift for about a year now, while I got my financial affairs in shape. 29. I what people expected me to do, all my life. 30. I seriously as the saying is, since I was fifteen or so. 31. Such a sight! Oh, he'll do for himself one day and that's the holy alls of it. He since Friday. 32. "It's all right," said Wilcox, "I've finished it." "What? You ?" 33. I him what a capital sitter you were. 34. "In the Middle Ages they used to use girdles of charity." "Yes, I know. I of them."

Exercise 16. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Present Perfect Continuous* where necessary.

1. ჩემი დისშვილები ბავშვობიდან სწავლობენ ინგისურს კერძო მასწავლებელთან. ამ ხნის გამავლობაში მათ ინგლისური საკმაოდ კარგად შეისწავლეს. 2. დღეს ის მთელი დღე მუშაობდა და ძალიან დაიღალა. 3. მე თეატრი ძალიან მიყვარს. უკვე ხუთი წელია ყველა სპექტაკლს ვესწრები. 4. ვინ არის ის კაცი, რომელსაც შენი ძმა ელაპარაკება? – ის ჩემი ძმის მწერთნელია. ის ბავშვობიდან წვრთნის ჩემს ძმას კრიეში. 5. უკვე ერთი საათია, რაც იგი აბაზანას ღებულობს. რატომ არ გამოდის? უნდა დავუკაკუნო. 6. ჩემს ბიჭს ეს ჯინსის შარვალი უკვე ერთი წელია, რაც აცვია, ახლის ყიდვას მთხოვს. 7. უკვე ორი საათია ბინას ვალაგებ. ძალიან დავიღალე, ჩემს დას უნდა ვთხოვო, რომ დამეხმაროს. 8. ანა ისევ აგვიანებს, ალბათ, დილიდან მაკიაჟს იკეთებს (to make up). 9. ხელები დაიბანე, ძაღლს ვთამაშებოდი. 10. ისინი დილიდან ჭადრაკს თამაშობენ და არ აპირებენ მალე დამთავრებას. 11. ნიკო სულ ნელიზე ფიქრობს მას შემდეგ, რაც გაიცნო. 12. დედაჩემი 1985 წლიდან ჩვენს ინსტიტუტში ინგლისურს ასწავლის. 13. რამდენი ხანია, რაც გთხოვ, ამდენი არ მოსწიო. შენ კი არ მისმენ. 14. უკვე 20 წუთია მათ ვურეკავ და ყურმილს არავინ იღებს. – ალბათ უკვე სძინავთ. 15. უკვე ნახევარი საათია, რაც ბებიის სათვალეს ვეძებთ. ის ყოველთვის კარგავს მას. 16. რატომ ხარ ასეთი შეწუხებული? – მთელი დღე

ჩემს მშობლებს ეურეკაე და არავინ მპასუხობს. ავად ხომ არ არიან?

17. რამდენი ხანია, რაც წვიმს თქვენს ქალაქში. – ორშაბათიდან გადაუღებლად წვიმს. 18. შენ ძალიან შეწუხებული ჩანხარ. ტიროდი? 19. ჩვენ ამ პრობლემაზე უკვე დიდი ხანია ვმუშაობთ და ძალიან საინტერესო დასკვნებიც გავაკეთეთ.

20. ვინ მოჰკიდა ხელი ჩემს წიგნებს? ყველაფერი არეულია. 21. უკვე ოცი წუთია ავტობუსს ველოდები და ავტობუსი არ ჩანს. ტაქსი უნდა ავიყვანო, თორემ დამაგვიანდება. 22. პეტრემ გამოცდები კარგად ჩააბარა. – რა გასაკვირია, მთელი წელი ბეჯითად მუშაობდა. 23. რატომ ტირის ნიკო? – დედა გაუჯაერდა.

24. თვალები გაწითლებული გაქვს. ისევ ტელევიზორთან იჯექი?

25. გაწითლებული ხარ. მზეზე იჯექი? 26. უკვე ერთი საათია, რაც მივდივართ და ჩვენი სასტუმრო ჯერ კიდევ არ ჩანს. 27. ძალიან მოსაბეზრებელი წიგნია, უკვე ერთი კვირაა ვკითხულობ და არ ეიცი, როდის დავამთავრებ. 28. რამდენი ხანია, რაც თქვენი ვაჟიშვილი სპორტს მისდევს? – ბავშვობიდან. 29. ჩემი კაბები საწოლზე ყრია. ნამდვილად ჩემი ქალიშვილი იზომებდა მათ. 30. რატომ გაჩუმდით ყველანი. ჩემზე ხომ არ ჭორაობდით?

Exercise 17. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. ა) უკვე ერთი საათია მიმტკიცებ, რომ ეს შენი ბრალი არაა, მაგრამ მაინც არ მჯერა. კიდევ რამეს ხომ არ დაამატებ?

ბ) ნახე, ნიკო ანას რაღაცას უმტკიცებს, ალბათ სიყვარულს უხსნის.

2. ა) ტყუილად ცდილობ, რომ შენმა ქმარმა მოწევას თავი დაანებოს. ის ხომ მთელი თავისი ცხოვრება ეწევა და ასე იოლად ვერ დაანებებს თავს.

ბ) რატომ ეწევი ოთახში? თავი ამტკივდა, წადი, გარეთ მოსწიე.

3. ა) რა ამბავია? აქ რა ხდება, ბავშვებო? ახლავე შეწყვიტეთ ხმაური!

ბ) რამდენი ხანია ეს ხდება თქვენს ქალაქში?

4. ა) რატომ შეწყვიტეთ საუბარი? ჩემზე ჭორაობდით?

ბ) რატომ ჭორაობთ ნელიზე? რა დაგიშავათ ასეთი? ალბათ გშურთ, რომ თქვენზე ლამაზია.

5. ა) ორი საათია ჩემს მშობლებს ეურეკაე და არავინ მპასუხობს. ვშიშობ, რამე ხომ არ დაემართათ.

ბ) ვის ურეკაე ასე გვიან? ამ დროს ყველას სძინავს.

6. ა) რამდენი ხანია, რაც მელოდები? მაპატიეთ, ტაქსი ვერ დავიჭირე.

ბ) ვინმე ხომ არ მელოდება? თუ ვინმე მელოდება, უთხარით, რომ ექიმი მეტ პაციენტს დღეს არ დებულობსო.

7. ა) უკვე ათი წუთია ერეკავ და კარებს არავინ მიღებს. ნეტავი, სახლში არ არიან? სად წავიდნენ?

ბ) ეიღაცა კარებზე რეკავს. გავაღო?

8. ა) ჩემი მეზობლები უკვე ორი თვეა ბინას არემონტებენ. იმედოვნებენ, რომ ვაჟიშვილის ქორწინებისთვის დაამთაერებენ.

ბ) ჯობია, არ მოხვიდეთ ჩვენთან. ჩვენ ახლა ბინას ვარემონტებთ. კაფეში შევიკრიბოთ.

9. ა) ნელი, უკვე ერთი საათია ტელეფონზე ლაპარაკობ. დადეი ყურმილი. სამსახურიდან უფროსმა უნდა დამირეკოს.

ბ) ანას ელაპარაკები ტელეფონზე? უთხარი, რომ საღამოს გვეწვიოს. კიდევ რამდენიმე მეგობარი უნდა მოვიდეს.

10. ა) ჩემი ვაჟიშვილი დილიდან კომპიუტერზე თამაშობს, გაკვეთილები კი ჯერ არ მოუმზადებია.

ბ) რატომ დააგვიანა დღეს ნიკომ გაკვეთილებზე? დარწმუნებული ვარ, რომ ისევ კომპიუტერზე თამაშობს.

11. ა) თვალები გაწითლებული გაქვს. ხომ არ ტიროდი?

ბ) რატომ ტირი? ვინ გაწყენინა?

12. ა) მიწა სველია. უწვიმია.

ბ) გარეთ წვიმს. ქეთის სკოლაში ქოლგის წაღება დავიწყებია და დასველდება.

13. ა) უკვე ერთი საათია ისინი საყიდლებზე არიან წასული და დედისთვის ჯერ საჩუქარი ვერ შეურჩევიათ.

ბ) დედა სად არის? – მაღაზიებში დადის. დღეს საყიდლების დღე აქვს.

14. ა) ნიკოს მამა მწერალია. ნიკო ამბობს, რომ მამამისი ახლა ახალ რომანს წერს და მალე გამოაქვეყნებს.

ბ) ნიკოს მამა რომანებს უკვე 10 წელია წერს.

15. ა) ეს ხორცი უკვე ორი საათი იხარშება. ალბათ მზადაა. უნდა ამოვიღო. ძალიან მშია და თანაც მეჩქარება.

ბ) რას ხარშავს დედა სამზარეულოში? – არ ვიცი, ამბობს სადილს ვამზადებო.

16. ა) უკვე ორი დღეა თოვს. თუ ასე გაგრძელდა კიდევ რამდენიმე საათს, ალბათ მალე ვითხილამურებთ და ბაკურიანში წასვლა არ მოგვიხდება.

ბ) ნახე, თოვს! ბავშვებს გავაღვიძებ, რომ გავახაროო.

17. ა) დეკანს არ სცალია. ის ჩვენს კურატორთან ერთად ჩვენი კურსის დისციპლინის საკითხს არჩევს.

ბ) დეკანი და კურატორები უკვე ნახევარი საათია რაღაცა პრობლემას წყვეტენ.

18. ა) მისტერ სმიტი ჩვენს უნივერსიტეტში უკვე ოცი წელია ასწავლის. მისი ლექციები ძალიან საინტერესოა.

ბ) მისტერ სმიტი ისევ ასწავლის თქვენს უნივერსიტეტში, თუ უკვე პენსიაზე გავიდა?

Exercise 18. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. ა) ჩვენ ინგლისურ ენას მხოლოდ ერთი წელია ვეუფლებით და უკვე ლაპარაკი ვისწავლეთ.

ბ) ფრანგული ენა უკვე ვისწავლეთ და ახლა ინგლისურს ვეუფლებით.

2. ა) ნელი დედას ეხმარება. ისინი დილიდან ეზოში ყვავილებს რგაენ.

ბ) მაპატიეთ, მაგრამ ნელი ტელეფონთან ვერ მოვა. ის ეზოში ყვავილებს რგავს და დაკავებულია.

3. ა) გუშინ ბევრი სტუმარი გვყავდა და ძალიან გვიან წავიდნენ. ბევრი თეფშია გასარეცხი. უკვე რამდენი ხანია ვრეცხავ და მხოლოდ ნახევარს მოვრჩი.

ბ) ახლა თეფშებს ვრეცხავ, არ მცალია სალაპარაკოდ. მოგვიანებით თვითონ დაგირეკავ.

4. ა) წინსაფარი ფქვილით გაქვს დასერილი. რამეს აცხობდი?

ბ) დედა ტორტს აცხობს. საღამოს მეგობრები მოდიან.

5. ა) ბავშვებს კიდევ სძინავთ? გააღვიძე, თორემ სკოლაში დააგვიანდებათ.

ბ) ბავშვს უკვე ორი საათია სძინავს, დროა გავაღვიძო და სასეირნოდ წავიყვანო.

6. ა) უკვე ოცი წუთია ჩემს ავტობუსს ველოდები. ნეტავი, რა დაემართა? ტაქსი უნდა ავიყვანო, უკვე მაგვიანდება.

ბ) დღეს ავტობუსს ძალიან ბევრი ელოდება გაჩერებაზე და არც ერთი მათგანი არ ჩანს. ნეტავი, რა მოხდა? მძღოლები ხომ არ გაიფიცნენ?

7. ა) დედა პატარა ანისთვის ნაძვის ხეს რთავს. ანიც ეხმარება და ძალიან გახარებულია.

ბ) ბავშვები უკვე ერთი საათია, რაც ნაძვის ხეს რთავენ და ჯერ კიდევ არ დაუმთავრებიათ.

8. ა) ძალიან რთულია ჩემი საბაკალავრო თემა. იანვრიდან ვამუშავებ მას ბიბლიოთეკაში და მხოლოდ პირველ თავს მოვრჩი.

ბ) ქეთი ისევ ბიბლიოთეკაში ზის და საბაკალავრო თემაზე მუშაობს.

9. ა) მე ბოლო დროს ძალიან ბევრს ვფიქრობ ნიკას წინადადებაზე და ვფიქრობ, არ დავთანხმდები.

ბ) ნელი, მიპასუხე, რაზე ფიქრობ? არ გესმის ჩემი?

10. ა) მთელი საღამოა ეცდილობ ჩემი წიგნები წესრიგში მოეყვანო, მაგრამ უკვე ძილი მერევა. ხვალ დილით გავაგრძელებ.

ბ) ნიკოს დარწმუნებას რატომ ცდილობ? ხომ იცი, რომ ის ჯიუტია და მაინც არ დაგიჯერებს.

11. ა) მომიყევი, რას აკეთებდი მთელი ის დრო, რაც არ ვიყავი. ალბათ, ბევრი რამ გააკეთე საინტერესო.

ბ) ნახე, რას აკეთებენ ბაღშები ეზოში. ჩემს ყვავილებს ხომ არ კრეფენ?

12. ა) მთელი საღამო ამ სულელურ სერიალებს უყურებ? არ მოგბეზრდა? როდის მოიცლი ჩემთვის?

ბ) ვერ ხედავთ, რომ ტელევიზორს ვუყურებ. აი ეს სერიალი მორჩება და სუფრას გაგიშლით.

13. ა) რატომ ხარ ასე გაბრაზებული ჩემზე? ვინმე რამეს ხომ არ გელაპარაკებოდა ჩემზე? რა გაიგე?

ბ) ვის შესახებ ლაპარაკობთ? ნიკას შესახებ? ის ძალიან ჭკვიანი ბიჭია. მე მომწონს.

14. ა) რამდენი ხანია მუცელში ტკივილს უჩივით?

ბ) ექიმო, მე ახლა არაფერს არ ვუჩივი. საკვებით ჯანმრთელი ვარ. მადლობის სათქმელად მოვედი.

15. ა) თავისი ცოლი მას ბოლო დროს სულ სცენებს უმართავს. მგონი, მან შეიტყო მის სასიყვარულო რომანზე.

ბ) რა ხმაური ისმის გვერდით ოთახში? მგონი, ის ისევ სცენას უმართავს თავის ქმარს. ჩვენ ამას შეჩვეული ვართ.

16. ა) უკვე სამი წელია, რაც ჩვენი ქარხანა მანქანის დეტალებს უშვებს.

ბ) ხომ არ იცი, სად იშოვება მანქანის მუხრუჭი? რომელი ქარხანა უშვებს მანქანის დეტალებს?

17. ა) ხო და იმას გეუბნებოდი, რომ ეს ასე დიდხანს არ გასტანს მეთქი. ამბობენ, რომ ისინი შორდებიანო (სცილდებიანო).

ბ) ვის ეუბნები შენ ამას? ეს მე თვითონ ძალიან კარგად ვიცი.

18. ა) გაიგე ახალი ამბავი? ანას ქმარმა სამსახური დაკარგა. ამბობენ, უკვე ერთი წელია ნარკოტიკებს ღებულობსო.

ბ) ნელის ქმარი ნარკოტიკებს უკვე არ ღებულობს. ცოლის სიყვარულის გამო მან თავი მიანება ამ საზიზღარ წამალს და მთელი ოჯახი ბედნიერია.

The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

The Past Perfect Continuous is formed by means of the auxiliary verb ***"to be"*** in the Past Perfect and Participle I of the notional verb.

Affirmative		Interrogative			Negative	
I You He (she, it) We You They	had been writing	Had	I you he (she, it) we you they	been writing?	I You He (she, it) We You They	had not (hadn't) been writing

The Past Perfect Continuous is used with actional verbs to denote:

1. An action in progress that began before a certain moment in the past and continued into it (The Inclusive Past Perfect Continuous). The Past Perfect Continuous Inclusive denotes an action which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment. In this case either the starting point of the action or its duration is indicated. The preposition ***"for"*** is used to denote the whole period of duration. ***"Since"*** is used to indicate the starting point of the action.

Marnie had been wearing growing-up clothes since she was about thirteen.

He had not been sitting there five minutes when his float gave a sudden jerk.

She thought again of Melvill Stoner. For years he had been sitting, listening to sounds.

It was Flitcraft all right. He had been living in Spokane for a couple of years as Charles.

Ever since my mother's death, he had been retreating more and more into a bachelor's existence.

2. An action in progress that began before a certain moment of time in the past and continued up to that moment, but not into it (The Exclusive Past Perfect Continuous). Thus, the Past Perfect Continuous Exclusive expresses an action which was no longer going on at a definite moment in the past, but which had been in progress not long before.

On the very moment John Mac-Hale, who had been arguing and arguing against it, stood up and shouted out: "Credo!"

He discovered that Mrs Grange had been talking to him.

By now he had managed to understand that some lads, who had been fishing, on their way back to their village had come across the cart on the home side of the ford.

There was a smell of cigarettes. Somebody had been smoking in the room.

The teacher's fingers were in red ink. She had been correcting the copybooks.

Nellie was crying. Her mother had been scolding her.

Note: The Past Perfect Continuous Inclusive should be distinguished from the Past Continuous. The Past Continuous denotes an action going on at a definite moment in the past, no previous duration is implied, whereas the Past Perfect Continuous Inclusive is used when the previous duration of the action is expressed.

She was wearing a fashionable dress and looked very smart. – She said she had been wearing that dress for weeks.

He was waiting for his girl-friend at 5 o'clock. – He had been waiting for her for half an hour.

When we went out it was raining. It had been raining since morning.

Exercise 1. Comment on the use of *the Past Perfect Continuous* in the following sentences.

1. Now his clothes looked as if he'd been standing at Hollywood and Vine for three years.

2. One day, Mary who had been drooping in the heat, was slow in dressing and had only just started making up her face when the bell for dinner rang. 3. For a fortnight on the boat that brought him from Tahiti to San Francisco he had been thinking of the story he had to tell.

4. Poirot, who had been watching my face, nodded. 5. When I had been sitting there for five or ten minutes I saw Mahony's gray suit approaching. 6. "Had she been staying there long?" asked Miss Marple. "About a fortnight," said Mrs Bantry. 7. She had kindled a bough of furze and stuck it into the bush under which she had been crouching. 8. Now she was excited. She was like a healthy schoolgirl who had been dressing up for fun. 9. She was twenty and had been steadily improving herself in the commercial world since she was fifteen. 10. The cook who had been looking on with the air of a complacent prophetess, now began to lose some of her rigidity.

11. The police didn't know anything about him except that he'd been living there for a couple of years with a Chinese woman in the bazaar. 12. You haven't lost all of your treasure that you'd been collecting since heaven knows when. 13. This detached observer was the gift of the Cohen boys at the station, who had been lending her books for the last two years. 14. Poirot had been standing just to the left of the door. Now he moved aside suddenly. 15. Mary stood still and looked. There was the big deep chair she had been sitting in a minute ago. 16. She'd been finding Norman a bore for some time, but she'd put up with him because he was her husband. 17. We had been driving after them about three minutes when I looked out of the window to see how far they might be ahead of us. 18. She hurried away almost at a run, and he realized that he had been shouting at her. 19. What had she picked up? Had her Aunt Winifred been talking?

20. What had Rosalind's mother been thinking all through the three days since her daughter had so unexpectedly come home from Chicago? 21. Being with him made her mind, that had been racing all afternoon, race faster than ever. 22. A thing happened that had been happening at odd

moments for more than a year. 23. He began to speak of life in the city where she had been living, condemning it. 24. One of the men who had been sitting with him before the door of the barn followed lifting his hands and dropping them nervously. 25. How long he had been sitting in that curious state of vacancy he had no notion when he saw Joe standing a little behind him to the right. 26. Then she remembered what she had been waiting for. 27. Yet only an hour earlier he had been arguing that he could most easily capture the Countess by storm, with no warning or preparations of any kind. 28. This was the opportunity for which Bertha had been looking.

29. There had been a deliberate care taken to obliterate all traces of whatever proceeding had been going forward. 30. If Mrs Grange really had been telling the story to Skelton it might have seemed as unlikely to him as it did to them. 31. She had been intently studying one of the more bewildering concoctions on display when she became aware of this tall, good-looking man staring at her. 32. "No," Hugh said, and from the sudden eagerness in his voice I felt that this was the exact moment he had been looking for. 33. She picked up the chair she had been sitting in and quickly slipped away with it into the house. 34. There was a debate on foreign affairs which not only the country, but the world, had been looking forward to with the gravest concern. 35. I was called upon to arrest an uncouth person who had been drinking home-brewed hootch.

Exercise 2. Form sentences from the elements in brackets using the verbs in *the Past Perfect Continuous*.

1. The old man's trousers were threadbare. (He / wear / them / for three years) 2. She felt depressed. (Something / gnaw / at her heart) 3. The girl was in tears. (Her mother / give / her / a telling-off) 4. When I entered the classroom all the students were laughing. (Pete / tell / them / anecdotes) 5. George was a terrible spendthrift. (No wonder / his uncle / make / him / a handsome allowance) 6. Robert answered the call at last. (How long you / ring / him / up?)

7. The streets were puddled. (It / rain / the whole week) 8. Her pillow was wet with tears. (She / cry / all night) 9. Nick could afford a holiday trip to Bulgaria. (He / save up / for months)

10. From one until half-past, then, was Mrs Brandy's recess. (She / look forward to / it / all the evening long) 11. She passed her first-certificate test in English last week. (How long / she / learn / English?) 12. She looked bored. (Mrs Stoner / chatter / non-stop) 13. Leaving the boss's office he bumped into Mrs MacHale. (She / eavesdrop) 14. My father gave up smoking last month when he realized that he was in fatal danger. (How long / he / smoke?) 15. My car was all dirty. (I / drive / along the muddy roads) 16. We shook sand out of our shoes. (We / walk / along the gravel path) 17. The two passengers got on the bus panting. (They / run / to catch / it) 18. He made a brilliant paper at the conference. (He / prepare / it / for a month) 19. He looked thin and worn. (He / keep / a diet) 20. There was a strong aroma of coffee in the house. (They / grind /

coffee) 21. He took to bed with severe symptoms. (How long / he / feel / unwell?) 22. Mother's hands were muddy. (She / plant / flowers / in the garden)

Exercise 3. Form sentences from the elements in brackets using the verbs in *the Past Perfect Continuous*.

1. Lena's eyes were red. (She / cry) 2. The dogs were barking all night long. (Somebody / try / break into the house) 3. There was a scuffle in the house next door last night. (They / drink) 4. The boys got it in the neck. (Who / tell / tales / out of school?) 5. I was exhausted. (I / work / for my exams) 6. It began raining in earnest in the evening. (The clouds / gather / the whole afternoon) 7. We were exasperated when she appeared at last. (We / wait / for her since morning) 8. My neighbours were at their wits' end. (Their only son / cause / trouble / again) 9. I wasn't able to get any exercise and felt awfully low. (It / rain / all day) 10. There was a terrible smell in the house. (Something / burn) 11. She was dead tired when we visited her. (She / clean / the flat) 12. He knew the city well. (He / live / there / since childhood) 13. The children's fingers were numb with cold. (They / play / snowballs / without mittens) 14. Nick was drenched to the skin when he came home last night. (He / walk /in the rain) 15. The radiators in some flats in Moscow gave a crack last week. (It / freeze / hard) 16. My landlady scalded her hands in the kitchen yesterday. (She / make / strawberry / jam) 17. My child gave a horror-stricken scream in the middle of his sleep last night. (He / watch / horror / films) 18. Little Joe had a terrible toothache last week. (He / eat / sweets) 19. Pete could hardly drag his feet. (He / climb / the mountain) 20. Murdoch won the first prize at the flower exhibition last Sunday. (He / grow / flowers / since childhood) 21. When I visited them on Saturday their flat was turned upside-down. (The police / search / for / drugs) 22. His hands were dirty. (He /dig / in the garden) 23. Little Joe's throat was sore. (He / eat / ice-cream) 24. They cut off their telephone. (Somebody / give / them / threatening calls) 25. Nick was yawning. (He / sleep) 26. Ann quarrelled with her boy-friend. (She / listen / to her girl-friends' gossip)

Exercise 4. Identify the difference in the meanings of *the Past Continuous* and *the Past Perfect Continuous*. Translate the sentences into Georgian.

1. a) Her words and manner showed that before entering she had been struggling with herself in private, and that the contention had been strong. b) Her words and manner showed that she was struggling with herself, and that the contention was strong. 2. a) For five minutes they had been looking into one another's eyes, and suddenly, without obvious reason, Edward blushed. b) They were looking into one another's eyes when Edward blushed. 3. a) Marcus had taken two terms' leave from his school in order to write a book about which he had been reflecting for a

long time. b) Marcus was reflecting about the book he was going to write. 4. a) The night was mild and moonless, and the rain had lately been falling, though for the present it had ceased. b) The night was mild and moonless, and the rain was falling. 5. a) His tongue was tired, for he had been talking all afternoon in a public-house in Dorset Street. b) He was talking about his success with the fair sex when she rang him up. 6. a) She thought that in him might be found the quality she had all her life been seeking in people. b) She looked in and said that she was looking for John and asked if we could help her find him. 7. a) He discovered that a girl he had been seeing for several weeks had all the time been according her favours also to Ginger Ted. b) Everybody knew that he was seeing a girl at exactly the same time every evening. 8. a) How long he had been sitting in that curious state of vacancy he had no notion. b) He probably had heard about his parents' loss as he was sitting in that curious state of vacancy when the maid led me into his room. 9. a) I had been selected for a spokesman, and I made a little speech that I had been preparing for a week. b) He was sorry that he could not come to our party as he was preparing a little speech to make at the next day meeting. 10. a) Upon my entrance, Usher arose from a sofa on which he had been lying at full length, and greeted me with a vivacious warmth. b) When I entered Usher was lying on the sofa at full length and didn't pay attention to me. 11. a) The storm that had been brewing broke with a roar. b) When we left the house the sky was overcast and a storm was brewing. 12. a) She rattled bottles in the kitchen and brought me in a glass what looked like the stuff we had been drinking. b) She rattled bottles in the kitchen, the sign that they were drinking. 13. a) The machine that had been trailing us came into sight around a bend in the road. b) At that very moment two cars were trailing us. 14. a) I had been roughing it for some time and I was glad enough to have a rest. b) I was not feeling well that day, so of course I couldn't join them in their excursion. 15. He caught sight of Robert, who had been playing golf and was waiting there for Eleanor. 16. He was drifting. He had been drifting all the time they had talked. 17. a) He rose from where he had been sitting astride the chair belonging to the desk, and crossed over to the still form in the armchair. b) He did not rise from where he was sitting as if I had not entered the room. 18. a) The personage wore the clothes which Lizzy had been brushing. b) Lizzy was brushing the clothes and did not even turn her head at the sound.

Exercise 5. Identify the difference in the meanings of *the Past Continuous* and *the Past Perfect Continuous*. Translate the sentences into Georgian.

1. a) He knew instinctively that they were not now the two people who had been holding hands so long in the darkness inside. b) I noticed that they were holding hands tightly and didn't want to part. 2. a) Diana, who had been watching the others, turned and looked at me in fear. b) The

whole evening Diana was watching the others with fear. 3. a) Raymond came from behind a bush where he had been trying a shot at a hawk. b) The whole hour yesterday he was trying a shot at a hawk sitting behind a bush. 4. a) Among the men who for two hours had been sitting and talking quietly a quarrel broke out. b) The men were sitting and talking quietly when I opened the door. 5. a) He said he'd been thinking about it for ages. b) I wondered what he was thinking about. 6. a) Both ladies had been living in this farming district for many years when the news came to them. b) When the news arrived both ladies were living in this farming district. 7. a) Rosalind put down the book she had been reading and turned to him. b) Rosalind was reading a book and didn't hear him enter. 8. a) The man laughed. It was Melville Stoner, the man of whom she had just been thinking. b) She was thinking of Melville Stoner when a telephone call interrupted her thoughts. 9. a) At last he changed the shorts and singlet in which he had been lying ever since he fell ill. b) The nurse suggested to him changing the shorts and singlet in which he was lying. 10. a) The storm that had for years been gathering in her also broke. Sobs arose out of her throat. b). Looking at her you couldn't but feel that a storm was gathering in her. Only you didn't know when it would break. 11. a) They were avoiding each other's eyes. Obviously they had been quarrelling. b) They were quarrelling loudly when their father stopped them. 12. a) Mr Smeeth adjusted his eyeglasses and then examined the slip of paper he had been carrying. b) I asked him what he was carrying in that bag. 13. a) How long had you been waiting for her when she appeared? b) When I approached the office I noticed some people who were obviously waiting for me. 14. a) Suddenly Mary came to herself and realized what she had been doing. b) When I saw the children teasing the cat I asked them why they were doing it. 15. a) She felt relieved when she at last told him what she had been hiding from him. b) I felt there was something which she was hiding from me. 16. To say of Goath that he had been drinking was to say nothing, for he was obviously always drinking, but this time he had plainly had more than usual. 17. A man who had been sitting behind the table had risen and was looking at Michael. 18. a) Scudder, who had been standing by a window, walked across to meet Mason. b) Scudder was standing by a window when Mason came into the room.

Exercise 6. Use *the Past Perfect Continuous* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. Muriel Fisher who (to sit down) beside the table (to rise) to her feet. 2. On an occasion she (to prefer) not to remember, when Shadox (to try) to persuade her to go to the University. 3. She (to drop) her eyes again and (to begin) to fumble with the brown paper parcel she (to carry). 4. One night a man who (to stay) a day or two in the boarding-house in St Asaph's Road (to say) to Denry: "Look here, mister. What will you take?" 5. Mr Justice Stapleton, who obviously (to

fidget) for some minutes, (to turn) a very red face on Gamble. 6. "How long Mrs Harwood (to receive) the threatening letters, sir?" "She (to start) getting them two or three months ago, I believe." 7. Frost's head (to go up) as if at a signal, and his whole body (to straighten) purposefully, and I (to realize) he merely (to coast) along until then, waiting for some such moment. 8. She (to see) you and your husband go up to the boat deck. You (to have) an argument about something. 9. Things (to go on) like this for ten years. From what I (to gather) later Kathy (to live) in Leicester with her housepainter. 10. The medical officer, who (to kneel) beside the dead man, now (to rise) and (to turn) to Saunders. His face (to be) very grave.

11. Mason (to sit down) at the table, (to twist) the stem of his cocktail glass in his fingers, (to glance up) at the door where Celinda Dail (to stand). 12. I (to think) with regret of the dinner I (to look forward to), with Regina tossing in unmeasured ingredients and herbs and wine and casually producing a gourmet feast. 13. You know your father wouldn't go out on deck in this weather It's probably someone from the second class or the steerage, someone who (to drink) too much. 14. Ruth's voice (to grow) severe and chilly. It (to seem) incredible that she just (to laugh). 15. I (to play) for several minutes before (to see) that Marcel was sitting at the same table. 16. She (to wonder) how long he (to work). 17. We (to smoke) in silence for some time when Ah-yen (to speak). 18. She (to cry) so much that her face was almost unrecognizably puffed up, all wet and shiny and hot to look at. 19. "No, thanks," I (to say). And then from a curiosity that (to grow) in me and that I couldn't resist, "That book – Golden Dreams," I (to say), "you seem to think it a very wonderful work?" 20. But the neighbours, who always know everything, (to tell) me he and Kathy (to live) together for the last six years. 21. After all, Scotland Yard (to wait) six years to break up this gang. 22. He (to open) his bag and (to take) out a wad of notes as thick as that! He (to draw) on his bank! I (to trail) him up to London.

23. We (to conclude) that the murderer (to carry) a heavy burden on his way from the tent.

24. "All right, Goath," (to say) Mr Smeeth, who (to jot) down some figures for the last minute or two. 25. It (to be) a strange and significant move in a game the nature of which Muriel herself only half-(to understand) and which it now (to seem) to her that she (to play) for some time.

26. Somewhere in the house a child (to weep) bitterly and a dog that (to sleep) by the stove (to arise) and (to yawn). 27. Suddenly the sun (to rise). Mary (to get up) from where she (to lie).

Exercise 7. Use *the Past Perfect Continuous* or *the Past Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. We (to ask) the girl in the reception desk at the motel if anyone (to ask) for us. 2. That (not to suit) her purpose at all. She (to have) her hooks out for Sabin before she (to work) there three weeks. 3. Why the girl (not to tell) us someone (to enquire) for us? 4. Julian (to produce) the

flowers, which he (to hide) behind his back, with the panache of a successful conjurer. 5. But he (to want) to marry Elaine? It was a dilemma that (to tear) him for some time. 6. Perhaps they (to meet) each other secretly ever since Julian had brought her back from New York. 7. Willson (to push) a button on his bedside table and the silent secretary (to appear) from wherever he (to hide). 8. Richard Waid, who (to stand) in the door near the hallway in which the telephone (to be located) (to come) striding into the room. 9. She (to read) her script for half an hour when the bell (to ring). She (to be sure) it (to be) Frederick. 10. He (to look) at me with glassy eyes. It (to be) plain that he (to drink) all the afternoon. 11. When Louise Trunnion (to come) out of the front door of her house she still (to wear) the gingham dress in which she (to wash) dishes.

12. When I (to sit) there for five or ten minutes I (to see) Mahony's gray suit approaching. 13. It was not till they (to get back) to the untidy rooms at the hotel where the Christophers (to stay) until the previous day, that Billy (to tell) her of the suicide notes. 14. And in six months he (to find) himself forced to this final humiliation. The passion for liquor (to gain) on him, he (to be) often heavy with drink, and he (to do) his work badly. 15. "What do you think it is, Chief?" "It looks," he told her, "as though someone (to tap) Fremont Sabin's telephone". 16. She (to see) that he (to wait) impatiently. He (to be) nervous and eager. 17. Suddenly he (to turn) to her, interrupting her in the middle of a sentence, so that she could not but see that he (not to listen), and his face (to be) chalk white. 18. When Michael joined the company Julia (to play) in Middlepool for a year. 19. She only half (to believe) all she (to say), but it (to excite) her to discuss a plan that would bring her into a close and constant relation with Michael. 20. Lily (to sleep) for an hour or two when something (to disturb) her sleep. She (to cough) and (to open) her eyes. 21. He (to sleep) in his pants and shirt, which (to be) very wrinkled now. 22. We (to stay) there only for a week but still (to manage) to see a lot. 23. He was just finishing a history of the family or something, which he (to work) on for the last year, and (not to stir) much from the library. 24. Ever since she (to come) home she (to try) to think; but her mind was a blank, and she could not collect her thoughts. 25. George Willard had set forth upon an adventure. All day he (to try) to make up his mind to go through with the adventure and now he was acting. In the office of the Winesburg Eagle he (to sit) since six o'clock trying to think. 26. Billy (to talk) of suicide notes, she now (to remember), before the doctor (to come). 27. From the next room, where the baby (to sleep), (to come) the sound of his wailing. 28. Women! George Packington shook his head. The scrapes that girl's brothers (to get into) lately. Well, he's been glad to help.

Exercise 8. Use *the Past Perfect Continuous* or *the Past Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. There were the customers, too. I (to dread) them the most of all, having to face them, one after

another; when I counted the notes, my hands (to shake). 2. Because she (not to anticipate) anything of the sort, romance sneaked up on her and caught her unawares. 3. She and I had been to a matinee of Frilby, and (to have) tea at Lyons', which is exactly opposite Mathis' Vienna café in Regent Street. 4. They caught her red-handed with the forty-one caliber shells and stuff she (to burn) in the fireplace. 5. Sergeant Holcomb (to work) hand and glove with them, you know. 6. He noticed their companions had opened the opposite door and (to climb) out on to the permanent way. 7. Once or twice I thought that possibly Great-grandfather felt so happy because he (to drink). 8. He lifted the receiver as he(to speak), and (to enquire) why they (to ring) a few seconds ago. 9. On a Saturday afternoon in January, Rogers (to sit) in his room in Lambeth, when a slight noise at the front door (to catch) his ear. 10. One evening he found her not as usual lying on the sofa, but at the window, standing. She evidently (to wait) for his return. 11. She broke out into a peal of laughter and glanced at her husband whose admiring and happy eyes (to wander) from her dress to her face and hair. 12. Michael and Roger had gone to bed, but supper (to wait) for them in the dining-room. 13. She figured he (to take) her for a ride. 14. He (to follow) her with his eyes and their glances met. 15. Brush turned scarlet. Jessie Mayhew (to place) his cereal and coffee before him. 16. Holding my head up suddenly I noticed a man I hadn't seen before. Tears (to run) down his cheeks. 17. It also seemed to Annabel that he (to wait) for her to wake up to ask her for money. 18. I hoped Arnold (not to make) his confession to Francis. 19. She felt that Frederick (to test) her to see what she would be. 20. Then Lawson knew what he (to try) to find out so long it was Miller. 21. In a moment he (to talk) with the girl he had tried to rescue four years ago. 22. He turned quickly and she saw that he (to look) at it [the bundle]. 23. I heard very distinctly the gentleman who (to sit) beside the lady of the ruptured sunshine using quite unjustifiable threats. 24. I pushed quickly into the room catching a glimpse of Arnold who (to stand) on the stairs with Francis behind him a little lower down.

25. We know that she came from the east because she to visit) a sick grandchild. 26. I awaited the appearance of the bandsman with some shame, hoping that he would not discover that I (to meddle) childishly with his instrument. 27. It (to rain). It (to rain) for three days now.

Exercise 9. Use *the Past Perfect Continuous* or *the Past Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. The Princess (to paint) half an hour. Now she stopped and stared at him a moment. 2. She (to paint) when she (to hear) somebody calling her. 3. I (to wonder) if a friend of mine (to stay) here lately. 4. Just when he (to wish) for it she had come to him of her own accord. Perhaps her thought (to run) with his. 5. Possibly she had perceived that in her initial longing to escape Tarleton's provincialism she (to walk) alone, following a generation which was doomed to have

no successors. 6. She (to tease) her grandmother about Colonel Toxton ever since the old gentleman had asked her to tea with him. 7. But my eyes fell on a calabash that hung against the wall over the table. I (to hunt) for an old one and this was better than any I had seen outside the museum. 8. A few mornings later I (to walk) up St Ann's Well Road delivering letters. 9. But it seemed to Patrolman Richard Genero that it (to rain) forever. 10. She (to walk) the floor with Baby Angela for an hour before the police arrived. 11. I (to play) tennis with him and when we were tired he suggested a cup of tea. 12. For once, she agreed with Jean McCabe: the young today (to get) out of hand and it was time something was done. 13. He (to talk) aloud to himself about the problem for a week now and was unable to stop. 14. They (to travel) through the forest for nearly twelve hours. They (to go) west, but news of soldiers met them there and they had turned east. 15. The team he (to work) with a wages hi-jack north of Peterborough had just brought in a result. 16. He could not bear the thought that during the whole time Clare (to regard) him with her critical eye. 17. Katherine closed the book in which she (to write) with a practiced sigh. 18. If you (to pay) proper attention to your duties, nobody could have sneaked up and cut that lead. 19. I just ran out of the house late last night, we (to quarrel) for hours and hours and I couldn't stand it any more. 20."Has it occurred to you," Mason asked, "that this theory you're outlining presupposes that Mrs Moar (to plan) deliberately her husband's death for some time?" 21. That letter she had written at dead of night, and stolen down to post, it was the one I (to wait) for all these days! 22. She had let her emotion run away with her; she (to feel), not acting. Again a cold shiver ran down her spine. 23. Then she looked up at the fishing-boat picture on the wall. I (to wait) for this, wondered what she'd say when she did 24. Someone had seized her and (to rub) her face with snow. 25. The sheriff went to quite a bit of trouble trying to get something out of the ashes, but about all he could tell was she (to burn) paper.

Exercise 10. Use *the Past Perfect Continuous* of the verbs in the box.

hide, go out, try, dream, congratulate, wonder, keep, joke, eat, hesitate, wear, sell, wonder, suffer, do, look, weigh, bicker, anticipate, walk, talk, towel, plunge, think, take, conceal, lose, rent, yearn, weigh, follow, stand, wait

1. I explained that I , that I really was puzzled. 2. I realized sadly that I too much good country food. 3. Cecil whether he should despise the villas or despise Sir Harry for despising them. 4. I swung the ship in a sharp turn back onto the course which we 5. Kathleen bolt upright with her hands to her heart, as though its beating were intolerable. 6. Two Italians by the loggia about a debt. 7. He explained that he from this phobia for over a year. 8. Turgis for this moment for some time. 9. This morning he told me that he about the mountains of

Nebraska.10. All day he to discover what Lamon had told the President. 11. He slipped the passport into the outer pocket of the cloak he 12. He actually bought a copy of the paper from the ancient Negro who newspapers at the corner. 13. He himself for the last half-hour what could have become of them. 14. "Of course he didn't do it," said Caroline, who silent with great difficulty. 15. I myself during the last few months on the completeness with which I had let him go. 16. I with Susan about a month now. 17. For years he this knowledge, just as he had always pretended that he enjoyed nothing so much as his family life. 18. The pounds sterling she flourished were quite enough to compensate the people who her house. 19. She for him to speak, he's sure of it. 20. He anything but run in a straight line. 21. I after Tom ever since he'd landed at Sheremetyevo Airport two days before. 22. What on Friston's mind for some time was retirement. 23. He his cold pin-points of eyes into Ashurst's and the refinement of the Welsh. 24. They along, side by side, their heads close together, and she very earnestly. 25. While they were driving he (not) notice – never did. 26. For some time his countenance the florid tinge lent it by the wine. 27. The man who his head went over to the rail and cleared his throat in a loud hawk. 28. Martha, who of him during the last half hour with suppressed resentment, found herself now going towards him. 29. The chaplain peered down at a slip of paper he concealing in his hand all the while. 30. He did precisely what I – he proposed to double our already extravagant stakes.

Exercise 11. Use *the Past Perfect Continuous* of the verbs in the box.

listen, stare, suffer, have, haunt, scrape, cry, wear, blow, swarm, kneel, run, stare, grind, analyse, turn, compare, run, scheme, stand, ferment, take, live, ask, blackmail, say, do, wander, tear, warm, drink, suffer, endeavor

1. Meanwhile a woman who on the porch of the schoolhouse went inside and whispered in Katharine's ear. 2. Mr Shave poured forth words that in him for months. 3. He saw him plain enough. Perhaps he a stroll when Mrs Kendal looked. 4. "No idea you among us incognito, M. Poirot," he said. 5. The porter, handing the key to me, said that a lady for me . 6. A week before, he just the same things as Mr Sims. 7. She steadfastly refused to give me the name of the scoundrel who her. 8. He seemed to think she some very good work. 9. For several hours he distractedly through the streets of New York. 10. But did he want to marry Elaine? It was a dilemma that him for some time. 11. The doctor turned away from the fire, where he his hands. 12. I sprang up, angrily, at his words. This, then, was the paltry trick he to play upon me. 13. Just when he was wishing for it she had come to him of her own accord. Perhaps her thought with his. 14. While he had been full of memories of their secret

life together she him in her mind with another. 15. In her hands she was holding a pair of stockings, which she evidently inside out in readiness to put on. 16. Since breakfast, the ladies the previous night's ball. 17. I told her she her teeth in her sleep. 18. In two places the canvas had come away from the ground, and the wind freely through the interior. 19. I observed her more closely than I had done therefore. It was clear that she 20. She believed he too much of Mr Weston's good wine. 21. The dream, which him so long, was still more real than this sudden actuality. 22. Your wife was convinced you affairs ever since you married her. 23. The silver wig came away. He'd forgotten he it. 24. The paper went on to say that Lord Mountdrago for some weeks from the effects of overwork. 25. Mr O'Connor who moodily into the fire, called out suddenly. 26. She shook herself free and looked about to see whether anyone 27. They about something and they were so mad they would hardly talk to each other. 28. In a moment the A.D.C. who by her side rose. 29. I noticed that she was breathing hard, as if she 30. For many hours the immediate vicinity of the low frame work literally with rats. 31. Phaethon, who for some time to kiss Persephone, had just succeeded. 32. I realized with a shock something that me in the face.

Exercise 12. Translate the following sentences into English using *the Past Perfect Continuous* where necessary.

1. ბებია ერთი საათი ეძებდა თავის სათვალეს, როდესაც გაახსენდა, რომ ჩანთაში ჰქონდა. 2. დისერტაციაზე სამი წლის მანძილზე ემუშაობდი, სანამ დავიცავდი. 3. მას ნახევარი საათი ველოდებოდით ავტობუსის გაჩერებაზე, როდესაც გამოჩნდა. 4. ანა ჭურჭელს ერთი საათი რეცხავდა, როდესაც მათთან მივედი. 5. როდესაც სახლში მივედი, ჩემი ეაჟი უკვე ორი საათი კომპიუტერთან იჯდა. 6. ის ამ პრობლემაზე უკვე რამდენიმე დღე მუშობდა, როდესაც ახალი იდეა დაებადა. 7. სანამ ბებიას ჩაძინებოდა, იგი 2 საათის მანძილზე უყურებდა ტელევიზორს. 8. ორი წელი ვემზადებოდი მისაღები გამოცდებისთვის, როდესაც, როგორც იქნა, ჩავირიცხე. 9. როდესაც სახლში მივედი, ჩემს პატარა ბავშვს უკვე ერთი საათი ეძინა. 10. რამდენ ხანს ხედებოდით ერთმანეთს, სანამ დაქორწინდებოდით? 11. ბავშვები გაოფლიანებულები იყვნენ – ფეხბურთს თამაშობდნენ. 12. ნელი სამი საათის მანძილზე კითხულობდა წიგნს, როდესაც დედამ უთხრა, რომ გვიანი იყო და დაეძინა. 13. სანამ პატარა ნიკოს ჩაეძინებოდა, დედა მას ნახევარი საათი უკითხავდა ზღაპრებს. 14. როდესაც ოფისში დავიწყე მუშაობა, ჩემი მომავალი ქმარი იქ უკვე სამი წელი მუშაობდა. 15. როდესაც ზარი გაიგონა, ნელი წამოდგა სავარძლიდან, რომელშიც იჯდა.
16. კრების თავმჯდომარე შეეცადა, რომ გაეჩერებინა მისტერ ბრაუნი, რომელიც

უკვე 15 წუთი ლაპარაკობდა. 17. ჩვენ ძალიან დასველებულები ვიყავით სახლში რომ მოვედით, რადგან წვიმაში მოვყვეით. 18. რამდენი ხანი ელოდებოდი ნიკოს, როდესაც ის გამოჩნდა? 19. მხოლოდ მას შემდეგ, რაც ნახევარი გზა გაეიარეთ, მივხვდი, რომ საწინააღმდეგო მხარეს მივდიოდით. 20. ოთახში თამბაქოს სუნი იდგა. ჩემი ვაჟი ისევ სიგარეტს ეწეოდა. 21. მერი მთელი კვირა ნიკოს წინადადებაზე ფიქრობდა, სანამ დათანხმდებოდა მის ცოლობაზე. 22. როდესაც სახლში შეეედი, ყველაფერი გადატრიალებული იყო – ვიღაცა ჩემს ოქროულობას ეძებდა. 23. როდესაც ხორცი გაეისინჯე, ის ჯერ კიდევ უმი იყო, მიუხედავად იმისა, რომ უკვე ორი საათის მანძილზე იხარშებოდა. 24. დედას ხელები ფქვილში ჰქონდა – ცომს ზელდა. 25. სამზარეულოში თევზის სუნი იდგა. დედა თევზს წეაედა. 26. უკვე შვიდი საათი იყო და ის არ ჩანდა. ჩვენ მას ხუთი საათიდან ველოდებოდით. 27. თითქმის ორი საათი მგზავრობდნენ მატარებლით, როდესაც კუპეში მეოთხე მგზაერი შემოვიდა. 28. რატომ იცინოდით, როდესაც ოთახში შემოეედი? ნიკო თაეის ანეკდოტებს გიყვებოდათ? 29. ჩვენ ზღვაში ნახევარი საათი ებანაობდით, როდესაც დელფინები გამოჩნდნენ. 30. როდესაც კარზე კაკუნი მოესმა, მან გადადო გვერდზე წიგნი, რომელსაც კითხულობდა, და კარებისკენ წაეიდა.

Exercize 13. Translate the following sentences into English using the verbs in *the Past Indefinite*, *Past Continuous* or *Past Perfect Continuous* where necessary.

1. ა) როდესაც მასთან მიეედი, ის ტელევიზორს უყურებდა.

ბ) ის ტელევიზორს დილიდან უყურებდა და საუზმეც არ გახსენებია.

2. ა) როდესაც გარეთ გაეედი, წვიმდა და ქარიც ქროდა. საშინელი ამინდი იყო.

ბ) დიდი ხანი წვიმდა. გარეთ რომ გაეედი, ქუჩები წყლით (გუბეებით) იყო დაფარული.

3. ა) როდესაც მას შეეხდი, მივხვდი, რომ ნამტირალევი იყო. მან არაფერი არ მითხრა და არც მე დაეეკითხე.

ბ) როდესაც მასთან მიეედი, ის ტიროდა. წერილი მიეღო და ცუდი ამბავი გაეგო ერთ-ერთ ნათესავზე.

4. ა) ანამ არც კი შემომხედა. ვიღაცას ელაპარაკა მასთან. მან ყველაფერი უკვე იცოდა.

ბ) რაზე ელაპარაკებოდი პეტრეს, როდესაც ქუჩაში გნახე?

5. ა) ბაკურიანში რომ ჩაეედით, თოვდა.

ბ) ბაკურიანში რომ ჩაეედით, უკვე ერთი კვირა თოვდა.

6. ა) სახლში რომ მიველი, დედა სადილს ამზადებდა და ჩემთვის არ ეცალა.

ბ) სახლში რომ მიველი, დედა უკვე ორი საათის მანძილზე სადილს ამზადებდა და მითხრა, რომ სუფრას მალე გაშლიდა.

7. ა) ჩემი წიგნები არეული იყო. ეტყობა, ვიღაცა საბუთებს ან ფულს ეძებდა.

ბ) როდესაც მასთან მივედი, ის გამწარებული რაღაცა საბუთს ეძებდა ჩანთასა და წიგნებში.

8. ა) რატომ არ უსმენდი ლექციას? როდესაც შეგხედე, შენ რაღაც ჟურნალს ათვალიერებდი.

ბ) სანამ ის განცხადებას იპოვიდა, რამდენიმე საათი ჟურნალებს ათვალიერებდა.

9. ა) ნიკო სტადიონიდან რომ მოვიდა, უცებ დაწვა. ძალიან ბევრი ვვარჯიშა და დაღლილი იყო.

ბ) ნიკო სტადიონზე იყო. იგი ვარჯიშობდა, შეჯიბრებისთვის ემზადებოდა.

10 ა) რამდენ ფულს შოულობდა მამაშენი ყოველთვიურად მთელი წლის განმავლობაში, სანამ პენსიაზე გავიდოდა?

ბ) სანამ სხვა სამსახურში გადავიდოდი, იანვრიდან სექტემბრამდე ათას დოლარს ვიღებდი თვეში.

11. ა) ავტობუსს თითქმის ნახევარი საათი ველოდებოდი, მოთმინების ფიალა ამევსო და გადავწყვიტე, ფეხით წავსულიყავი სამსახურში. ძალიან მომეწონა და ამიერიდან ალბათ ფეხით ვივლი.

ბ) გუშინ ფეხით სამსახურში მივდიოდი, როდესაც მეგობრებმა შემამჩნიეს და მანქანა გამიჩერეს.

12. ა) ის ისეთ რაღაცეებს მიყვებოდა, რაც სინამდვილისგან ძალიან შორს იყო. ალბათ რაღაცეები ესიზმრებოდა.

ბ) ნიკოს ანა ესიზმრებოდა და სიზმარში კოცნიდა, როდესაც ტელეფონის ზარმა გამოაღვიძა.

13. ა) სანამ წვიმა დაიწყებოდა, რამდენი ხანი ცურავდი?

ბ) როდესაც პლიაჟზე მივედი, ნიკო და ნელი ბანაობდნენ, სხვები კი ნაპირზე იწვნენ.

14. ა) ის უკვე სამი თვე უჩიოდა უძილობას, ამიტომ ექიმს მიმართა.

ბ) როდესაც ანის დედას ვესაუბრე, ის უძილობას უჩიოდა.

15. ა) მეგობრებს უკვე ორი კვირის დაწყებული ჰქონდათ ყურძნის კრეფა, როდესაც ძლიერმა სეტყვამ მათ მოსავალი გაუფუჭა.

ბ) ყველა სტუმარი ვენახში იყო გასული. ისინი მასპინძელს ყურძნის კრეფაში

ეხმარებოდნენ.

16. ა) დედამ მითხრა, ბაეშვს მხოლოდ ახლა ჩაეძინა, რადგან გვერდით ბინაში სტუმრები ძალიან ხმაურობდნენო.

ბ) გვერდით ბინაში ისე ხმამაღლა ხმაურობდნენ და მღეროდნენ, რომ კედელზე დავუკაკუნე.

17. ა) წუხელ მთელი ღამე თოვდა და მამა სახლის სახურავზე ავიდა, რომ თოვლისგან ჩამოეწმინდა.

ბ) ხეები და სახლები სულ თეთრ სამოსში იყო. მოუთოვია.

18. ა) ეს მსახიობი უკვე 40 წელი მუშაობდა თეატრში და ხელმძღვანელობამ გადაწყვიტა მისთვის იუბილე გადაეხადა.

ბ) ნიკოს მამა რეჟისორია. შარშან ამ დროს ის მოსკოვში ერთ-ერთ თეატრში მუშაობდა და ნოდარ დუმბაძის პიესას დგამდა.

19. ა) მათ გზა აებნათ და რამდენიმე საათი ტყეში უიმედოდ დახეტიალობდნენ, როცა მონადირე გადაეყარათ.

ბ) ჩვენ ტყეში სოკოებს ვაგროვებდით, როდესაც ორი ციყვი დაეინახეთ. ციყვები ხეზე ისხდნენ და გაკვირვებით გვიყურებდნენ.

Exercize 14. Translate the following sentences into English using the verbs in *the Past Indefinite*, *Past Continuous* or *Past Perfect Continuous* where necessary.

1. ა) რამდენი ხანი სწავლობდი ინგლისურს, სანამ ინსტიტუტში შეხვიდოდი?

ბ) ჩემს შვილს მათემატიკა ეხერხება. გუშინ მთელი დღე სახლში იჯდა და მათემატიკის ამოცანებს ხსნიდა.

2. ა) ჯორჯის ოჯახი ძლივს ირჩენდა თავს, როდესაც მათ ბედმა გაუღიმა და ჯორჯმა კარგად ანაზღაურებადი სამსახური იშოვა.

ბ) სად მუშაობდა მამათქვენი, როდესაც დედათქვენი გაიცნო?

3. ა) ვის ელაპარაკებოდი ასე გაცხარებულად ქუჩაში? რომ გაგიარე, შენ არც კი შემამჩნიე.

ბ) სოფელში ჩასვლამდე ისინი ორი საათი ავტობუსში ლაპარაკობდნენ.

4. ა) ნიკო წამლებს მთელი კვირა ღებულობდა, სანამ სიცხე დაუკლებდა და ხველებას მიუტოვებდა.

ბ) რა წამალს ღებულობდი გასულ თვეს, როდესაც გაციებული იყავი? ახლა მე ვარ გაციებული და მინდა მეც ის წამლები დავლიო.

5. ა) ანა და ნიკო ერთმანეთს ორი წელი ხვდებოდნენ, სანამ გადაწყვეტდნენ დაქორწინებას. ამ დროის განმავლობაში მათ უფრო ახლოს გაიცნეს

ერთმანეთი.

ბ) ანა ნიკოსთან პაემანზე უკვე დაგიოდა, როდესაც მათი სასიყვარულო რომანის შესახებ ანას მამამ შეიტყო და შვილს ნიკოსთან შეხვედრა აუკრძალა.

6. ა) მან სათვალე გაისწორა და კიდევ ერთხელ გადაიკითხა ქაღალდი, რომელიც მოჰქონდა.

ბ) გუშინ დეიდა მერის ჩანთით ხილი მოჰქონდა ბაზრიდან. ჩანთა უცებ გამოვართვი და ვკითხე: ასეთი მძიმე რა მოგაქვს - მეთქი?.

7. ა) გასულ კვირას შემთხვევით გადავაწყდი წიგნს, რომელსაც ასე დიდხანს ვეძებდი.

ბ) რა წიგნს ეძებდი ოპერის წინ მდებარე წიგნის მაღაზიაში?

8. ა) მათ ერთი კვირის დაწყებული ჰქონდათ ფარეხის აშენება, როდესაც ქალაქის მერიის წარმომადგენელი მოვიდა და უთხრა, რომ ამ ადგილას ფარეხის აშენება არ შეიძლებოდა.

ბ) შარშან მთელი წელი ჩვენ სოფელში სახლს ვაშენებდით.

9. ა) ყველა ოდნავ გადაკრულში იყო, კახურ ღვინოს სვამდნენ.

ბ) როდესაც ისინი ბარში დავინახე, ლუდს სვამდნენ.

10. ა) ის უკვე სამი წელი მუშაობდა გამომძიებლად, როდესაც გადაწყვიტა პროფესიის შეცვლა.

ბ) სად მუშაობდა მისტერ სმიტი იმ დროს?

11. ა) ბიჭი დიდხანს უგონოდ იწვა მიტოვებულ ქუჩაში, სანამ პოლიციელმა შეამჩნია და სასწრაფო გამოიძახა.

ბ) ორიდან სამამდე ის თავის ოთახში იწვა და წიგნს კითხულობდა.

12. ა) მე უკვე ერთი თვე ვიცავდი დიეტას, როცა მათ ვესტუმრე, თავი ვერ შევიკავე და გემრიელი ტორტი მივირთვი.

ბ) შარშან მთელი ზაფხული დიეტას ვიცავდი.

13. ა) დეიდაჩემს სულ მოჩვენებები ჰქონდა, ყველგან სულები ელანდებოდა. ალბათ, ედგარ პოს წიგნებს კითხულობდა.

ბ) პატარაობისას ჩემი უმცროსი და ნამდვილი წიგნის ჭია იყო. ბავშვობაში სულ სახლში იჯდა და მთელი დღე წიგნებს კითხულობდა.

14. ა) სამზარეულოში რომ შევედით, მივხედით, რომ გოგონას სტუმრებთან ერთად ყავა დაელია.

ბ) სამზარეულოში რომ შეველით, გოგონა და მისი მეგობრები ყავას სვამდნენ.

15. ა) ეს იდეა უფრო მიმზიდველი ჩანდა, ვიდრე ის, რომელზეც ვფიქრობდი ერთი წუთის წინ.

ბ) ის ფანჯარასთან იჯდა და რაღაცაზე ფიქრობდა. არ დაეუბნე, რათა ხელი არ შეუშალა.

16. ა) ის ადგა, ბინაში გაიარ-გამოიარა, კარი და ფანჯრები შეამოწმა და დაბრუნდა ისევ იქ, სადაც იჯდა.

ბ) როდესაც შეუვედი, ჯონა ფანჯარასთან იჯდა და ქუჩაში იყურებოდა.

17. ა) მან გვერდზე გადადო გაზეთი, რომელსაც კითხულობდა და გამიღიმა.

ბ) რომელ ჟურნალს ათვალიერებდი გუშინ, როდესაც შენთან მოვედი?

18. ა) ჯონა, რომელიც რამდენიმე წუთის წინ ტიროდა, ახლა მხიარულად იცინოდა.

ბ) გუშინ მთელი ერთი საათის განმავლობაში ბაეშვი ტიროდა და დედას კითხულობდა.

19. ა) მარტა, რომელიც ფიქრობდა მასზე უკანასკნელი ერთი თვის განმავლობაში, იმდენად გადაიღალა, რომ ირგვლივ არავის ამჩნევდა.

ბ) მთელი წლის განმავლობაში ის მხოლოდ ანაზე ოცნებობდა.

The Future Perfect Continuous Tense

The Future Perfect Continuous is formed by means of the auxiliary ***"to be"*** in the Future Perfect and Participle I of the notional verb.

Affirmative		Interrogative			Negative	
I	shall have been working	Shall	I	have been working?	I shall not (shan't)	have been working
You He She It	will have been working	Will	you he she it	have been working?	You will not (won't) He (she, it) will not (won't)	
We	shall have been working	Shall	we	have been working?	We shall not (shan't) You will not (won't)	
You They	will have been working	Will	you they	have been working?	They will not (won't)	

The Future Perfect Continuous is very rarely used. It denotes actions, which begin before a certain moment of time in the future and go on up to that moment or into it. In other words, the

Future Perfect Continuous denotes an action which will begin before a definite moment in the future, will continue up to that moment and will be going on at that moment.

Tomorrow it will have been snowing for a week.

In two months I shall have been learning German for a year.

Exercise 1. Comment on the use of *the Future Perfect Continuous* in the following sentences.

1. "Are you drunk, woman?" he roared at her. – "She'll have been taking a little bit at the bottle to keep her strength up," tittered Grandma Brodie maliciously. "That's how she'll have been passing her time this morning." 2."I don't think the police are likely now to ask for an adjournment of the inquest tomorrow; but after Ronald's attitude, if they have by any remote chance got something up their sleeves for us, they'll have been keeping darker than ever."[1]

Exercise 2. Use *the Future Perfect Continuous* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. Ann (to play) the piano for four hours by the time her mother comes home. 2. She (to wait) there for half an hour when he comes. 3. In ten minutes I (to clean) the flat for exactly three hours. 4. When I finished they (to write) their test for two hours. 5. Tomorrow it will be ten days as I (to read) this book. 6. When I begin working in this office my friend (to work) there for three years. 7. When you come back to our town they (to build) this bridge for four months.

8. On Monday my father (to fix) his car for a fortnight. 9. In five minutes the dean (to speak) about the discipline for an hour. 10. He (to write) his research for a year in September. 11. In ten minutes you (to lie) in the sun for two hours. 12. My son (to do) his lessons for three hours when I come home. 13. I (to teach) English at school for thirty years when I retire. 14. By next year they (to live) as refuges for fifteen years. 15. Mother (to cook) dinner for two hours when we come home. 16. They (to date) for some time before they get married. 17. How long you (to do) the flat when I come home today? 18. How long you (to read) for the exams before the exams start. 19. He is seriously ill. He (to lie in hospital) for quite a long time before he recovers.

20. He (to smoke) for ten years next spring. 21. The children (to run) in the yard for two hours soon. It's time to call them home. 22. She (to talk) over the phone for two hours soon. I want to use the phone. Shall I tell her about it? 23. My neighbours (to quarrel) loudly for two hours by eight o'clock. Why doesn't anybody stop them? 24. My daughter (to take) her private lessons in English for five years before she enters the University.

---

[1] A. Korsakov. The Use of Tenses in English. Lvov Univ. Press, 1969, p. 221.

Exercise 3. Use *the Future Perfect Continuous* or *the Present Indefinite* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. They (to play) football for an hour when my son (to join) them. 2. He (to train) in this kind of sport for three years before he (to take) part in the competition. 3. It (to rain) for the whole week tomorrow. 4. The refugees from Abkhazia (to live) in various parts of Georgia for twenty years when the government (to solve) their problem. 5. The students (to write) their tests for an hour when the bell (to ring). 6. How long your parents (to scold) you before you (to grow) reasonable? 7. How long he (to play) football in the local team before the trainer of the national team (to notice) him? 8. She (to read) up for her exam for more than three hours when her mother (to call) her for dinner. 9. I (to sleep) for ten hours when my alarm-clock (to wake) me up tomorrow morning. 10. We (to fly) non-stop for ten hours before we (to get) to New York. 11. How long we (to queue) up before we (to get) the tickets? 12. You (to wear) these shoes for a long time before they (to wear) out. 13. How long I (to look for) a job before I at last (to find) one? 14. I (to grow) my hair long before I (to plait) it. 15. You (to drink) this medicine long before you (to recover). 16. How long these trees (to grow) when they (to bear) fruit? 17. How long you (to idle) away your time before you (to get) down to work? 18. You (to save) money for three years when you (to buy) a car. 19. Mother (to boil) the meat for two hours before she (to serve) it. 20. You (to carouse) long before you (to settle) down to a decent life? 21. How long you (to build) your country house before you (to move) in. 22. The children (to watch) horror films the whole day tomorrow when their parents (to come) back home in the evening. 23. These women (to talk) their heads off for an hour when the bus brings them to their stop. 24. How long he (to sell) lottery tickets when he (to get) tired of it? 25. I don't know how long I (to listen) to these chatter-boxes before I (to lose) my patience. 26. How long you (to practise) the piano before you (to perform) the musical pieces on the stage? 27. How long these actors (to rehearse) the play when the stage-manager (to put) it on the stage? 28. The child (to cry) her eyes out for two hours when her mother (to come) back home.

Exercise 4. Translate into English the following sentences using the verbs in *the Future Perfect Continuous* where necessary.

1. მომავალი წლისათვის უკვე ოცი წელი გახდება, რაც ჩვენ ამ ქალაქში ვცხოვრობთ. 2. მომავალ კვირას ამ დროს უკვე ერთი წელი შესრულდება, რაც ის ამ წიგნზე მუშაობს. 3. შენ ხედები, რომ 15 სექტემბერს გახდება სამი თვე, რაც ამ მანქანას არემონტებ. 4. ჩვენ სამი საათი შეუსვენებლივ ვიფრენთ, სანამ მოსკოვში ჩავალთ? 5. მე ორი თვე ვიმუშავებ ჩემს საკურსო ნაშრომზე, სანამ მას დავიცავ. 6. ბავშვები ეზოში ითამაშებენ მთელი საღამო, სანამ მშობლები

She wasn't making a sound. Her eyes were shut. (Compound Nominal Predicate).

My novel was sold to a film company. (Passive Voice – a Simple Verbal Predicate).

Do you think we are allowed a drink? (Passive Voice – a Simple Verbal Predicate).

Sometimes it is difficult to differentiate between the constructions ***"to be + Participle II"*** as a simple predicate and as a compound nominal predicate.

I. We have the passive voice in the following cases:

a) when the action expressed by the construction is part of a succession of actions.

Later he sat in a voluptuous chair while he was shaved and his hair was trimmed.

I had one parish one year and then I wasn't defrocked but I was locked out of my church.

b) when the agent (the doer of the action) is indicated.

I was told by uncle Constantine to show you this.

c) when the passive sentence can be transformed into active.

Here's the number that was written on the pad. – Here's the number that he (somebody) has written (wrote) on the pad.

So you take what's offered you and be good. – So you take what people (we) offer you

d) when the verb is used in the continuous or the perfect form.

I've never been spoken to like this in all my life.

Seems he was being treated for depression.

e) when the verb is qualified by an adverbial modifier characterizing the action.

It just chanced that the citadel was built around the entrance.

It led to a tomb, which was rifled probably three thousand years ago.

f) when the verb is in the Future Tense or the Future-in-the-Past.

I'll be fired if anything goes wrong.

II. We have a compound nominal predicate in the following cases:

a) when Participle II denotes a mental state. Such participles are: ***surprised, astonished, shocked, frightened, alarmed, amazed, disappointed, distressed, vexed, irritated, scared, upset, paralysed, dazed, etc.***

I was puzzled when she came to me.

I'm frightened by the feelings that I have.

At the moment he is dazed by her grief.

b) when Participle II can be modified by such adverbs of degree as ***very, rather, too, so, quite, etc.***

I was touched by your strangeness. – I was very (quite, too) touched by your strangeness.

You are not revolted by the nature of my profession? – You are not very (so, too) revolted by the nature of my profession?

c) when Participle II allows to be substituted by a synonymous or antonymous adjective.

My nerves are all shot to pieces. – My nerves are shaky.

The murderer was carried away by rage. – The murderer was furious.

d) when the verb ***"to be"*** can be substituted by other link-verbs such as ***seem, look, feel, become.***

He was upset by the news of Field's murder. – He became (looked) upset at the news of Field's murder.

e) when Participle II can be used as an attribute.

The face is too disfigured to recognize. - a disfigured face.

f) when the construction ***to be + Participle II (to be + Ved)*** can be transformed into the structure ***"be in the state of being Ved"*** as the latter is a genuine representation of a pure statal predicate.

I hear even Rosedale has been scared by talk lately " – I hear even Rosedale has been in the state of being scared

The house is equipped with them. – The house is in state of being equipped

I'm infinitely moved, Veedor." – I'm in the state of being moved

Exercise 1. Analyse the following sentences and delimitate *the passive voice* of the verb as simple verbal predicates from the compound nominal predicates. Apply the tests and criteria given above.

1. By strangers they *were* often *taken* for brothers. 2. "In there, in there", she whispered, pointing and pulling me to a mere cupboard under the stairs, where hats and coats *were hung*.

3. She was really a very unusual woman. I *was puzzled* when she came to me. 4. He *had been preoccupied* trying to bring to mind his Housemaster's name. 5. Constance, if Ben comes in, would you tell him I *was taken ill?* 6. Hay could see that she *was torn* between timidity and curiosity. 7. They *were drugged* while they were asleep. 8. You insult me by saying you *are fed* with me. 9. When tramps *were reported* in the Pastures of Heaven he never let the little girl out of his sight. 10. It's a small flat, really. It's already *furnished.* 11. We'll meet again if we're *fated* to meet it. 12. "I tried one of the shutters." "You did? But it *was fastened,* of course?"

13. You can't help being what you are where money *is concerned.* 14. I'll be all right in a minute. I'm just *bewildered* – by life. 15. She *was delighted* to see her father look comfortable. 16. The particles *were identified* as a woman's cosmetic. 17. The body *is crushed* and *burned.* Nobody can see it. 18. The flight *was delayed* for an hour, and we sat in the waiting-room.

19. Soames opened the drawing-room door. The room *was dusted,* the furniture *uncovered,* the curtains *drawn back* precisely as if his aunts still dwelt there patiently waiting. 20. Mackintosh

was suddenly *seized* with fear. 21. When the murder *was discovered* and he didn't come forward, I *was* terribly *upset*. 22. It is one of the most beautiful spots on the river, and *is surrounded* with numerous villas and pleasant gardens. 23. She acted in those theatricals – the charity matinee last spring, I *was* very much *struck*. 24. An appeal *was lodged* on the grounds of misdirection. The appeal *was rejected* and the man *was* duly *executed*. 25. Oh, the door's *locked*. Mama's gone out!

Exercise 2. Analyse the following sentences and delimitate *the passive voice* of the verb as simple verbal predicates from the compound nominal predicates. Apply the tests and criteria given above.

1. It *was suspected* that protein might be the only molecule with sufficient variety of structure to act as genetic material. 2. I told him I wouldn't go there. It's all *settled* now. 3. Poirot took a sheet of notepaper from his pocket. some words *were written* on it. 4. When the plane *was announced*, she got to her feet. 5. I *was dazed* at the prospect he held out to me. 6. A trap door on the road *was nailed down* very securely – did not appear to have been opened for years. 7. I say, this liquer's very nice. What *is* it *made* of? 8. Alan smiled, and Joseph saw in his eyes that the decision *was* already *made*. 9. She *was* much *given* to looking at him and the gravity of her eyes disturbed him. 10. Sunlight has quite unnecessary power. The carpet *is faded* far more than warrants. 11. As she entered the front hall the door *was* noisily *flung open* and Louie rushed in. 12. And so they are content to take whatever *is offered* them. 13. Most young people *are bored* by the past. 14. You *were concerned* that my morals somehow wouldn't get with yours. 15. The names *are pinned* on the dresses. Go in and get them. 16. Masha, we're *invited* to the director's at four o'clock today. 17. Well, now! We *are* completely *assembled*! 18. He said that everything *was arranged* and Mrs Sabin was to meet me in New York. 19. He played in a stupor. Eventually, Tommy *was moved* to ask, "Anything wrong?" 20. I *was horrified* at the cool, deliberate way he spoke. 21. She *had not been deceived* by Mrs Bart's words: she knew at once that they *were ruined*. 22. Alan began as soon as the study door *was closed*. 23. "Your jacket *is* torn." "My company jacket *is torn?*" "Where *is* it *torn?*" "Down the back." 24. You'll surely take a meal with us Tom? I'*ll be aggrieved* with refusal. 25. Well, remain then, since you are bent upon it. 26. The boy *is* just *broken up* over Skipper's death.

Exercise 3. Comment on the forms of *the Passive Voice*. Translate the sentences into Georgian.

1. Tom, Absalom Crowninshield, the rich buccaneer, died suddenly. It was announced in the papers. 2. I'll just imagine he had an operation. The horn was removed to make him feel less freakish! 3. Is your own conscience robust, may I ask? It has not been put very severely to the

test, I should think. 4. All right. All of Dotty's clothes have been taken out. I think we may as well leave now. 5. However, it is a detail, which has its deserved place in our relationship, and must not be overlooked or neglected. 6. By midnight the house was filled with singing and laughter and the thin churning gramophone music could be heard only in snatches. 7. Kelly Munger asked if Miss Ferenczi had been arrested, and Mrs Mantei said no, of course not. 8. I examined the room. So far as I could tell, nothing had been changed in it. 9. But the house had certainly been built by a millionaire and was said to be absolutely the last word in luxury.

10. Emma was obliged to ask what they had told her. 11. He's an ex-policeman, now a private investigator who's been retained by your wife for the last three years! 12. Come, come, Berhta. That's a thing I've not been accused of before. No one has ever called me selfish. 13. The few selections below are offered as a specimen page of a little book, which I have in course of preparation. 14. Ladies and gentlemen. Supper is now considered over. Start the dancing again. 15. There Lawson was greeted by several of his old friends. 16. "Mr Quin is vouched for by an expert," said his wife. 17. The big white sailing vessel was being discharged on the opposite quay. 18. She saw that her son would be against her unless he was told everything. 19. A hubbub of excited voices filled the room where the inquest was being held. 20. Wait, the day comes when you'll be punished. 21. It is surmised that one man alone could not have done it. 22. But I was told that there would be only ourselves. 23. I thought it was understood he was coming.

24. He was informed that Emily, his engaging daughter, had been up late at a dance and would not be down for breakfast. 25. He'd been left some money.

Exercise 4. Change the following sentences. Use *the Passive Voice*.

1. I tell you that confidently. 2. Does the hall-porter run the whole place? 3. As we leave, I give the good old man five shillings. 4. Your bravado deserts you. 5. People in Italy eat a lot of pasta. 6. Workers collect our rubbish twice a week. 7. Men hardly ever wear bowler hats. 8. They don't allow me to stay overnight in this country. 9. She always mends his things, cooks his meals and runs his house well and economically. 10. People generally think so. 11. If they beat him over the head, he never feels it. 12. When people treat me like that, it gets me down, I feel quite ill. 13. I don't want to go when nobody wants me. 14. All they need is to exchange the rings in some unsuspicious manner. 15. I'm afraid I don't know what you call it. 16. Does you radiator factory manufacture all the parts? 17. When you place me in the position of guardian I have to adopt a very high moral tone on all the subjects. 18. They find a packet of strychnine in Sir George's cabin. 19. She rearranges the covers around her waist. 20. She plumps up the pillow behind her back. 21. She vaguely remembers her former husband. 22. They hear a truck gearing down. 23. They drink coffee and juice and they eat English muffins. 24. Bee packs your things.

25. I give you the full benefit of the natural generosity of my nature. 26. I sponge the very existence of your surly communication of my memory – in short, Chief Inspector Theakstone, I forgive you. 27. Before we give up the notes for lost, we must make sure that he knows nothing about them. 28. That's how I look at it, in my old-fashioned way.

Exercise 5. Change the following sentences. Use the *the Active Voice*.

1. "This man is known as the Hairless Mexican." "Why is he called that?" 2. When you're asked to a party at Government House at Apia you'll notice that all the ladies are given a pillow-slip to put their – their lower extremities in. 3. She has an opportunity, which is offered to very few of us. 4. Our letters are seldom sent by airmail. 5. If arguments arise, patience and understanding are required on both sides. 6. But you're employed by me, aren't you? 7. In the old country they live in caves in the hills and the country's run by bandits. 8. But my army pay is supplemented by an allowance from my father. 9. The Prince of Wurttemberg is easily recognized by his deep bark. 10. Of course she is ostracized by all but a few of her own type of women in town.

11. When a man is aroused by an alarm clock, his first natural reflex is to turn off the alarm.

12. Say, listen, Finch, do I look like the sort of man who's bossed by his wife? 13. My dear Arthur, women are never disarmed by compliments. Men always are. 14. You are still hampered by your preconceived notion. 15. Whenever I do dine there I am always treated as a member of the family. 16. That is the way such things are discreetly handled to keep a young woman from making a tragic mistake! 17. It is expected of you and you must fail neither yourself nor the School. 18. The selections are chosen entirely at random. 19. I say go to hell. You're not wanted here. 20. The language of the gutter is understood anywhere that anyone ever fell in it. 21. I understand there's to be a little card party to which we ladies are cordially not invited. 22. A place like this is found only once in a lifetime. 23. My shirts are washed at a Chinese laundry. 24. Love letters seem sacred and tender when you read them, but when they are read in court, they sound simply ghastly.

Exercise 6. Change the following sentences. Use *the Passive Voice*.

1. They made their plans without consulting me. 2. He treated me to a long lecture on dog training. 3. I assured him my sense of responsibility to the community was alive and well. 4. He bought us all a treat, the children and me. 5. They ignored me entirely. 6. When Angela threw her fluffy duck out of her pram, he stooped and picked it up for her. 7. I made him a cup of tea with a shot of brandy in it. 8. I swept the broken glass off the sink unit. 9. I counted bones on Daddy's and K's coats and K gave me a whole shilling. 10. The Northern Union Insurance Company asked me to investigate the death of a Mr Maltravers. 11. He looked for a place to put

the whisky bottle while he rinsed the dirtied glass. 12. The poor little mite could hardly speak for crying, Mrs Ross told her husband later. 13. I visited their house often, to see Kara. 14. While he was gone, I scattered marbles all over the step. 15. They did not exchange glances. 16. I told them one or two yarns that's about all, I think. 17. You brought me to your room and gave me liquorice all sorts. 18. When he heard the key in the lock he set the door open wide so Mrs Fortescue must see him. 19. While I was dressing I heard the boat whistle. 20. I saw them come out. 21. Early that day, I took Helen and the children sailing. 22. I don't suppose he asked her out. 23. I never forgave her for not knowing, not understanding. 24. She got resentful when I didn't respond to treatment. 25. Louby's sawdust spilled all over my quilt. Mummy made me scrape it up with a soup spoon. 26. Mummy showed me the seams at the top of Louby's leg. 27. I pestered Mummy to make us more clothes.

Exercise 7. Change the following sentences. Use *the Active Voice*.

1. I had no idea that company was expected. 2. I was sent on this assignment. I didn't ask for it. 3. The cottage was pulled down when they began to quarry the rock here. 4. She was suddenly aroused from a doze by a loud explosion close by. 5. No further suggestions were put forward by the public. 6. Callers were all turned away. 7. The bell was answered and Ralph ordered the drinks. 8. The dead couple was identified as a Mr and Mrs Horatio Llewelyn. 9. On arrival at Carlisle the matter was put into the hands of the police. 10. She was buried nicely in her family plot. 11. Quite suddenly and out of the blue, I was presented with a totally unexpected moral issue. 12. That theory was confirmed by a study of the footprints. 13. He was met just outside the gate by a servant bringing him the news. 14. That was given her by the King of Bosnia. 15. She was interrupted by a knock at the door. 16. Why wasn't I notified? 17. When I was a very small boy I was made to learn by heart certain of the fables of La Fontaine. 18. He was considered to be an eccentric, a gadfly to the Japanese government. 19. The silence was broken by Susan Hay's little sister, Ailie.

Exercise 8. Supply *the passive voice* of the verbs in the box. Use *the Past Indefinite*.

give, haunt, whip up, hear, take, expect, pay, break, buy, publish, make, say, include, kill, substitute, force, ask, raise, found, bring up, send, spend, applaud, catch, clear up, quote, influence, condemn, elect

1. I suppose that's why we still call him Tifty – a nickname he when he was a child. 2. We always thought that place . Seen any ghosts yet? 3. The horse and the cab rattled off along the quay amid a chorus of laughter and adieus. 4. Do you remember that little statue I bought

you once as a present, that accidentally. 5. How much did Henry pay Wills for this? – It Even Henry couldn't buy it. 6. I will never forget one day the month that book 7. Our sandwiches usually of peanut butter, mayonnaise and piecalilli. 8. The picture which was just about the same pose and lighting. 9. The brandy down the man's throat. In a few seconds he opened his eyes. 10. The boy knocked on the door and who he was. 11. I in a convent. 12. She could hardly bear to open the parcel which to her. 13. Several years of my boyhood in the south of the country. 14. And then a strong voice in the hall below. 15. When no notice of him, with the same smile he passed on. 16. I didn't know you to dinner tonight. Mr Ackroyd didn't mention it. 17. He saw them cast surreptitious glances at his head, but not a word 18. Your name in the list. 19. When this confusion everyone took a deep breath. 20. She in every paper as saying "I do not believe it was suicide." 21. Do you remember your Crofts scholarship at Newnham? Well, that by my brother the M.P. 22. Edwin's mother died in childbirth, and Edwin by his grandfather. 23. Of course, I by my mother. Every man is when he is young. 24. In Winesburg no attention to Wash Williams and his hatred of his fellows. 25. Kathleen played a selection of Irish airs which generously. 26. After that Mrs Kearney's conduct on all hands. 27. Soon after his arrival Bert to the school board. 28. When a rabbit and she rushed in and tore it out of the grasp of the dogs.

Exercise 9. Supply *the passive voice* of the verbs in the box. Use *the Past Indefinite*.

eat up, evade, hear, take, give, chase, steal, break off, catch, shut out, replace, call, show in, take, save, search, invite, impress, lead, ignore, acquit, slam, plan, lend, hit, fire, take away, bring up, hear, meet

1. Quentin was very hungry and soon everything 2. Robert Hillard tried to catch the boy's eye, but his glance deliberately. 3. Presently a timid at the door. 4. Too much care with our education, I am afraid. 5. Don't you remember that a great dinner in your honour at the Club? 6. The door . in my face. 7. Nothing was accidental, everything in Sebastian's life. 8. Jim Hurst was once a thief. He in our house. I was sorry for him. 9. He from all family affairs. No one told him anything. 10. Not long after that I for writing a poem on the lid of a shoe-box. 11. He on the head with a bronze figure. 12. My father in the Greek Orthodox faith. 13. In 1946 that money to you by Joseph. 14. He got in a fight, he by policemen. 15. Your wife's jewels before you yourself left London and by paste duplicates. 16. The conversation by the arrival of other guests. 17. Her breath by the beauty, friendly rather than awe-inspiring, of the scene. 18. Madcap Bunnie Stratton? That's what she by the newspapers. 19. When he entered, Nox immediately by his size. 20. Mrs Appleton stood her

trial. She through the lack of evidence. 21. She raised her voice as she spoke; it all over the drawing-room. 22. "Mr Beebe!" said the maid and the new rector of Summer Street 23. Temperature twice a day in the ward. 24. For several years they had lived privately apart, but in public united, so that appearance ... 25. A footman took my hat and coat. I upstairs to an enormous drawing-room. 26. For week we , then with a blank refusal, and only finally got reluctant permission to view the evidence. 27. These coaches, as well as the van, thoroughly. 28. It was the night of the great ball at Nosham Taws. The whole neighborhood

Exercise 10. Supply *the passive voice* of the verbs in the box. Use *the Past Indefinite*.

recommend, write, believe, introduce, sell, shoot, fire, ask, read out, open, hear, feed, pup, serve, make, find, feel, shower, hold, announce, break, propound, publish, tell, sell, pay, see, occupy, give, throw

1. She highly to me. And by a Cabinet Minister too. 2. I want to have that picture. It to you. 3. Annie, you don't know what to that man. You don't know what happened. 4. If the shot then, why did everyone say it was earlier? 5. When he sees how lovely and sweet and pretty she is, he'll thank his lucky stars he to dinner. 6. We know what that end was because the letters in court. 7. Unfortunately all of his poems a long time ago. 8. Presently the door by a servant and Miss Glover 9. The silence by Susan's little sister. 10. A supertheory by Caroline later as we went up to bed. 11. I by the Press that the business associates of the "shot MP" might be of assistance. 12. I know he liked me the first moment we . 13. Her voice often in wordy warfare with me. 14. But even though he more snap than the rest of us he was a small lad. 15. It was a parting in which more was than said. 16. All the gifts of the gods on him. 17. From the reactions that the audience gave Stamp it was clear that he in high regard. 18. And your novel ever ? 19. On arrival at Carlisle the matter into the hands of the police. 20. It went assiduously on while lunch 21. I to say where this treasure 22. A great many amusing stories having reference to the whims of the patience. 23. Then where's the money if the place ? 24. If it [the chain] on Fifth Avenue I shouldn't be surprised to hear that anything up to thirty thousand for it. 25. He in the King's road about seven o'clock that same evening. 26. The rooms above mine by two people, a man and his wife, still very young. 27. This information, expressed in semi-formal sentences, to Donald by the Detective Inspector on Saturday afternoon. 28. A stone had caught him in the middle of the back. It by the little boy, who was pursuing them along the mule track.

Exercise 11. Supply *the passive voice* of the verbs in the box. Use *the Past Indefinite*.

expect, solve, hear, introduce, show, want, pay away, announce, pour, fill, strangle, eat, clear away, make, carry, give, see, say, hold, open, meet, conceal, extract, accuse, swear, follow, wake up, bring up, turn out, drink, conceal, search, sentence

1. I didn't know you to dinner tonight. 2. On inquiry for Miss Ackroyd, we into the billiard room. 3. It seems certain that these sums of money for some special purpose. 4. At that moment the door opened and Geoffrey Raymond 5. She was quite worn out, but she did what of her. 6. The moan of the sea no more. 7. At first glance it would seem that our problem 8. After coffee she to numerous good-looking young men who danced with conscious precision. 9. That telephone call at 10.15 last night from a public call box at King's Abbot Station. 10. Oliver gently in to a bed and more care and kindness that he had had in his life. 11. She in public only with Frederick. 12. They were husking corn and occasionally something and they laughed. 13. After the test Macedon at the station house until friends could arrange bail. 14. When he knocked at the door it for him by Horn. 15. Wherever the captain went, he or . by a group of people all with the same request. 16. The next morning he by someone kicking at the shop window. 17. I by two old aunts. 18. She by the clerk and took the witness stand. 19. Toasts from table to table, with many bows. 20. They took the hint. Plates , coffee and tea The meal began. 21. The man is innocent, Ann. Remember he falsely once and it put him through hell. 22. There is a Priests' hiding hole there – a movable panel by the fireplace. Tradition has it that Charles I there once. 23. The rope that was round her neck wasn't the rope that she with. 24. Then I noticed her teeth – she had buck teeth at that time which later! 25. The house easily. They went through the few outbuildings first and then turned their attention to the building itself. 26. Dinner came, and . A simple meal, mostly out of tins. 27. The contents of the suitcase on the floor. 28. He to a year's imprisonment for an inside burglary job.

Exercise 12. Supply *the passive voice* of the verbs in the box. Use *the Past Indefinite*.

talk, adjourn, serve, discover, help, register, reward, blame, write, seal, send, discuss, interrupt, lay, bring up, release, detain, cash, cut short, repay, neglect, put, arouse, flatter, reveal, intend, bestow, expel, forget, park, see, hear

1. All manner of solemn nonsense on the subject, but I believed none of it. 2. The last round of talks between the government and the SPLA last month. 3. The six other military policemen for acting on their own initiative. 4. The letter, however, , and , and

5. This topic very happily. 6. The conversation here 7. No meals after seven o'clock in the evening. 8. A small iron safe under the bed. 9. The fire in the fireplace. 10. My parents died when I was too young to remember them. I by my uncle and his wife. 11. A jailed dissident yesterday by the Chinese. 12. He by the police as being concerned in the disappearance of Captain Harwell. 13. How the checks ? 14. My father, I am sure, by nature to be a cheerful, kindly man. 15. I from sleep by the cry of fire. 16. He this attention and not little suspicions. 17. Miss Brown, the only person to be in his company after the truth , quite failed to get any change out of him. 18. I learnt as a boy to eat all that before me. 19. Mrs Ackroyd's eloquence as the drawing-room door opened once more.
20. My revered great-grandfather did so well of cotton that he with a peerage. 21. She had spared neither trouble not expense and this was how she 22. The work in the fields and weeds grew high in the corn. 23. The injured man to his feet. 24. She under the name of Edith Fortayne. 25. a removal van outside your front door early on Friday afternoon.
26. He was at school with me and he In his fifth year because he just couldn't grasp the ut consecutivum. 27. Nothing more or of the two men, and after a few days, the event
28. The honour on me a week before we sailed from Sydney.

Exercise 13. Change the following sentences. Use *the Passive Voice*.

1. Imagine wanting to live so much in the past that you'll pay men carpenters' wages to disfigure your front door. 2. If you call me that aloud, I'll bust your head open. 3. You will not find any bullet wounds on the body of Mr Maltravers. 4. "What is our plan of campaign?" I asked. "First I will call upon the doctor." 5. "The cook is a Giants fan," Chaddy said. "She'll give you even money that they win the pennant." 6. You talk against my husband and I'll twist you tongue out by the roots. 7. And I'll tell you another thing. 8. But I won't lend him my dogs. 9. "You will not train my animals," I said through gritted teeth. 10. You will probably think me very foolish, Monsieur Poirot. 11. You can rest assured that I will do all in my power to render the matter not too unpleasant for you. 12. Do as you're told and speak the truth, because if you don't, Number One will deal with you. 13. You will remember the disappointing outcome of the Dinglewood affair. 14. I will name the persons involved. 15. If you have anything to say in defence of your folly, I will hear it later. 16. Speak the truth, or they'll make things somewhat more unpleasant for you than they might otherwise be. 17. If I do not return tomorrow they will open the letter. 18. "Can this statement be proved?" "Certainly. I will prove it." 19. "Now, be quick; tell me what you know." "Will you spare me if I tell you?" 20. Ladies and gentlemen, I will not conceal from you the seriousness of the situation. 21. We will put this carrion in the cellar where it cannot harm us. 22. We'll leave you to look round here while we follow up these

footsteps. 23. If you ring, one of the maids will take you to him. 24. All Scotland Yard won't catch me for the killing! 25. Will you give me the name and address of Miss Crabtree's lawyer? 26. I don't think anybody will ever discover anything.

Exercise 14. Change the following sentences. Use *the Active Voice*.

1. If the tree is rotten it will be cut down and cast into the flames. 2. "You will be guided by me," said Parker Pyne firmly. "I will deal with your tormentors." 3. "Will he be caught, do you think?" 4. I don't promise you that it will be all plain sailing, but you won't be hanged for murder. 5. Your son will be taken from you at twelve o'clock noon tomorrow the twenty ninth. 6. I hope I won't be called on to stand too long here – I always feel shaky when I stand for long in one place. 7. You'll see, he'll be drugged on the train! 8. They will be driven off in the Youth Hostel bus within the next hour. 9. I am aware that by many I shall be held to blame for speaking in a manner so cursory. 10. I guess he'll be fired. I certainly hope so. 11. When a chronicler tells the exact truth, there is always a danger that he will not be believed. 12. No, I don't want to stop here. Ill be recognized. 13. That will be seen to. I have finished. 14. You will be spared all unpleasantness. 15. "Inquiries will be made," said the inspector. 16. But you cannot carry out political conspiracies in my house. I will be ruined. 17. Our hearts are heavy on this day, for you will most assuredly be missed by all of us. 18. But I must have a guarantee on my side that she will be received on equal terms by your family.

Exercise 15. Change the following sentences. Use *the Passive Voice*.

1. You're spoiling your own good time and you're spoiling everyone else's. 2. I'm not expecting him tonight, he's working. 3. "I'm chalking you up as a failure for Ashleigh," he said. "I never had much faith in you." 4. She is always washing or ironing or mending clothes. 5. He tells me he's buying another dog on Saturday. 6. So long as you're not helping me, then my conscience doesn't oblige me to help you either. 7. Meanwhile we're doing all we can. 8. We are now investigating a mysterious, violent death. 9. I'm admitting nothing. 10. I'm giving you a simple, formal caution. 11. You are holding back valuable information, misleading us. 12. We're searching, sir. If it's there, we'll find it. 13. I think you're making a mistake, sir. 14. Are you telling us that you love all bobbies? 15. You're making a quantum leap from a picture of an overloaded boat to the gold content of the Japanese treasury. 16. I'm talking of Scott. 17. You're fouling the nest, Jenks. 18. If you're talking about the man we'll call Wilkins, one, he's safe, in the black. 19. If you're telling me that I've been a part of setups, I'm saying you're crazy as hell. 20. Every day they are blackmailing and robbing ladies. 21. Is anybody watching you from the hotel? 22. We are treating the death of this pony like homicide, with searches and questions and

statements. 23. The subject does not know that they are observing him. 24. They are not referring to that incident. 25. They are always questioning him. 26. He is always doing this.

Exercise 16. Change the following sentences. Use the *Active Voice*.

1. Suppose we're all being directed from somewhere else by remote control? 2. Are you being attacked by a ghost in there? 3. I'll hear from him one of these days. Mean time I am being blackmailed again. 4. He puts me in a very curious situation. I am really being asked to be witness as well as judge. 5. The confectionery is being done over to make it the place that all the young people will come to. 6. I'm trying to solve the murder of Fremont C. Sabin. I'm being paid money by my clients for doing just that. 7. "I'm glad you could stop by, Henry," he said. "Where are the meetings being held today?" 8. "I know what is being made out of it. In your elegant way of life, I dare say this is an ordinary occurrence" 9. She'll probably decline to answer any question, because she's being held in the detention ward on the suspicion of murder. 10. "I thought parrots slept at night," Drake said. "They do. But when they're being dragged around the country in automobiles, they get nervous." 11. So I'm being used. Why not? Even a dead race horse is used to make glue. 12. No one who has money saved up in a bank can really be happy. All the money locked up here is being saved because people are afraid of a rainy day. 13. There are untold thousands of criminal foreigners in the British Government, a monstrous threat to our liberty. 14. I protest against the way in which my daughter, a young unmarried girl, is being dragged into this 15. There are times I feel I'm being choked to death – suffocated under piles of English blankets. 16. he's left clues which are being scientifically exposed right now. 17. To feel that your cherished idealist's soul is being gnawed out of you, and only irritation is left in place of it: well, it isn't good enough. 18. I'm being scratched from the Oxford Stakes at the end of the year.

Exercise 17. Change the following sentences. Use *the Passive Voice*.

1. I think that Lawrence felt that in watching our backgammon he was observing the progress of a mordant tragedy. 2. Two or three mornings later he was baling hay with the old woman's sorry baler. 3. I was thinking about them. 4. "I looked at him," said the clerk who was telling us this, "and I saw at once what he meant." 5. Peterson was helping you but he began to have second thoughts and you killed him. 6. We were playing another scenario but it fell through. 7. He was protecting me, I suppose. 8. Was there any chance they were tapping the conversation? 9. He was making a joke. 10. Was she mocking him? 11. And as Mr Graham was leaving the shop, I distinctly overheard the following words: "In all probability Bovey will die tonight." 12. They were discussing a matter of the utmost importance. 13. Traffic cops were preventing people

from making perfectly legal right turns. 14. She was staring at Eddie Mars. She liked him. 15. I was reading a number of books about murder at the time. 16. Marlie was running his business, with her talk about consumer education. 17. I was helping him down the stairs with the trunk. 18. After all, I was belittling one of the most important cases in his experience. 19. When I reached Mrs Auger's door a man was ringing the bell. 20. I was just in time; the Doctor was brushing his hat. 21. While we were holding this cheerful conversation I was leaning on an enormous wooden box in the outer cellar. 22. He was gripping the desk so tightly it rattled against the floor. 23. West was hardly playing the gracious host. 24. Odd, you see, he half-thought we were playing these threats on him. 25. As he was entertaining some of his friends that night, he hoped she would waive ceremony and join them.

Exercise 18. Change the following sentences. Use *the Active Voice*.

1. While the brutal story was being recounted, the prisoner had stood with closed eyes, leaning her hands upon the rail of the dock. 2. Calder was suddenly aware of the possibility that the conversation was being recorded. 3. I suddenly lost patience because I felt I was being badly treated. 4. He understood he was being chaffed. 5. He suspected that a complaint was being duly registered. 6. Chase was too experienced a politician not to recognize what was being offered.
7. As he was being served two small girls came in. 8. Apparently the party was being held in one of those large detached studios. 9. Yet the root of the whole trouble was that too much money was being spent already. 10. He waited for Annabel, again hanging round the studios, and always on the set when she was being filmed. 11. I forgot I was being cross-examined.
12. Ahead of us the port lay in a wash of temporary floodlights. Two cargo-ships were being unloaded. 13. Congeniality already reigned in the car and remarks were being shouted from one end of it to the other. 14. The seats were being filled up rapidly and a pleasant noise circulated in the auditorium. 15. But he must attend to the play, considering that he was being educated, and so expensively. 16. It occurred to her that the phrase "Martha is a great reader" was being used by herself exactly as her mother used it, and with as little reason. 17. I would have given something for ability to hear what was being said up at old Elihu's house by him.

Exercise 19. Change the following sentences. Use *the Passive Voice*.

1. We have studied the effect. Or call it the result. 2. You have not touched on the result on the strictly material side. 3. I've done pretty nearly everything in my short life, but I've never been a traitor. 4. When he disappears they will suppose that he has confessed everything to you. 5. But while their lips smiled their eyes were ghastly. Madame Storey has taught me something about eyes. 6. The management has provided this gorgeous new palace of amusement to keep up their

tone of Monte Carlo. 7. I have never seen anybody like you. 8. His Highness the Prince has commanded it! 9. I have read so much of your successes solving intricate crimes. 10. We've checked everybody in the club. 11. You've known me a long time. 12. I've told you all I know. I've been honest. 13. I am crooked. I have swindled and betrayed my own country. I did it with my eyes open. 14. With all that done why haven't you offered me a drink? 15. What you've told us, sir – you know it from Mr Motamba himself? 16. I've only seen him twice in my life.

17. Have you heard from him? 18. I've never met them, not even professionally. 19. Here's the list of names. I've fed it to Central Criminal Records just in case. 20. I think I have cleared up one thing your Sopwith has not been murdered on the premises. 21. I have never seen a face so transfigured with noble indignation. 22. He's left her a fortune, I hear. 23. From what I've heard of our Rodney Collingford, People might have started to get ideas about his fetching little widow. 24. I'm getting nearer, Collingford. Have you made your will? 25. I think I've spoken to your wife. 26. I've talked to the Japanese telephone company.

Exercise 20. Change the following sentences. Use *the Active Voice*.

1. He has been brought up in such an old-fashioned way. 2. Nobody's going to break your heart if it hasn't been done already. 3. You have been robbed and drugged but you remain yourself.

4. I'd go away, Mrs Griggs, but I've been dismissed from so many meals lately that I'm getting hungry. 5. And now, young woman, as I have been invited here to spend the night, I'd like to see my room! 6. He looks like he's been injured in a game! 7. These high places have never been settled by men, so they are still innocent. 8. I happen to know that he has been grossly misjudged and misrepresented by old busybodies. 9. I'm only repeating what I've been told by others. 10. A lot has been discussed and decided on since you cut out of here, Dotty. 11. It has been done before. 12. After today and all that's been said, I don't think, I want that picture you're doing. 13. I've been robbed twice already. 14. My dear Mamma, all this has been discussed between Clare and me. 15. An injustice has been done. I am going to set it right.

16. You're not going to pretend you've been poisoned. 17. You've been picked up in the street dead drunk time and time again. 18. I have not been called back to town at all.

Exercise 21. Change the following sentences. Use *the Passive Voice*.

1. Through various intrigues in South-east Asia he had run that considerable sum into a large fortune. 2. Poirot had made an absolute laughing stock of me. 3. A few years ago Lord and Lady Yardly had paid a visit to the States. 4. Figure to yourself that for the moment I had not thought of that. 5. It was true about the shingles, although I had forgotten it. 6. He came home very seldom after he had made his unfavourable judgment on Mother. 7. She talked that night about

the school in Switzerland where she had left her two children. 8. She had met him in France, or on the boat home. 9. She had taught us never to be indecisive. 10. I remembered that once, twenty-five years ago, when I had hit Lawrence on the head with a rock, he had gone directly to our father to complain. 11. They did not want to go out because they had seen a snake under the doorstep. 12. When he'd repeated the statement, she slowly raised her head. 13. I was sure that Helen had made her decision alone. 14. The committee had hung fish nets around the sides and over the high ceiling. 15. The organization seemed out of all proportion once Ken had tidied his garden and Miss Buchan had repainted her door. 16. He had collected reparations in the amount of a half-million pounds for the destruction of his plantation on the Malay Peninsula. 17. She had already wrenched out the diamond with pliers upstairs. 18. I said to him that Lady Yardly had told her husband all. 19. But as to why he insured his life, it was because he had absolutely made up his mind that he would not live long. 20. None of them had won anything. 21. He had taken off the bloody bandage and he held it in his hand. 22. He handed her a large crocodile bag that she had left by the photographs. 23. That was unwelcome news – I hadn't noticed them about the place. 24. It took him five minutes to find the scarf which I'd hidden under a cushion.

Exercise 22. Change the following sentences. Use *the Active Voice*.

1. The conversation turned on Jolyon, and when he had been seen last. 2. The girl Eliza had belonged to a well-to-do family; she had been gently treated and well educated. 3. His manner indicated the subject was closed until I had been put in my place. 4. When the last pocket had been turned out he returned to his own chair. 5. The horses had been taken out, and were grazing by the roadside like common horses. 6. The box contained material for make-up and had been left with other things by a theatrical company. 7. He tried still to feel that his life had been blighted by Ruth. 8. Martha listened to Mrs Van Rensberg's long account of how she had been courted by Mr Van Rensberg 9. By then some of the indignation in his manner had been replaced by caution. 10. The local blacksmith told me that the gate had been damaged, presumably by Sir Yame's car. 11. It was two years now since Mackintosh had been appointed Walker's assistant. 12. She had been left a large fertile farm when her father died. 13. Elizabeth could not remember her mother. Her girlhood had been lived in the most haphazard manner imaginable. 14. In the upper part of the house there were many rooms and in some of them no glass had been put into the windows. 15. When the arithmetic had been muddled and travestied, John Whiteside arose from his chair. 16. It was a fine joke that Mr Know-All had been caught out. 17. The telegram was a duplicate of the one that had been phoned. 18. He dashed out to the car and drove off, pretending to forget that good-bye had not been said. 19. He drank the cup of coffee that had been given him and began to read his paper again. 20. Lily, to whom I had been

introduced about ten minutes before, had on a red and green Christmas – striped dress.

Exercise 23. Supply *the passive voice* of the verbs in the box. Use *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Perfect*.

say, mow, follow, inflict, punish, expect, open, wipe, take, throw, cut, save, serve, heat, eat, teach, convert, drink, make, explain, check, deprive, ask, spill, run, treat, load

1. While the water for bath we played cards. 2. Probably in the school they had gone to as girls that kind of work for one year. 3. The situation was fraught with danger. Everyone was in low spirits and the dinner in silence. 4. Though the dinner was ready and the table laid they didn't sit down to table as some more guests 5. While their luggage the Macphails and Mrs Davidson watched the crowd. 6. A motor-cyclist had collided with a car at a cross-roads and terribly injured. 7. Calder kept his eyes on Jenkins for he knew beyond doubt what on the telephone. 8. We enjoyed watching the gardeners at work. The broad expanse of turf with great care. 9. His pocket money severely since the death of his father and every penny in the family to make both ends meet. 10. Though all the guests hadn't arrived yet dinner 11. But then he stopped and listened. The outer door and fee 12. He paused in a large and gloomy chamber which at some period to the uses of a library. 13. When we arrived the party was in full swing. Speeches , wine 14. At my father's place at table there was an overturned dining-chair and some crockery and cutlery on the floor. Some drink 15. The running of the farm as it never before was easy for him. 16. The children were excited: they to the zoo the next morning. 17. He looked about what , but could find nothing. It was quite dark. 18. He hastened. He had a feeling that he and looked back but nobody was in sight. 19. He was less amused by what happened next. Miss Buchan's door similarly. 20. It was not possible to say how the injuries 21. She loved driving very fast, and boasted of the fact that she never, in her thirty-five years of driving for a driving offence. 22. Nick was so elated by his success in sports that he couldn't concentrate on what at the lesson. 23. The Minister of Education announced that all the institutes in Georgia for drugs. 24. I discovered on the morning I brought the parrot home, that, like Pluto, it also of one of its eyes. 25. He to dinner at half past nine and it was nearly ten.

Exercise 24. Supply *the passive voice* of the verbs in the box. Use *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Perfect*.

give, turn, put, change, steal, use, give, taste, count, pay, inquire, ask, fold, stop, kiss, discuss, explore, make, see, search, lecture, plant, send, pave, introduce, give, discharge

1. I heard, just as the handle , a sound from within. 2. These were letters, which originally in the "Important Answered" file. 3. Unfortunately, Mrs Moar found out the pictures almost as soon as Carl had made the switch. 4. My car was in my garage, except when it in town. 5. And all the time that roll of notes was lying on the table where it had been when she the change. 6. After these best seats for Turgis was left with exactly three-and-three-pence to take him through the rest of the week. 7. In a sudden burst of candour he added that he never cocktail in his life. 8. He was the chap who by Miss Lena Golspie the night before. 9. When she sat down the other three were already there. Work ... 10. Jack reappeared while the topic of the heat and humility still 11. It was quiet but for the audible sound which by his machinery. 12. Mr Kernan was a commercial traveller of the old school which believed in the dignity of its calling. He never in the city without a silk hat of some decency and a pair of gaiters. 13. The corn was shoulder high and right down to the sidewalk. 14. The girls had composed a number of thank-you notes, each wittier than the last but one yet. 15. Our change as he paid a bill. 16. At five o'clock yesterday you after by a man we had not seen before. 17. I tried to tell you no lies when I questions. 18. He walked slowly, skirting a pile of deck chairs which back. 19. At the interval Martha ate ice cream in the foyer with a group of young people to whom, it seemed, she already 20. She and Miss Lavish had had an adventure also. They at the Dazio coming back, and their reticules for provision by the young officials. 21. While I on these frailties by Lawrence, the others came up from the court. 22. The whole day yesterday the street in front of our house 23. My son fell asleep while he instructions. 24. The girl received the announcement as easily as it 25. Time had been when he had seen her wearing nothing! That was something, anyway, which never from him. 26. The ambulance had taken her to the hospital from which she on the same afternoon.

Exercise 25. Supply *the passive voice* of the verbs in the box. Use *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Perfect*.

burn, warn, wave, lock, dust, clean, elect, dust, invite, establish, substitute, sweep, wash, air, see, find, escort, raise, do, throw, educate, test, make, dry, play, take, bury, (not) convert, keep, discharge

1. The kitchen was full of smoke and smell. Something 2. He knew what was coming. He 3. The snow filled the air like a huge fleecy white blanket which gently to and fro outside the window. 4. Before the funerals the parlor always except during the monthly cleaning. 5. My sisters were giving the house a general clean when I came home. The furniture , the floors and , the room . 6. Nick would never wear a suit, in one for years. 7. Was he still lying where he 8. The knife with such force that it required quite an effort to pull it out.
9. About two thousand students in Sokhumi Branch of Tbilisi State University last year when it was transformed into an independent University. 10. Bert Munroe and by the springtime he was the most energetic member. 11. The teacher didn't let us in because the students in English. 12. While hay it started to rain heavily and the peasants ran for cover. 13. When I came home the fish and I had only to cook it. 14. Mason looked at the powder, which over various objects. 15. While my shirt I had to wear an old one. 16. The houses which into flats and private hotels now belonged to doctors and dentists and photographers. 17. It was doubtful how he had become aware that Roger that day because he came to the funeral and we hadn't sent him any telegram. 18. When we came into the hall a waltz and some couples were dancing to the music. 19. Things always from him as if he were not to be trusted.
20. She said that Belle's picture from the frame and a picture of Miss Joyce 21. He was more than a little surprised to find himself at seven-forty in a house where he to dine at half-past eight. 22. When I first met him he long as one of the smartest men in London. 23. Rachel rang up to say that Priscilla and was on the way back. 24. While all this he kept an eye on the form lying in the bed. 25. The next thing she to the side gate by Ken at a rapid trot.
26. The corridor was still empty but the centre blind of the rear compartment

Exercise 26. Supply *the passive voice* of the verbs in the box. Use *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Perfect*.

find, disclose, discuss, settle, pull down, question, use, push, employ, read, mention, burgle, conceal, steal, chop, sweep, arrange, expect, tin, bottle, earn, conjure, establish, propose, drink, sing, substitute, tell, hack, treat, remove, take, cheat, stop, detain.

1. I was still looking for my book when Nick rang me and said that it in his library. 2. When the plot to her, Mrs Kernan agreed to leave it all in Mr Cunningham's hands. 3. I in one business and another quite a good few years, more years than I cared to look back upon. 4. When I came to the library the book was not available: it at that moment in the hall. 5. What the charity was, the note didn't specify, and if ever , he had since forgotten. 6. When I came to the meeting the first question and the second item of the agenda 7. She could see the two people coming slowly along the rows. An understanding between them. 8. The whole night they were enjoying themselves celebrating the housewarming: toasts , wine songs . 9. The revolver was Randy's, and it from the top buffet drawer when no one knew. 10. The whole year hundreds of unlawfully built houses, garages and outhouses in Tbilisi. 11. He'd sacrificed everything, his friends, his familiar surroundings. He , and it broke him. 12. When Inspector McNeil announced that the car and the man and boy , I was almost ill with relief. 13. Winter was approaching. Chimneys , wood and the vegetables and juice

A severe winter 14. During their quarrel he saw clearly for the first time that the marriage between himself and Ruth in Heaven. 15. Perhaps the photograph before you packed. 16. I remember well my childhood, how I always to take up by text-books instead of bouncing a ball. 17. He was hit heavily with a chip when the wood 18. In September he was in hospital for the cardiac disease. 19. I observed that during my absence a considerable number of valuable objects 20. He before. Many times. They knew his answer. 21. The extraction of the bullet proved that the same weapon in each case. 22. My cousin's house when Regina walked in. 23. She had an uneasy feeling that something from her because they were speaking in undertones. 24. From a million bags, bags of every conceivable shape and colour money that had come showering down out of the blue, money that , begged, hoarded up, over counters and under little glass windows and then into parcels, parcels with whole acres of brown paper and miles of string called into service every few minutes.

Exercise 27. Supply *the passive voice* of the verbs in the box. Use *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Perfect*.

try, refurnish, question, give, delay, drag, carry, pack, lock, remove, fill up, load, serve, heat, raise, chase, open, unhitch, put, work out, bring up, treat, follow, debate, resume, perform, cook, leave

1. I knew he was innocent when he in the court. 2. The dining-room roughly, containing now a large rug, all the sunroom armchairs, and a couple of small tables for the bedrooms. 3. A police patrol wagon stood in front of Mury's. Men and , from pool room to wagon. 4. Some of her bags were still here. They and waiting to be brought over by Frederick. 5. Michael still by the police. 6. After the body of the new king , Auguste still lingered in the knot garden. 7. His wife was dead, and the child by his sister. 8. He suddenly discovered that he 9. When the egg in vinegar father carried it in a spoon to the counter and going into a back room got an empty bottle. 10. It must have seemed to me that I was doing a thing that should not be done by one who on a chicken farm where death was a daily visitor. 11. While the point a tall agile gentleman of fair complexion came from the far end of the bar. 12. We passed a few cars, saw nothing to show we 13. They arrived at the colladium just at the right moment, a few minutes after the doors for the second house. 14. Often the myth tells how the ritual 15. He had been a good husband, a good father, and he could not help feeling that he with ingratitude. 16. When order , Scudder shouted, "Your Honor, I object." 17. While the horse and into a shed he and his wife began to carry packages into the house. 18. It was evident that the details carefully beforehand. 19. The cab drew up a short distance from the number that to the driver. 20. Her son was not at home. He in discussion at the Club. 21. As he in the café two small girls came in. 22. When we entered the theatre the seats rapidly. 23. On hearing the noise I opened the window. Two lorries with furniture. Apparently our neighbours were moving the house. 24. While dinner the guests entertained themselves by playing the piano. 25. She had hard work to see that the two young children who to her charge went to school regularly and got their meals regularly.

Exercise 28. Put the sentences into *the passive*. Mind that instead of the perfect tenses of the continuous aspect the corresponding tenses of the common aspect are used.

Models: *A. I have been questioning the servants. – The servants have been questioned.*

B. A lady had been asking for you. – You had been asked for by a lady.

1. I find that my attorney has been robbing me. 2. They've been frisking the place for fingerprints. 3. For the last hour or so, the Sovereign had been doing excellent business, chiefly with young wives. 4. We'd been making George a very handsome allowance. 5. It's what I've

been telling you for weeks. 6. For three years he had been urging construction of a new runway to parallel three zero, as well as other operational improvements. 7. Alice and I had been making vague plans to go away together even if only for one night. 8. For many years, Mrs Quest had been describing women who used cosmetics as fast. 9. "Some idiot boy," he said slowly, "has been chucking rotten apples." 10. Just lately I've been making nothing, not a bean. Just paying expenses, that's all. 11. I have been interrogating her, but so far have had little success. 12. I see you have been keeping all sorts of things from me! 13. You see, I've been instituting a few inquiries as to what Parker has been doing with himself this evening. 14. I'm afraid that you haven't been giving me your individual attention. 15. For years Mr and Mrs Quest had been discussing these things. 16. After a time Miss Morgan felt that she had been humouring the older children too much. 17. His wife had been calling on the Munroes that morning. 18. At morning recess she and he had been swapping bird cards out of Arm and Hammer Baking Soda boxes as I passed by. 19. Anybody would think to hear you that you'd been spending weeks thinking it all out purely for my benefit. 20. She had been saving every penny she could for months with this result. 21. A small band of enthusiasts had been pursuing this botanical search on the slopes of mountains for about ten days. 22. I've been watching you. You look awfully bad-tempered.
23. The trouble is that you have been looking on them with a bilious eye. 24. We had been talking of horses just before leaving the Rue C. 25. I've been looking into that this afternoon.

Exercise 29. Put the sentences into *the passive*. Mind that instead of the perfect tenses of the continuous aspect the corresponding tenses of the common aspect are used. Use the model of the previous exercise.

1. She had been changing her frock, and was still imperfectly clothed. 2. Those fellows had been serving the cause of progress for upward of two years. 3. We've been talking it over since we got your letter last month. 4. I've just been telling her to keep quiet a bit and not give any back answers. 5. He's been asking about you. He wants to see you. 6. I've been managing some olive groves. 7. I note from Mr Hibler's lesson plan that you have been discussing the modes of Egyptian irrigation. 8. What's she been telling you about Dad? 9. Christabel had been writing letters in her own room. 10. He had been staring at the speaker with bursting eyeball. 11. He was laughing heartily in a high key at a story, which he had been telling Gabriel on the stairs.
12. After all the years during which Dr Audlin had been treating the diseased souls of men he knew how thin a line divides those whom we call sane from those whom we call insane. 13. He had been checking the title and author of nearly every book in the study. 14. They had been expecting him to return any time these last few days. 15. George thought she must have rubbed her nose with her finger after she had been handling some of the kitchen pots. 16. I've been

doing it for years. 17. He has been telling me about this Mephistopheles scheme of yours.

18. I've been firing the engine in that laundry for the last two weeks. 19. There's something going wrong with you, boy. I've been noticing it for two weeks. 20. Mr Beebe has just been scolding me for my suspicious nature. 21. Look, I've been calling you "Pattie" for days. Won't you call me by my name, "Eugene"? 22. The porter handing me the key, said that a lady had been asking for me. 23. The little Canadian had been watching me curiously while I talked.

24. You have been pestering me for quite a while. 25. So in fact since Christopher left I've been doing a variety of odd jobs.

Exercise 30. Determine the sentences in which the combination *"to get + Participle II"* is an analytical form of *the Passive Voice*.

1. He's in hospital. He got knocked down by a car last night. 2. "Did you get reelected?" Seward laughed. 3. You'll get whipped on your bare bottom when I come back. 4. I can't understand why he did it but he did and got copped for it as well. 5. You're just going away for a while till things get straightened out. 6. Vivie, put your hat on, dear, you'll get sunburnt. 7. They used to call Alexander Ignatyevich "the lovesick Major", and he didn't get annoyed. 8. We get stuck in Valerie Bemis' house for nearly an hour. 9. It is the people who don't know how to play with fire who get burned up. 10. When you have to take your happiness in snatches, in little bits and then lose it you gradually get hardened and bad-tempered. 11. The one advantage of playing with fire, Lady Caroline, is that one never gets even singed. 12. Just a while, and you'll get settled all right, Mrs Sawney. 13. You see, one sometimes gets taken in: I came in here last week and took two books that seemed very nice and I never noticed till I got home that they were both old books. 14. Untold labour and money is spent on it, and then suddenly it falls and gets smashed. 15. We get rattled, and then we do the wrong thing and are sorry afterward.

16. Well, she, too, got cheated a long time ago. 17. I'm afraid that bronze thing got broken. It won't stand up properly. 18. We don't know where our Papa is. Perhaps he's got burned in the fire. 19. I got paid, sure, but I'd have had to do it anyway. 20. People are born in a tiger's mouth. I snatch them out and some of them get caught on the teeth – that's what you're blaming me for. 21. He got sent to prison in connection with the Panama affair. 22. I had a chance at a beautiful shot, so of course I got knocked out of the way. 23. Ha-ha! Who got fooled? Ha-haaaa! Insufferable cross yourself, you old windbag. 24. And genealogists come up from Boston – get paid by city people for looking up their ancestors. 25. I was one of the poor devils who got waved onwards.

Exercise 31. Put the verbs in brackets into the required tense of *the Passive Voice* using *"get"* as an auxiliary verb.

1. She almost (to run) over by that hardware store wagon. 2. We positively (to elbow) into the corner. 3. He's buried in that little churchyard just up the road, but he nearly (not to bury) at all. 4. He's fine. He's just come back up from Portland. (To stop) twice for speeding. 5. Lies in these affairs always (to find) out. 6. I told you before, I'm not responsible. If you lot (to evict), you've only yourself to thank. 7. They were away for at least three months. Why their house (not to rob) then, when they were safely out of the way? 8. The rest of them (to cop), but he made the sneak. 9. "You'd better not let a copper see you begging or you (to send) to Borstal. 10. Joe was just talking about the day you were born and the water (to shut off). 11. It was much a better place for a woman to be in than the factory where Anne Jane (to poison). 12. I (to pay) for protection in this country, plenty paid for it. 13. He (to make) Agent last year. 14. What will happen when that pane of glass (to smash) some day? 15. They all (to citify), that's the trouble with them. 16. I went to the war; (to clap down) like a bedbug; woke up in a room without a leg. 17. Well, keep it up; we (not to catch) by people. 18. It was a shock to me when I heard he was married. Why all the attractive men (to snap up) young? 19. I just hope he (to pay) all he can get and gets some innocent pleasure out of it. 20. "That's Signor Rossi – he has tuberculosis." – "(To cure up) here?" 21.When I (to chuck) out of that job in Paris I didn't come home.

22. Actually, it's a kind of story. But completely scientific. It tells what would happen if the earth (to invade) by Venus. 23. "You paint the ceiling and breathe in all that lead, and its no good." – "Maybe, but a lot of ceilings (to paint)." 24. I'm keen to know, sir. But I reckon I (to tell) all I need to know. 25. Except for the fact that Aunt Dahlia lost her shirt at baccarat and Angela nearly (to inhale) by a shark while aqua planning, a pleasant time was had by all.

26. After all the money I'd wasted on your education, and all you did was (to fire) in disgrace, from every college you went to! 27. And don't start telling me you don't want any dinner, just because you (to sack)! 28. "Well," his mother complained to our mam one day at the end of the yard about a month after they (to splice), "he's made his bed, and he can lie on it " 29. "I heard you (to wash up) in that South County stock," he observed. 30. If she (to pick up) again by the law, you can't say I didn't warn you, Mr Cutrere. 31. He (to kick out) of play-school for ruining a book. 32. Anyway, when the trial (to move) to Cincinnati, I wasn't really needed.

Exercise 32. Make the following sentences *passive* according to the model. Give two variants where necessary.

Model: *They gave him the task.*

a) He was given the task.

b) The task was given (to) him.

1. I sent him some anonymous postal orders. 2. We gave them something to do. 3. They showed me those footsteps. 4. They spared Lena the technical language. 5. I never told you a lie. 6. I brought you some fresh brown eggs. 7. Father promised the boy a bicycle. 8. Her sister taught us music at school. 9. They showed the man the way to the destination. 10. They gave him a thorough examination. 11. They rented us a car. 12. I never asked him the question. 13 They show us round and offer a lot of inaccurate antiquarian information. 14. I permitted my patients the privilege of roaming to and fro at will. 15. We paid a tidy sum for the car. 16. The doctors had ordered me a sleeping draught – chloral hydrate during recent bouts of pain.17. Then she tried to be more friendly, because Jim had given her the eye, like a little dog. 18. They will have refused the girl assistance. 19. They sent the local charities such generous cheques. 20. We have handed you your documented mixture. 21. He had promised the workers a rise in their wages. 22. He never refuses his friends a loan. 23. I shall pay him his debt when I come into money. 24. I feel that they envy me my success at the office. 25. The management of the factory granted the workers a big allowance in connection with the jubilee. 26. I am sure she will never forgive him his misdemeanour.

Exercise 33. Make the following sentences *passive*. Give two variants where necessary. Use the model of the previous exercise.

1. They offered mother thousands and thousands for the house. 2. We sent you a wire three days ago. 3. The church gave her a very nice headstone. 4. He showed me the city. 5. The Tate Management offered the group a unique opportunity. 6. I told you the truth. 7. He gave me the exact words. 8. She paid him for the work he had done. 9. Martha made him a deep tart of black berries. 10. We went to London and I showed her the world. 11. We told them the name of the place. 12. He brought me some peaches. 13. Nick bought the girls flowers regularly. 14. They have promised us a free pardon. 15. He has given me a bob for slot machines. 16. They will not teach me the way of that world. 17. On his fourth trial they had awarded him a bronze medal. 18. We asked the teacher a question. 19. They did not give them enough to eat. 20. We left every friend some little token of our affection. 21. Someone in the house had told her every detail of the awful tragedy. 22. We recommended him some doctors for the consultation. 23. The teacher is asking the pupils some questions on chemistry. 24. They will teach us shorthand at college. 25. They have sold us a pig in a poke.

Exercise 34. Make the following sentences *passive*. Give two variants where necessary. Use the model of the previous exercises.

1. She buys the children ice-cream every day. 2. Has he returned you your book? 3. My father promised me a car on my birthday. 4. They allowed us three days off at our office. 5. Nick will tell me all the facts when we meet. 6. The self-willed ruler denied the people freedom of assembly. 7. At the restaurant they ordered us two bottles of champagne. 8. I'm happy, they have actually awarded me the order of Saint Stanislav, second class. 9. I hear the man is leaving me insurance. 10. While they waited they showed Martha the ground floor rooms. 11. They give your mother the coupons already clipped by me. 12. They showed Hector the livestock department. 13. They will teach you the lesson in fire and blood and anguish. 14. We gave every man a copy of "The Monkeys of New Guinea." 15. They have sent our host no more than a basic contract. 16. Has he ever told you a lie? 17. They offered the milkman a glass of his own milk. 18. You have taught her nothing useful. 19. During the hot part of the afternoon they served the others chilled fruit juice. 20. During her first year in the store they paid Dulcil five dollars per week. 21. They sold one lady "Golden Dreams" as exactly the reading for a holiday. 22. Nobody has offered me anything to drink. 23. We have told you the whole story. 24. They paid him fifteen shillings for a literary column every Wednesday in "The Daily Express".
25. They gave every one of us a short course in salesmanship. 26. They suggested us a very interesting idea.

Exercise 35. Rewrite each sentence so that it ends with the preposition underlined. Use *the Passive Voice*.

Model: *We sent <u>for</u> the doctor. – The doctor was sent for.*

1. Don't worry. You can rely <u>on</u> him. 2. His bed was as I had left. Nobody had slept <u>in</u> it. 3. She couldn't understand why these people were staring <u>at</u> her. 4.You couldn't find fault <u>with</u> her cookery. 5. Your father thinks that you must account <u>for</u> your behaviour at the restaurant. 6. All children look forward <u>to</u> New Year. 7. She is heartbroken – yesterday a lorry ran <u>over</u> her pet.
8. Since that time we have never heard <u>of</u> her. 9. If you need any financial help you can always count <u>on</u> me. 10. I shall give you a definite answer only after I have looked <u>into</u> the matter. 11. If people want peace they must work <u>for</u> it. 12. In many laboratories of our town biologists experiment <u>on</u> guinea-pigs. 13. Somebody is waiting <u>for</u> you. 14. After a long discussion we agreed <u>upon</u> the date and the agenda of our next meeting. 15. Don't you want to know how I paid <u>for</u> all the expenses? 16. She is lucky. Day and night her husband only waits <u>on</u> her caprices. 17. I see somebody has been monkeying <u>with</u> the spring lock on the back door. 18. For years I've given good advice but nobody has ever acted <u>upon</u> it.19. How did you get rid <u>of</u> the

mice in your house? 20. That evening we didn't refer to the matter again. 21. I feel insulted when a man beckons to me. 22. I wonder from what you derive you income. 23. He is so wise that everybody seeks after his advice. 24. You must not ask too much of it. 25. My friends often call on me.

Exercise 36. Rewrite each sentence so that it ends with the preposition underlined. Use *the Passive Voice*. Use the model of the previous exercise.

1. They sent for the duchess immediately. 2. Dorothy's brother went to South America and nobody ever heard of him since. 3. They accounted for all the tickets except one. 4. These pains will clear up of their own accord when you do not think about them. 5 He suspected somebody had set fire to his car. 6. I hate when people make a fool of me. 7. He was such a simpleton that people imposed upon him. 8. When he came back home he found somebody had broken into his flat. 9. After a long dispute they arrived at a definite decision. 10. His wife looked well after his children and his house. 11. He thought that somebody had been tampering with his things.
12. Emma laid the table while the men talked over politics. 13. The girl's eyes filled with tears when her father shouted at her. 14. He is in no need of money. His parents provide well for him. 15. What enraged him was the thought that somebody was following and spying upon him. 16. I guessed what subject she was alluding to. 17. The press commented on the President's speech at the Parliament. 18. Nobody has played on this court since then. 19. I should never step inside the house where nobody listens to me. 20. She remained an old maid though she had had many boyfriends and they had often proposed to her. 21. In the evening she sighed with relief as she at last had disposed of all the rubbish in the cellar. 22. You can depend on me. 23. Leave him alone. You shouldn't interfere with him. 24. After saying good-bye to our friends we stood on the shore till we lost sight of the ship. 25. She was never the one to start the conversation. She spoke only when others spoke to her. 26. Nobody likes when people laugh at them. 27. In his speech the President touched on many urgent problems.

Exercise 37. Make up sentences with *the Prepositional Passive* using the following intransitive verbs with prepositions.

I

to look at, to look for, to look after, to rely on, to approve of, to speak to, to put up with, to listen to, to send for, to provide for, to comment upon, to depend on (upon), to run over, to insist on, to dispose of, to spy upon, to touch on, to wait for, to look throuh, to live in, to act upon, to sleep in, to mock at

II

to account for, to agree upon, to allude to, to arrive at, to laugh at, to interfere with, to hear of, to look up to, to do away with, to look down upon, to talk about, to talk to, to refer to, to think about, to impose upon, to break into, to wait on, to deal with, to operate on, to play on, to monkey with, to resort to, to run over, to gossip about, to call upon

Exercise 38. Make up sentences with *the Prepositional Passive* using the following verbal phraseological units.

I

to find fault with, to lose sight of, to make fun of, to make use of, to pay attention to, to make light of, to get rid of, to get hold of, to make a fool of, to get in touch with

II

to catch sight of, to set fire to, to take care of, to take notice of, to put an end to, to make a fuss of, to take advantage of, to play a trick on, to look forward to

Exercise 39. Supply appropriate prepositions.

1. A few days later Mr Gruyter was taking a walk, partly for exercise and partly to see that some job he wanted done was being duly proceeded 2. Christmas Day was looked as no more than a rehearsal for New Year. 3. It never entered his head that he was called to do anything for others. 4. She was always sent when the women quarrelled over their tubs and always succeeded in making peace. 5. It's flattering, it's gratifying to know that you're still being talked in your old home town. 6. Now let's skip back a little to where you said the country place was disposed 7. There is nothing reassuring about the sight of a man who has been worked with a hatchet. 8. He was shouted to go on, but he still called to her. 9. The fact that Frankie was an only child was accounted by the rumour that the father, having seen Frankie at birth, had decided to run no more risks. 10. What is this stuff this thing's made
11. Since he has been at the Foreign Office, he has been so much talked in Vienna. 12. What makes you think your gin was set fire ? 13. Traditionally, financial salesmen have been looked suspiciously. 14. They had been stared in return. 15. He has been got ! I know it. I haven't a shadow of proof, but I tell you, Parker, I know when a chap's crooked! 16. Try to cut your roots, and you're done 17. He acquired a voice of authority that was listened 18. It is often resorted in the interests of an accused person. 19. The old were looked , as long as they didn't outstay their welcome. 20. If you give up your pride, what are you left , really?
21. I'm going to see that none of the evidence is tampered 22. He was calm, even cheerful as long as he was not spoken 23. As was remembered and commented afterwards there had been an unusually long spell of dry weather. 24. The upper story of the house had never been

lived 25. They sit in the sun, and are waited , and bathe and chat, barefoot on the white evening sand. 26. It should never be parted 27. For years I've given advice, and never once has it been acted 28. Captain Harwell had been murdered, done away 29. That is exactly what things were originally made 30. Yes, but you do not know – you will not understand – that life is penetrated and by our feeling, imagination and will. 31. The dessert succeeded, the children came in, and were talked and admired amid the usual rate of conversation. 32. So one night he was wanted to go on a call and they couldn't find him anywhere. 33. Dorothy Sikes' brother went on to South America and was never heard again. 34. And would you ask me to live in Ireland where I've been imposed and kept in ignorance? 35. You'll have a lot more to go through before you'll be done 36. I got to go up. I'm being called 37. All we want, Sigismanfred, is somewhere safe to assemble our device. That is being planned 38. Miss Kate was that high when I first came and Mr Dickie hadn't even been thought 39. Then the newcomer George Brush was called He sang his Alma Mater so beautifully that all the workers crowded about him. 40. It was worse to discern that he was being made a fool 41. Colonel Campbell's residence being in London, every lighter talent had been done full justice , by the attendance of first-rate masters. 42. The cost of their building has been paid over and over again by successive tenants. 43. Fathers should not be spoken like that.

Exercise 40. Supply appropriate prepositions.

1. The most revolting thing in him was a very pronounced harelip which had never been operated 2. Mr Quin is vouched by an expert. 3. If I'm wanted I can always be sent 4. She was beckoned by a man at one of the many desks. 5. The subject was no more alluded during the long and dreary walk home. 6. It was not till next day that the matter was referred again. 7. The subject has not even been touched 8. A few nervous breakdowns could be counted , too, usually among the younger girls. 9. The absence of Ralph Paton was commented by the coroner. 10. Three landing places were always agreed before the run was attempted. 11. What enraged him was the thought that he bed been followed, spied 12. He will be heard . next summer at Coney Island. 13. His first thought upon seeing her was a sudden, treacherous recollection of a remark that had been bandied at the time of her wardship. 14. There, a small group of people had collected and were being shouted by the gate-keeper. 15. And now, Dr Trench, may I ask what your income is derived ? 16. Some other way of entering limbo must be thought 17. She was well spoken by the concierge of the apartments. 18. I was sought , admired, proposed , feted. 19. How in hell do you think all that sickness and dying was paid ? 20. The words were hardly out of his mouth when the silence was suddenly broken by a confusion, cries, and a rapid patter of naked feet. 21. For a

moment Martha was irrationally angry, as if she had been spied 22. I know very well that I'm not listened 23. I believe there are admirable homes where people of that kind are looked and reformed. 24. The room was presided by a dispatcher. 25. Ralph has been looked for so long as practically Ackroyd's own son. 26. He had been experimented by a very clever psychologist. 27. His bed hadn't been slept 28. They won't be gossiped out loud. 29. When Mrs Quest first arrived, she was laughed , because of the piano and the expensive rugs. 30. These parties were looked forward and remembered with great pleasure by the people of the valley. 31. If I am able to declare myself absolutely satisfied that the overdose was taken accidentally, an inquest might be dispensed 32. I'm sorry, Sheila. But it was all over and done , last summer. 33. When I got home on Saturday I thought my things had been tampered 34. He looked round triumphantly. More lights were being turned , the orchestra was beginning to tune up again. 35. That money was worked , let me tell you, worked hard. 36. No definite answer could be arrived 37. We were waited by two footmen instead of four. 38. If they must be provided , let other people look after them. 39. Come, Bertha. That's a thing I've not been accused before. 40. In a word, she was never heard more. 41. I don't think my experience is being made use 42. I've been made a fool and imposed all my life. 43. Mrs Bart was spoken by her friends as a wonderful manager. 44. The spring lock on the door was fastened and had no marks to show it had been monkeyed

Exercise 41. Put questions to the italicized parts.

1. *He* will be heard from *next summer at Coney Island.* 2. *The absence of Ralph Paton* was commented on *by the coroner.* 3. He *had been experimented* upon *by a very clever psychologist.* 4. *You*'re protected *by the contract.* 5. The fiery liquor was lowered *by the addition of twice or thrice the quantity of water.* 6. *One side of her dress* had been soaked *by the wave which had borne them in.* 7. *Unhappy blackamoors on the Congo and the Amazon* were being treated *as English serfs.* 8. I'm being worried *by my ancestors.* 9. *I* have been paid already *to the end of January.* 10. I'd been asked to give *her some letters.* 11. *You* have already been told *that Mr Ackroyd* doesn't want to be disturbed. 12. I'm really being asked *to be witness as well as judge.* 13. *Toby* has been introduced already *to our little group.* 14. *Shots of Scotch were being passed around in polystyrene cups.* 15. *In his youth* Wash Williams had been called *the best telegraph operator* in the state. 16. *The frankness of the previous fifteen or twenty thousand years* was considered *abnormal.* 17. That is the custom of the Sahibs when *truth* is told *in their presence.* 18. *His cries* were heard *by a farmer.* 19. She was shown *into her suite at the Ritz.* 20. She was sent away *for being a thief.* 21. *Every boy* of more than ten years will be made to wear *a pair of trousers.* 22. The door had been formed *of planks by a native carpenter.*

Exercise 42. Put questions to the italicized parts.

1. That year he had been given *a minor post in the government.* 2. My cosmopolite was named *E. Rushmore Coglan.* 3. Richmond *was being deliberately sent to death.* 4. *I've* always been regarded *as a sound useful party man.* 5. You'*ll be roasted alive.* 6. The farm *had been split* into *three* parts. 7. He was torn to shreds *by sir Robert.* 8. We are allowed to drink *our own healths.* 9. She was forbidden *to open the door.* 10. It was not known *who the nun was.* 11. *Three landing places* were always agreed upon before the run was attempted. 12. *The next day the matter* was referred to again. 13. *She* was beckoned to *by a man at one of the many desks.* 14. *My things had been tampered with.* 15. *Dorothy Sikes' brother* was *never heard of.* 16. *All the tickets* were accounted for. 17. She'*ll be fetched up* back *soon enough.* 18. The children *are being cared* for *by the relatives.* 19. The blocks had been painted *with yellow and black diagonal stripes.*
20. *You're* invited *to the Carters.* 21. Humor is revealed *only to the few.* 22. My income is derived *from the rental of a very extensive real estate in London.*

Exercise 43. Rewrite the sentences with modal verbs *"may", "might", "have to", "had to", "will have to", "ought to"* in *the Passive Voice* where necessary.

1. I feel that we ought to do something about the matter. 2. I have to wash up the windows and to put up curtains. 3. I have to polish all my wedding silver and I ought to launder the monogrammed table linen. 4. We may regard it as settled between us, mayn't we? 5. You may leave that entirely in my hands. 6. Somebody might follow the man who brings the letter tomorrow. 7. You didn't murder Lady Esther, but you thought people might accuse you. 8. She was sleeping in the room, which you might call haunted. 9. You ought to spend the first night in a real fine place regardless of what it costs you. 10. They ought to bring him before a magistrate and put on bail. 11. I had to adjust my plans to fit the circumstances. 12. She was sick at the stomach and we had to carry her to the wash-room. 13. We may regard it as settled, mayn't we? 14. At the same time he was subdued, and not gaily enthusiastic, as we might expect from a happy lover. 15. Mr Emerson was an old man, and surely a girl might humour him.16. They might ask me if I'd mind being moved to another school. 17. I had to find a job. 18. I had to carry and drag her some ways back along the road until we came to the first house. 19. I shall have to pack this carefully. 20. We had to restrain Grandfather from lifting the bags. 21. They ought to look after you. 22. You ought to tell your father. 23. I agree with you that we ought to punish the villain. 24. Well, you ought to sleep, I expect. 25. He wrote and said they might demob him any day now. 26. In fact, in a kind of way, we might say you were jealous of her.

Exercise 44. Rewrite the sentences with modal verbs *"can", "could", "must", "should"* in *the Passive Voice* where necessary.

1. I couldn't see her face because of the long black veil. 2. We could hear his violent language all over the house! 3. I tried to rouse Miss Sternwood. I couldn't do it. 4. His sense of honour told him that he must make reparation for such a sin. 5. You must open your mouth wider when you sing, young man. 6. I think you can hardly depend on that here. 7. You can't expect a bus driver to remember everyone. 8. One shouldn't allow you to carry a dangerous weapon like that. 9. I can't change my plans. 10. I think you should take that child home. 11. We mustn't exaggerate the situation. 12. We must do everything in order to safeguard the four of us. 13. I don't think that you can divide people into the good and the bad. 14. One can classify unhappiness under five main heads. 15. You shouldn't pay him tonight. 16. You must go home with your little daughter now. 17. You can't blame him. 18. You shouldn't call his attention to matters like that. 19. They can hear you all over the house. 20. You must remember that any one who's mentally unhinged has a good deal of unsuspected strength. 21. You can recognize the Prince of Wurttemberg by the patch of white hair across the centre of his back. 22. I think we should summon Miss Brent to join us. 23. You can't destroy certain things however much you try. 24. People should not allow such things to happen here in this world. 25. You must not worry. 26. Well, we can clear up that point afterwards.

Exercise 45. Rewrite the sentences with modal verbs in *the Passive Voice*.

1. I ought to have asked Iris about her cook. 2. I must rearrange my ideas. 3. They ought to keep the estate together. 4. You shouldn't have made me threaten him. 5. You should have delivered this to me. 6. Anyone can find places, but the finding of people is a gift from the God. 7. She replied she had to finish the dress. 8. You cannot thank him personally. 9. You must keep the soup hot at all events. 10. You frightened me. I could hear voice outside on the lawn. 11. I could never tell her much. 12. I suppose I might have done something to help him. 13. I might watch the house for weeks before he made a visit. 14. You may take your coat off, sir. 15. There is always the possibility that the police may have exceeded their instructions. 16. You needn't bully me about it. 17. All your gold cannot bring happiness to your son. 18. "Arnold," I said, "you can't have killed her – you're talking nonsense." 19. Payson had to get his ticket before the travel office closed for the weekend. 20. You should have told me at once. 21. You should have listened to me and then everything would have happened. 22. I suppose I really oughtn't to tell you anything about it. 23. Perhaps I oughtn't to have discussed her so freely with anyone.
24. She might have left him a note but there was nothing. 25. Perhaps we have some other things there that might interest you. 26. If you must use razors to cut grindstones, why, I prefer the best

cutlery. 27. There was no next day. We must blame blind fate for that. 28. And if she should call on me I could politely tell her to go away. 29. You could rent a Gallery, no doubt, if you could manage it out of your income. 30. They may even return a verdict without recommendation. 31. Why can't you leave me alone! I want to be by myself. 32. We must not judge a coloured dictatorship as we judge a white one. 33. You ought to have stopped me. 34. You don't have to push me. 35. You needn't mention me again, Tom.

Exercise 46. Rewrite the sentences with modal verbs in *the Passive Voice*.

1. You can trust her – she won't talk. 2. He ought to have announced by a note. 3. He ought not to have told her but he knew that she was the very soul of discretion. 4. I must forbid the name in the house. 5. She must have sold the picture that night before going home. 6. I don't know why you should have noticed me. 7. He has to hire his investigators, and naturally he can't hire a whole police force. 8. We mustn't keep mamma and the others waiting. 9. I must face it without being muddled. 10. Mason held the phone and could hear her transmit the message to Drake. 11. He could not see her face but he could see the terracotta. 12. I might join you too if no other arrangements have been made for me. 13. One might serve a man for twenty years and yet not know his name. 14. They ought to keep the estate together. 15. We can't buy one minute of time with cash. 16. You know you can see stars even in the daytime from the bottom of a well. 17. You'll have to pardon me. 18. When I told her I had to draw the line some place she became a regular little hellcat over the wire. 19. Naturally I should have told her. But in case she should blame you in any way, I promise I will not. 20. I think I ought to tell you something. 21. You ought to have fired him before he had a chance. 22. Such a lovely day. Thought I might take you all out for lunch. 23. Something warned Lucy that she must stop him. 24. In justice to her I must say that she was a mirror for all the properties. 25. I could give her a photograph – but I might change a bit in twenty-seven years. 26. The season was nearly at an end and I longed for the last guest to go, so that I could give the cook his quietus. 27. In conclusion we may state that at the first symptom of disease the patient should not hesitate to put himself in the hands of a professional tailor. 28. I don't see that I can do anything to help you. 29. I thought he might have said something to you about it. 30. That safe was in its turn so ingeniously hidden that I never should have found it for myself. 31. I suppose I must forgive you. Just think of all the trouble I took for nothing. 32. Whatever you should have done nine years ago, it is too late now. New tactics must be adopted. 33. I have much to do, much to see. I cannot spend all my time with one recalcitrant boy. 34. It wasn't my fault at all, and you needn't have mentioned it, Mother.

Exercise 47. Rewrite the sentences in *the Passive Voice* using the following models:

A. *They appointed him chairman of the council.*
He was appointed chairman of the council.

B. *People knew her as a photographer's model.*
She was known as a photographer's model.

1. They have appointed him battery commander here. 2. The teachers elected him clerk of the school board. 3. He did well at home. They made him foreman. 4. They have appointed her milk monitor this term. 5. They have elected George President of the Junior Class. 6. In 1999 they made him the commission's first director-general for justice and home affairs. 7. People knew him as William Kidd. 8. The Georgian people elected Mr Saakashvili President in 2004.
9. Fourteen years ago they called the Chinese Tree a work of genius. 10. People know me as the wop that runs the Syndicate Plantation. 11. He said that they had just elected him member of Parliament for one of the city constituencies. 12. We have chosen him as our monitor. 13. The delegates elected him chairman of the meeting. 14. They appointed him director of a school.
15. People considered Hazel one of the prettiest girls in Newlingham. 16. We treated her as a promising film-star. 17. We consider that post a great promotion for him. 18. They made my father a brigadier eleven years ago. 19. They know us as the English Catholic Church. 20. He told me that they had employed him as a grocery clerk. 21. People considered having a day's work and enough to eat a great blessing for him. 22. Everybody knew him as the trickiest man in the valley. 23. They appointed him manager of a prosperous firm. 24. The street made her a morphine-addict. 25. They chose my brother captain of our football team.

Exercise 48. Rewrite the sentences in *the Passive Voice* using the following models:

A. *She made the boy tell her the truth.*
The boy was made to tell her the truth.

B. *Her mother lets her wear short skirts.*
She is allowed to wear short skirts.

1. The girl made Mr McFarline think of his age, which was unusual for him. 2. They made every room-hunter visit his room to admire the lambrequins. 3. We let him stay with us for the night. 4. A hint is the only answer which they let me make. 5. Due to a slight technicality, they will let you cross the frontier. 6. They didn't make us accept such sacrifices. 7. They were making the students sing the songs of the various colleges from which they came. 8. They made me say exactly where this treasure had been found. 9. They made him reveal the date. 10. We let them begin again. 11. The parents let the children go there alone. 12. The teacher will make the boy explain his behaviour. 13. They made me feel like a country mouse in a metropolitan jungle.

14. Our neighbours let us use their flat for this occasion. 15. The doctor didn't let me smoke and drink coffee. 16. I don't let my children eat candy. 17. Mother made me get up early yesterday. 18. My parents have never let me see boys alone. 19. They made him confess in public his responsibility. 20. They did not let him swim out far. 21. I didn't let the stuff touch my hands. 22. I let the door close up against a bit of wood I had bought. 23. They made Robert sit at dinner with a wreath of flowers round his head. 24. After dinner they will make Ferdy play the piano. 25. They did not let Sue date till her last year at the University..

Exercise 49. Rewrite the sentences in *the Passive Voice*. Follow the models:

A. They saw him open the window (opening the window).
He was seen to open the window (opening the window).

B. We heard our neighbour call her chidren (calling her children).
Our neighbour was heard to call her children (calling her children).

1. I saw him slip and fall. 2. Jane saw her neighbour open the door of his flat and go in. 3. I heard him sing a French song. 4. She could hear her father call her. 5. I saw the girl watering flowers in the garden. 6. We heard our friends talking loudly. 7. I haven't ever heard Lester complain before. 8. Several passengers saw him running along the corridor. 9. People saw women, girls, children, and men trooping to the office down all the paths. 10. He saw the woman turn the corner. 11. They saw Mrs Cotterill's tight lips move. 12. People often see them walking hand-in-hand in the park. 13. The neighbours often hear them ringing the bell.
14. Everybody saw her blush. 15. We noticed the pupil drop the cigarette. 16. I observed them hurry along the street. 17. I heard the women gossiping about Sue's new husband. 18. Nobody saw them entering the house. 19. We didn't hear them knock at our door.. 20. They will hear the bees buzzing. 21. They heard the American ladies ringing their bell violently. 22. We saw our fellow-students waving to us. 23. She heard people talking in the corridor. 24. The mother noticed the child shudder. 25. I noticed them wink at each other. 26. They can see the woman standing in the pouring rain.

Exercise 50. Rewrite the sentences in *the Passive Voice*. Use the models of the previous exercises.

1. I heard him tell the little Campbell girl that he would take her to nursery in the morning. 2. I heard the car go down the drive. 3. She saw Ralph Paton turn in at the gate and go upstairs towards the house. 4. He heard a baby crying in the sage brush beside the road. 5. In those clothes she looked just as attractive as in the splendid garments he had seen her wearing before. 6. She saw him sitting in the corner of the pub. 7. I watched the naked women walk out of the

sea. 8. You saw me buy this thing. 9. He saw them pass the dock and settle on the water.

10. Here we heard the voice of Miss Bartlett saying that a crowd had begun to collect. 11. He heard the door shut behind him. 12. He heard her turn over and away from him. 13. The following morning very early we saw Captain Harwell walking in the garden. 14. They heard young Nicholas saying gently that Violet was taking lessons in pastel. 15. They heard a youthful spectator remark "Jerry has got a bun". 16. We saw each man on reaching the top carrying a pair of tubs. 17. Now and again we heard a tram swishing along the lonely road outside. 18. I saw the blood come out and begin to darken his hair. 19. I saw Mrs Maltravers give a terrified start.

20. At twenty-five minutes past nine, they see Captain Paton passing the lodge. 21. They saw her coming to my room. 22. Through the ceiling-board an inch from his ear he heard his sister move. 23. I could hear the others hurrying after. 24. I had heard them clattering down the stairs, but I did not look round. 25. They heard Frank say, "I think you could manage this without effort." 26. He heard the old woman's voice say: "That's right, son".

Exercise 51. Rewrite the sentences with *the Infinitive as an Objective Predicative* in the Passive Voice. Use *the Infinitive as a Subjective Predicative*.

1. Someone tempted Mel to laugh. 2. The situation prompted me to lie about it. 3. They persuaded Mr Woodhouse to spend the last half hour of an evening with his daughter at Rondalls. 4. They obliged them to thank Mrs Weston and to look sorrowful. 5. They ordered the boy to bring three bottles of wine. 6. They forced the council to rethink the plan after heated criticism. 7. The rules forbid players to leave the theatre wearing the apparel owned by the King's Men. 8. They expected the drugs scandal to reduce the nation's usual vast medal haul at the Olympics. 9. The editor entitled the publisher to make minor adjustments and add refinements. 10. They persuaded him to join them and give his opinion on the spot. 11. Life condemned me to live at home with five coarse and brutal sisters who care for nothing but Alpine climbing. 12. They compelled us to admit that we oughtn't to have done it. 13. Nobody authorized you to speak for me. I am competent to say what I feel. 14. They asked me to give you this envelope. 15. They didn't allow us to phone or write to each other. 16. They advised me to warn you, Ayamon, that the Authorities are prepared to use all the force they have to prevent the meeting. 17. My headache obliges me to keep my bed today and I beg you to excuse me.

18. In my childhood they taught me in my family never to have anything cheap or nasty. 19. The hostess requests the guests to occupy their places. 20. We warned our son to be careful while driving the car because the road was wet but he took no notice. 21. Life will teach to speak differently. 22. You must encourage your son to go in for swimming. 23. The English teacher must urge her students to speak only English in class. 24. They invited us to come round to their

house to supper. 25. The girl's determination forced me to give in to her and we started for the Fair at once. 26. Everybody had expected Martha to notice things of this sort, and she had not.

Exercise 52. Rewrite the sentences in *the Passive Voice*. Use the given models.

Models:

1) It is said that ten people escaped from prison yesterday.
Ten people are said to have escaped from prison.

2) It is reported that he has a vocation for the priesthood.
He is reported to have a vocation for the priesthood.

3) It was seen that Mr Stapliton was alive.
Mr Stapliton was seen to be alive.

1. It has long been understood that the condition of a man's clothes has a certain effect upon the health of both body and mind. 2. It was rumoured that Annabel had decided to save her marriage by having a baby. 3. It was understood he was coming. 4. It was said that she drank. 5. It is believed that you vouch for her. 6. It is said that the great events of the world take place in the brain. 7. It is believed that he has joined the army. 8. It is reported that the plane made an urgent landing last night. 9. It is thought that the two countries finally signed a peace treaty. 10. It is believed that people snore if they sleep with their mouths open. 11. During the night it was reported that a house was on fire. 12. It is known that the ground shakes from time to time in some parts of the world. 13. It is believed that television programs influence our minds. 14. It is said that smoking habits vary. 15. It is known that to many people smoking is an addiction. 16. It was known that the speaker had secret sources of information. 17. It was believed the President was in a state of fury. 18. It was supposed that he had gone abroad. 19. It was generally understood that a quiet engagement to marry existed between her and Owlett. 20. It was said that Mr Lincoln wanted the best possible education for his oldest son.

Exercise 53. Rewrite the sentences in *the Passive Voice*. Use the given models.

Models: A. *He is said to have graduated the University.*
It is said that he has graduated the University.

B. *He was supposed to go abroad and see all sorts of people.*
It was supposed that he went abroad and saw all sorts of people.

1. He is said to be on holiday. 2. We are supposed to be getting some rest and relaxation. 3. They were expected to work all the time. 4. He was considered to be deeply interesting and she highly talented. 5. Iguanas have been known to bite their tails off when they're tied up by their tails. 6. Mrs Dixon is expected to have surgery next week. 7. You are supposed to know

what you are doing. 8. He was known to have some independent property. 9. Syria was reported to have completed the first phase of its troop withdrawal from Lebanon yesterday. 10. He was thought to be a very fine young man. 11. He was rumoured to sell less favoured items at car boot sales. 12. Old maids are known to be foolishly sentimental about babies. 13. Senior managers were said to be insufficiently self-critical about standards of impartiality. 14. Ministers are understood to be most interested in moves to attract companies to return to France. 15. The two compartments were found to be empty when the train stopped. 16. A powerful-looking figure was observed to be struggling up into the pulpit. 17. Mrs Staverton was believed to threaten Richard Scott. 18. Annabel was assumed to be in the running for these awards. 19. He was supposed to have brought about the death of a farmer he'd had trouble with over some land deal. 20. He was said to be the handsomest man in London.

Exercise 54. Rewrite the sentences in *the Passive Voice*. Use two constructions for each sentence.

Model: *They say that he has gone bankrupt.*

a) It is said that he has gone bankrupt.

b) He is said to have gone bankrupt.

1. Everyone knows that her husband is a snob. 2. They consider that she has made a great mistake. 3. People say that he has wasted this opportunity. 4. They think you tried to buy them off with money. 5. They suspected that Nick had divulged the secret. 6. People believe that the servants have told the girl everything. 7. People say that he has never done a stroke of work in his life. 8. They supposed that Shark hadn't seen guns at all. 9. They knew that old Miss Pritchett had died three months before. 10. The newspapers reported that Tony Blair had issued a furious dressing-down to Charles Clarke, the Home Secretary. 11. People considered that he had made a fortune in Alaska. 12. They understand his daughter has eloped with a foreigner.
13. People expected that they led a busy social life. 14. They supposed nobody knew about it. 15. They believed that the crime had been committed in front of your house. 16. People supposed that he was a queer, quiet child. 17. They expect that you are having a holiday.
18. People think that his house is haunted. 19. People doubt that this medicine will have any effect. 20. They suspect that he stole some money from the bank. 21. They request that the visitors should show their documents. 22. They suppose that every girl enjoys balls. 23. We believed that he was a trustworthy person. 24. People know that insects have adapted to different climates. 25. People believe that their only son left the country years ago. 26. They say that he has gone bankrupt.

Exercise 55. Rewrite the sentences in *the Passive Voice*. Use the correct construction.

Models: *1. It was suspected that the young man drank. – The young man was suspected to drink.*

2. Everybody has been officially requested not to disturb Queen Elizabeth's peace. – It has been officially requested not to disturb Queen Elizabeth's peace.

1. It is reported that Mrs Blair begins her speech tour tomorrow at a dinner in Auckland.

2. Jaguar, the official tour sponsor, is thought to be providing courtesy cars. 3. The proposals are expected to be approved later this week. 4. It is reported that the RAF Hercules transport plane crashed in Iraq killing ten crew. 5. It is rumoured that Left-Wing Labour rebels are secretly planning to launch a campaign to oust Tony Blair as Prime Minister. 6. Mr Downes's killers are believed to have been after an estimated $250000 in cash. 7. It is often said that nowadays people live in a permissive age. 8. Youngsters in their teens are known to idolize film stars or other celebrities. 9. It was said that the bandit Vasquez had built the cabin and lived in it for a year. 10. Well, dear, I hope you like the park. It is believed to be well timbered. 11. Young Lord Leccan is reported to have asked her to marry him, but she remained heart-free. 12. The monks of the Middle Ages are recorded to have walled up their victims. 13. You were supposed to have been with Sheila last night. 14. It was noticed that the child was crying and obviously afraid of his companion. 15. It was rumoured that a Frenchman from New Orleans kept a brothel. 16. It was considered she had been dead for at least two hours by five o'clock. 17. He was acknowledged to be the ablest politician in the Conservative Party. 18. It was generally understood that she devoted her life to her father. 19. It was believed that valuable papers had been taken from the dead man's pockets. 20. Mr Hiram was known to have had these unwholesome interests in family history. 21. It was seriously doubted that a teacher so young and so pretty could keep any kind of order in the school.

Exercise 56. Rewrite these sentences using *"be supposed to"*. Follow the given models.

Models:

1. *I hear he comes from the same country as she. – He is supposed to come from the same country as she.*
2. *I was told the two countries had signed a peace treaty. – - The two countries were supposed to have signed a peace treaty.*
3. *When do you think he arrived? – When is he supposed to have arrived?*
4. *Girls shouldn't smoke so much. – Girls aren't supposed to smoke so much.*
5. *People say that the husband doesn't know the truth. – The husband isn't supposed to know the truth.*

1. I thought they would arrive in time for dinner. 2. We didn't think you knew we were having a little talk. 3. People said she we exceptionally musical. 4. People say that women call him up.

5. Nobody says that you smooch with girls on account of their self-respect. 6. They say that nobody knows about their marriage. It's a secret. 7. People say that you are keeping the seal. 8. People say that you have gained from her death. 9. Everybody knows that human beings chew their food before they swallow it down. 10. Well, what do you expect me to do with the papers then? 11. We think that Norman fixed the broken door. 12. People say that dogs are sensitive to paranormal phenomena. 13. They say that I must not let her out of my sight. 14. I hear that script is top secret until the film's released. 15. People say that one of the actors was shot during a live television show. 16. People say that women discern an alteration in the quality of another woman's feelings. 17. Don't you think there will be biscuits? 18. People say she is getting married for the third time. 19. People say that she will be inducted into her office at the D.A.R. this afternoon. 20. People say that she doesn't go out with anyone except Jack. 21. Everybody said that he was a little irresponsible. 22. They said that they had got engaged secretly. 23. I heard that Gerald was too busy to see her. 24. I heard that he had died on November twenty-fifth. 25. They say that some carnival party is coming here soon after nine. 26. Parents should explain it to their children. 27. What are we to do here? 28. Arthur, you shouldn't say such things. 29. People thought that a child would keep my mother and father together. 30. They say that two dangerous criminals have escaped from prison.

Exercise 57. Change the following sentences using the construction with *the Subjective Predicative*.

Model 1: *They saw him open the window (opening the window).*
He was seen to open the window (opening the window).

Model 2: *It made me laugh.*
I was made to laugh.

Model 3: *They let her go to the party.*
She was allowed to go to the party.

Model 4: *We know that he plays football well.*
He is known to play football well.

Model 5: *They tempted me to go for a walk.*
I was tempted to go for a walk.

Model 6: *What do you suppose I am to do?*
What am I supposed to do?

1. They saw the young man climbing the wall once or twice. 2. Palmer saw him sit down in the shadow of the jib, ream out his pipe and begin loading it. 3. The curious light made the globe seem to glow with a sort of milky alabaster radiance. 4. He made me write a message on the

woman's dressing table mirror. 5. People know that the two ladies have the most admirable husbands in London. 6. Tactfully he let her husband pick up the book. 7. She had always expected something dramatic and sudden to happen. 8. Feigning sleep, she had seen him writing at the trestle. 9. He heard the gate swing to and saw the girl come running among the trees. 10. You forced me to write your letters for you. 11. They did not allow Scott to leave his cart-work. 12. They understood that she denied its existence. 13. There was rumour that he was not doing well. 14. How does he expect us to work for him if he won't stump up? 15. He would stand there like that doing nothing and let Pierre drown. 16. She heard the dust blowing outside in the breeze. 17. She saw him get up from the table. 18. They tempted him to enter and watch their proceedings. 19. It made you realize what a terrific thing it was to be at the beginning of everything. 20. No one noticed Martha Grace lumber away. 21. She watched him light his own cigarette. 22. Palmer saw her lips open for an instant. 23. What a coward I am! I let the chance slip again. 24. He looked up and saw a man standing in front of him. 25. They say that our colleges are full of those young radicals. 26. People suppose that we are to argue with them, hold them off his trail a while. 27. They suppose I know something about science. 28. At the same moment he noticed a whisky bottle standing on the table. 29. They advised me strongly to go and stay in the country. 30. They had forbidden him ever to show anyone to the door. 31. A strong silence made Dora catch her breath.

Exercise 58. Rewrite the sentences in *the Passive Voice* by changing the construction.

1. As Katherine stood in the doorway a feeling she had never experienced crept into her.
2. When he entered the first person he saw, in his shirt-sleeves, measuring out a length of trade cotton, was Edward. 3. There was that look about that he had not seen since his father died. 4. It was five days since he'd walked in and found Regina dead. 5. What he had done did not outrage her. 6. He was the only real father she'd ever known. 7. He looked upon me with awe and envy. 8. Let the husband teach his wife how to manage something else. 9. After a while he insisted on carrying her up and downstairs. 10. We'll send down for the bags. 11. After taking leave of Mrs Mark in the morning Dora had rested for about twenty minutes. 12. It's terrible to think that they are shut up like that. 13. Anxiously she watched the butterfly. It fluttered a little, and began to move towards the window. 14. Dora suddenly noticed that the nun in the front row had turned round and was looking at her. 15. I had to say something about you to the other member of the community. 16. I believe that people see ghosts. 17. What are you doing here, then? 18. It was Miss Rosemary's duty to read us a paper tonight on William Blake. 19. Which one draws best? Which one sings best? Which one has the best manners? – They're the same. 20. Someone seems to have stolen my bicycle. 21. What do you think I am to do in such a situation?

22. People know that the cave man is above sensation. 23. Did you want me to fight him? 24. I used to steal the newspaper from Dad to get the news of your football heroisms. 25. They permitted Millicent to entertain friends in her sitting-room. 26. The doctor advised the patient that he should gulp the wine down.

Exercise 59. Rewrite the sentences in *the Passive Voice* by changing the construction.

1. They say two thousand people were frozen to death. 2. But I hear that nowadays country society is quite honeycombed with them. 3. They sent a Petty office up with me. He was (had) to wait and see father. 4. How was I to react to such kindness? 5. She because a wonderful wife and mother. 6. You seem to have forgotten the rule. 7. Where must I go now? 8. I shall have to leave a card on you. 9. There was no other way for him but to admit that he had invited Ruth to take part in it. 10. People knew that he was in the habit of frequenting those houses. 11. We heard how he was coming down the lane from the highway. 12. They had acknowledged it vain to attempt to fix a day. 13. We considered that she was very intellectual. 14. I'll have you met at Idlewild. 15. He believed the coat had come direct from some chest or drawer. 16. We didn't want her to see us loitering about her house. 17. This caused her to turn round in her chair to give him a withering answer. 18. She wanted the young man to hear her rage. 19. He used to call her Poppens out of fun. 20. Don't touch this dog. 21. You threaten to have the law on me and I am tired of it. 22. People consider that a female scold is a match for the devil. 23. She wondered what sort of work they would ask her to do. 24. That horrible story was sure to change my mind. 25. They say that he is on holiday. 26. It used to scare people.

Exercise 60. Use the verb in brackets in *the* appropriate *passive* form.

1. "Do you see – over there in the garden?" "That new house, you mean?" "The one that (to build), yes. Almost finished." 2. There was an essential mistake in the viewpoint of life set forth in the books. The mistake always (to make). 3. This was the first time that I found myself face to face with crime. For it was evident an atrocious crime (to commit). 4. And so they are content to take whatever (to offer) them. 5. Of course, now he (to release) he won't notice them any more. 6. "Where is he now?" "Well, he just (to send down) from Oxford. I suppose he's at home." 7. In that moment he saw clearly for the first time that the marriage between himself and Ruth (not to arrange) in Heaven. 8. In the room that (to prepare) for her, Hilda methodically broke the furniture. She slit the pillows and shook feathers about the room. 9. Then he became aware that something (to hide) from him. 10. I just (to inform) by the pew-opener that for the last hour and a half Miss Prism has been waiting for me in the vestry. 11. The Union Jack is an impressive piece of drapery, but when it (to flourish) by a gentleman from Alexandria or Beirut, I cannot

but feel that it loses somewhat in dignity. 12. Then he went out again, threw the gun into the bushes where it (to find) later. 13. "This parrot (to bring) home to you on Friday, the second?" "That's right." 14. One such meeting (to hold) on board a ship one day, and after the regular business (to complete), the time came to discuss the date of the next morning. 15. Some young soldiers who had recently joined the army (to train) in modern ways of fighting, and one of the things they (to show) was how an unarmed man could trick an armed enemy. 16. And all the things that seem serious, important and full of meaning to us now (to forget) one day.

17. Rooney said, "These two men insisted that the watch (to steal). What have you got to say to that?" 18. You thought that letter (to destroy). How foolish of you! 19. They promised me in six months he(to cure). 20. Hair (to wear) dishevelled this year. 21. That pane of glass (to replace) to my certain knowledge at least eleven times, perhaps oftener. 22. Herb asked an obscene question. It (to taken up) and (to further) by the others. 23. Naturally, all her avarice (to awaken) at the mention of hidden gold. 24. How can you expect anyone to think well of us in that infamous book? 25. With old and young great sorrow (to follow) by a sleepless night. 26. My father (to expect) at any moment.

Exercise 61. Use the verb in brackets in *the* appropriate *passive* form.

1. Everything (to settle) twenty minutes after I arrived here. 2. But I don't know if any decision (to reach). 3. You can save your condolences until they (to need). 4. It's hardly a joking matter. Everything really (to burn)? 5. But I told her that in fact I (to punish) for my sin. 6 .Perhaps he (to kidnap). Just think of daddy paying ransom. 7. Your luggage (to send up), Signor. Would you care to see your room now? 8. I really wasn't jealous when he (to promote) – he deserved it. 9. Be kind, Rose, and tell me what (to decide) for me. 10. The tower soon (to finish), Miss Amy. 11. In just three hours the terms of the agreement (to settle) for good. 12. You've got a proof that that watch (to smash) in Sir James's pocket. 13. Sebastian knew exactly when the sea-turtle eggs (to hatch out) and we returned in time for it. 14. He heard Mr Alleyne cry after him that if the contract (not to copy) by evening Mr Crosbie would hear of the matter. 15. Time is something you only(to give) when you possess so much that you don't need it. 16. Next morning while the baggage (to stow away) in the prahus, Skelton asked the house boy whether he could say good-bye to Mrs Grange. 17. I feel sure we (not to follow) now. We have shaken them off. 18. Mrs Staverton was in the Privy Garden with a pistol in her hand from which two shots (to fire). 19. If you delay me any longer here, my experiments (to ruin). 20. I've found the box. – I knew it (not to throw away). 21. Suppose we all (to direct) from somewhere else by remote control? 22. I'll hear from him one of these days. Meanwhile I (to blackmail) again. 23. "I'm not expecting any gentlemen callers." – "Sometimes they come when they least (to expect)." 24. Where the

meeting (to hold) today? 25. While the brutal story (to recount), the prisoner stood with closed eyes. 26. These Southern homes all improperly (to heat). Open grates aren't enough.

Exercise 62. Use the verb in brackets in *the* appropriate *passive* form.

1. After the tragedy this place (to sell) to a big manufacturer fellow. 2. This is not 1914, remember! Since then, some new voices (to hear) in this world – loud voices. 3. There was no dust in the priest's hole. It (to sweep) out with a broom. 4. You (to sack)? ... Bad luck. What for? 5. He was examining a stain which obviously (to leave) in the bag by the severed hand. 6. We'd better not go through the garden any longer. At least not until we (to invite) to. 7. He inherited the estate from his father, to whom it (to grant) at the time of the dissolution of the monasteries. 8. Most of the big expresses stop there, and trains (to shunt, to sort) and (to make up). 9. One can get a wife any day of the week, but a place like this (to find) only once in a lifetime.

10. There were no prints on the syringe. It (to wipe) carefully. 11. "Life (to live) very much the same everywhere," he said rather wearily. "It wears different clothes." 12. Martha, in violent opposition to her parents, continually (to inform) that their influence on her was unalterable.

13. Remember how dreadfully my head (to cut) last time. 14. He (to try) and (to convict) for murder and piracy and (to hang) in London in 1701. 15. As soon as the signal (to give), every light in the building goes off. 16. This way, please, madame, your table on the terrace (to reserve) for you as usual. 17. You (to put) to no trouble in the matter. One of my staff (to supply) for the purpose. 18. Muriel was a Catholic and she often told you that she (to educate) in a convent. 19. I'm anxious that Sir George should get a little enjoyment before it's too late. He (to treat) like a worm for ten years. 20. But it may interest you to know that until every penny of that money you stole (to repay), you'll work for nothing. 21. As he passed through the hall he noticed that a fresh blotter (to place) on the writing desk. 22. I know what she'll endure. She (to starve, to torture) and (to humiliate). 23. As long as thoughts (to keep) under control there's no harm done. 24. Human troubles easily (to classify) into a few main heads. 25. I am not making anything out of it. But I know what (to make) out of it. 26. Make certain we (not to follow).

Exercise 63. Use the verb in brackets in *the* appropriate *passive* form.

1. Even at the airport when she (to fly down) here, she babbled a bit of her story before they could whisk her into an ambulance. 2. Two men (to capture) carrying revolvers manufactured in the United States. 3. This witness certainly (to subject) to a series of trying experiments during the last twenty-four hours. 4. She (to tell) not to come here. 5. When Oliver awoke next day, he discovered that the picture (to take away). 6. In her brain there was just one muddled idea – that her inheritance (to steal) and (to keep) from her by you and your mother. 7. She (to tell) that this

was the only safe way to carry money in Italy. 8. Every distinguished attention that (can, to pay), (to pay) to her. 9. I (not to allow) to sit at the banquet table. 10. He (to know) to be one of the best shots in England. 11. I suppose I had better write it at once. Such offers (not to repeat).

12. A man with a hideous smile and a hideous past. He (to ask) everywhere. 13. A person (can, to dispense) with. Indeed (must, to dispense) with. 14. Then she saw that they were passing through a big room where trolleys (to wheel) through side doors. 15. He held under his arm a gold-headed Malacca can which (to give) him by the Sultan of Perak. 16. The goods that dress (to make) of – it's light and thin – it's no protection. 17. This lottery (to win) by Mrs Robinson, the Constable's wife. 18. Although Martha did not know what misdemeanour she (to invite) to share she could not help smiling back. 19. I (to say) that she took drugs and that she hid herself from people. 20. I (to leave) half a million. Think of it, darling. 21. When he arrives he will not recognize his street: many new houses (to build). 22. On his fourth trial he (to award) a bronze medal. 23. It long (to understand) vaguely that the condition of a man's clothes has a certain effect upon the health of both body and mind. 24. She's a damn fit woman, I (to tell). 25. All of our economic agreements with the Japanese (to cancel) soon, of course. 26. I (to instruct) by the Vice Chancellor that in the circumstances he will not press for your immediate resignation.

Exercise 64. Use the verb in brackets in *the* appropriate *passive* form.

1. He then hides quietly in the secret chamber. The doors (to break) open and people rush in.

2. As the two men left the dining room, the doors (to throw) open for the first breakfasters of the day. 3. As the officers were leaving one of them (to hear) to say, "Wednesday is the worst day." 4. The child (to see) to leave the nursery home. 5. He told me that she (to order) never to see him again. 6. He (to let) out of prison without bail. 7. After a short interval, the American film star (to usher) in, and we rose to our feet. 8. I (to interrupt) in my work. And why? Because I am successful. 9. Don't let anyone out. I have reason to believe a girl (to kidnap) and that the man in the house did the kidnapping. 10. The plants (to water) and the photograph was open, though only a single record lay on the table beside it. 11. Her care and attention (cannot, to question). 12. The truth (must, to tell); she is too unconventional for him. 13. We (to allow) in due course to see the prisoner. 14. I believe there are admirable homes where people of that kind (to look after) and (to reform). 15. Little did he care what prices (to ask) for Cather's new pieces.

16. You mean, where I was during the time that Mark (to murder) in a tea shop? 17. It also (to agree) that aircraft taking off toward Meadowood would follow noise abatement. 18. I (to tell) that the ladies of Washington have refused to call on her. 19. And every single day I have to look on while the price (to pay) for me anew. 20. When George Willard went to work for the Winesburg Eagle he (to besiege) by Joe Welling. 21. A good deal of gossip (to hand round) at

these evenings. 22. That is the last moment at which he (to know) to have been alive. 23. He remained away till he (to inform) by a messenger that his guest had left. 24. His widow also (to provide) for. 25. Any evidence of the pleasure we may have sustained (to remove) long by then. 26. You can create your own explanation of why the gold (to unload) in front of a cover building for the CIA.

Exercise 65. Use the verb in brackets in *the* appropriate *passive* form.

1. Whatever I would say to you, I never (to misunderstand). 2. In the South it never (to consider) essential for a girl to have anything but prettiness and charm! 3. Oh, I (not to deceive) by this tomfoolery. 4. He (to see) running along the corridor by several passengers. 5. She (to hear) praying beside the bed of her child. 6. When I was a very small boy I (to make) to learn by heart certain of the fables of La Fontaine. 7. The sweet was composed of a very small ice, the paper in which it (to deliver) from the van at the back door. 8. It (to say) a great black man with an axe on his shoulders (to see) late that very evening coming out of the swamp, carrying a bundle
9. The hotel (to notify) that you'll be gone indefinitely. 10. Humans (to deny) the speed of animals. 11. The German papers told them that England (to wreck) by the Luftwaffe and the people were in a panic. 12. The monotony of my life (to break) from time to time by the girl I loved. 13. You say you (to want) by your family and you can't wait. 14. Just before he died, Tim Noonan told me he (to shoot) by Max Thaler. 15. Some natures (to coarsen) by love bestowed on them; others (to sway) and (to draw), (to warm) and (to soften) by what they feel to be a sort of miracle. 16. I do not want the match – I do not want to injure dear little Henry – but the idea (to give) me by circumstances. 17. The fracture was an old one and apparently (to accomplish) by the blow of a hammer. 18. I found on the mat a long letter from her which evidently just (to deliver) by hand. 19. I (to snub) by experts, and I've done some snubbing myself. 20. Very soon the lute (to take) down by a lovely white hand. 21. Soames thought that perhaps Irene knew she (to shadow). 22. My flat (to paint) all day yesterday. 23. You can't use this road. It (to repair). 24. The poor man (to treat) in various hospitals for three months but doesn't feel quite well yet. 25. Don't you see you (to give) an extraordinary opportunity? Don't lose it 26. So cold and sepulchral was this parlor that it never (to enter) except by corpses and their attendants.

Exercise 66. Translate the following sentences into English using the verbs in *the Passive Voice* where necessary.

1. რა მისწერეს მას ისეთი გასულ კვირას, რომ ლაპარაკიც არ უნდა ჩვენთან?
2. იჩქარე, თორემ იმ დროისთვის, როდესაც შენ იქ მიხვალ, ყველა წიგნი უკვე გაიყიდება. 3. ეერ ვიტან, როდესაც ჩემს პირად ნივთებში იქექებიან.

4. ფიქრობენ, რომ სწორედ მან ჩაიდინა ის დანაშული. 5 ეს ექიმი ცნობილია, როგორც უძლიერესი კარდიოლოგი თბილისში. 6. დაინახეს, როგორ ძერებოდა ის ხეზე. 7. ამბობენ, რომ ოკუპანტები ჯარს მალე გაიყვანენ საქართველოდან. 8. ამბობენ, რომ ის ახალგაზრდობაში კარგი მოცურავე იყო. 9. ამ რესტორანში მუდამ კარგ კერძებს ამზადებენ და მას უამრავი ხალხი სტუმრობს ყოველდღე. 10. მე არ მინდა, რომ დამცინონ. 11. ეს ვაშლები ეს-ეს არის დაკრიფეს. 12. თქვენ ყავა უკვე შემოგთავაზეს? 13. როდესაც სახლში მოვედი, ბინის კარი გაუტეხავთ და ყველაფერი წაუღიათ. 14. ხვალ ყველა სტუდენტს სთხოვენ, რომ სააქტო დარბაზში შეგროვდნენ. 15. რამდენი წელია, რაც აქ ხილი და ბოსტნეული მოჰყავთ? 16. როდესაც კრებაზე მივედი, ბოლო საკითხი იხილებოდა.

17. როდესაც ბოლო საეარჯიშო დაიწერა, მან რვეულები ჩანთაში ჩააწყო. 18. ამ ჟურნალში ძალიან საინტერესო სტატიები იბეჭდება. 19. როდის დაიწერება წერილი და როდის გააგზავნიან მას? 20. მას ხშირად აგზავნიან მიელინებაში. 21. მათ უთხრეს, რომ აქ მოწყვა აკრძალულია. 22. ენციკლოპედიაში ნებისმიერი ინფორმაციის მოძებნა შეიძლება. 23. ის გასულ კვირას ჩვენი კლუბის პრეზიდენტად აირჩიეს. 24. მას ისე ექცეოდნენ, როგორც დელეგაციის საპატიო წევრს. 25. დაინახეს, თუ როგორ შევიდა ის მაღაზიაში და როგორ გამოვიდა იქიდან ნახევარ საათში. 26. ჩვენ გვითხრეს, ხვალ თეატრში დაგპატიჟებთო.

27. მას ახლა ექიმი სინჯავს და როდესაც წამალს გამოუწერენ, რეცეპტი აფთიაქში უნდა მივიტანო. 28. რომელი ფილმი უჩვენეს დღეს ტელევიზიით? 29. ჩემს სახლს ჯერ კიდევ არემონტებენ. 30. მისი სურათი უკვე გაიყიდა?

Exercise 67. Translate the following sentences into English using the verbs in *the Passive Voice* where necessary.

1. მის ლექციებს ყოველთვის დიდი ინტერესით უსმენენ. 2. დარწმუნებული ვარ, მას დაეხმარებიან. 3. ყველა მოსაწვევი დაიწერა. მათი გაგზავნა უკვე შეიძლება. 4. ყველაფერი, რაც აქ ითქვა, მართალია. 5. ის პირველად მაშინ წაიყვანეს თეატრში, როდესაც მხოლოდ ხუთი წლის იყო. 6. ეს წიგნები თაროზე უნდა დაიდოს. 7. რატომ არ თქვეს ამის შესახებ კრებაზე? 8. რამდენი სახლი შენდება თქვენს ქალაქში ყოველ წელს? 9. ის ყველაფერი ლარნაკში შეიძლება ჩაიდოს. 10. კითხვების დასმა ლექციის ბოლოს შეიძლება. 11. ყველა ბილეთი უკვე გაუყიდიათ. ამ სპექტაკლზე ვერ მოეხვედებით. 12. მე რამდენჯერმე გამაფრთხილეს, რომ არ დამეგვიანა. 13. მან თქვა, რომ მისი სტატია უკვე ითარგმნა და მალე დაიბეჭდება. 14. არ იდარდო, იმ დროისათვის, როდესაც

დაბრუნდები, ყველა შენი პრობლემა უკვე მოგვარებული იქნება. 15. გასულ კვირას გადაწყდა, რომ დეკანის არჩევნები მომავალ კვირას ჩატარდება. 16. მე ვგრძნობ, რომ ქუჩაში, სამსახურში, ყველგან მითვალთვალებენ.

17. სტუდენტების ზუსტი სია ჯერ არ გამოქვეყნებულა. 18. როდესაც ყველა წიგნი გადათვალეს, აღმოჩნდა, რომ ათი წიგნი აკლდათ. 19. ბრბოში ის მხედველობიდან დაგვეკარგა. 20. მე ძალიან შევეცდები, გავაგებინო მათ ყველაფერი, მაგრამ არა მგონია, რომ მომისმინონ. 21. ეს ქუდი არ დაიხურო, თორემ დაგცინებენ. 22. ამ ბიჭს ახლა ოპერაციას უკეთებენ. 23. ჭადრაკის თამაში 5 წლის ასაკში მასწავლეს. 24. ბიჭი ვერ მიხვდა, თუ რატომ სჯიდნენ მას. 25. დამშვიდდი, ყვაილებს მიხედავენ, სანამ შენ იქ არ იქნები. 26. ის ძალიან ცდილობდა, რომ შთაბეჭდილება შეექმნა გამომცდელებზე, მაგრამ ყურადღება ვერ მიიქცია. 27. კარაქს რძისგან ამზადებენ. 28. წიგნი ახლა იბეჭდება და მაისიდან გაიყიდება. 29. რა ილაპარაკეს ჩემს შესახებ? გამკიცხეს? (to condemn). 30. გამოცდების საკითხი უკვე გადაწყდა?

Exercise 68. Translate the following sentences into English using the verbs in *the Passive Voice* where necessary.

1. როდესაც ჩემს მშობლიურ ქალაქში დავბრუნდი, შევამჩნიე, ბევრი ახალი სახლი აეშენებინათ და ქალაქი ძლივს ვიცანი. 2. ამ მოსწავლეებს უკვე სამი წელია ფრანგულს ასწავლიან. 3. როდის უნდა ითარგმნოს ეს სტატია? ხვალ გვიან იქნება? 4. მას უყვარს სხვის საქმეებში ჩარევა. ბევრჯერ უთხრეს, სხვის საქმეში ცხვირს ნუ ყოფო. 5. ამ ექიმს ხშირად იძახებენ. ის ძალიან გამოცდილ ექიმად ითვლება. 6. ამ მსახიობზე ბევრს ლაპარაკობენ. ის კარგადაა ცნობილი მრავალ ქვეყანაში. 7. ამ საბავშვო ბაღში ბავშვებს კარგად უვლიან, კარგად კვებავენ, უცხო ენას ასწავლიან და სასეირნოდაც დაჰყავთ. 8. ქორწილში მიდიხართ? – არ დაგვპატიჟეს? 9. რატომ არ შეგვატყობინეს ამის შესახებ? ჩვენ არაფერი ვიცოდით. 10. ასეთი კითხვა შეიძლება დაგისვან და ამიტომ ყველაფრისთვის მზად იყავით. 11. ასეთი საქციელი არავის ეპატიება. 12. ნებას გაძლევენ, რომ ეს გამოცდა მეორე სემესტრში გადაიტანოთ? 13. რატომ აუკრძალეს მას თბილისის დატოვება? რამე დანაშაულში ეჭვმიტანილია?

14. ჯერ არაფერი არ შემოგთავაზეს? დარწმუნებული ვარ, რომ ხვალ ან ზეგ თქვენ საკითს მოაგვარებენ. 15. თუ მოძრაობის წესებს არ დაიცავენ ჩვენს ქალაქში, ავარიების რიცხვი გაიზრდება. 16. მხოლოდ მას შემდეგ, რაც მოსწავლეებს ტექსტი ორჯერ წაუკითხეს, მათ სთხოვეს, რომ მისი შინაარსი

წერილობით გადმოეცათ. 17. მე ისე კარგად ამიხსნეს მისი მისამართი, რომ სახლს უცებ მივაგენი. 18. მისთვის ჯერ წერილი არ მიუწერიათ და მან არაფერი იცის ამის შესახებ. 19. რატომ არ მითხრეს, აქ რაც მოხდა გუშინ? 20. ასეთ ფეხსაცმელს გასულ საუკუნეში ატარებდნენ, ახლა კი ფეხსაცმლის მოდა სრულიად შეცვლილია. 21. მას ყველა დღესასწაულზე და ყველა შეხვედრაზე ეპატიჟებოდნენ, რადგან ყველგან პატივს სცემდნენ (მიაგებდნენ). 22. მთელ ფულს საახალწლო საჩუქრებზე დახარჯავენ. 23. დედამისი საავადმყოფოში გასულ კვირას წაიყვანეს და ახლა ოპერაციისთვის ამზადებენ. 24. მოცეკვავეებს დიდხანს უკრავდნენ ტაშს. 25. ეს წიგნი უკვე არსად არ იშოვება. ის უცებ გაიყიდა ყველა მაღაზიაში. 26. წელს ამ თეატრში ორი ახალი სპექტაკლი დადგეს. 27. პეკინის ოლიმპიადას თვალყურს ადევნებდნენ მთელს მსოფლიოში. 28. დარბაზში ისეთი ხმაური იყო, რომ არაფერი ისმოდა. 29. არ შეხვიდეთ ახლა იმ ოთახში, იატაკს ღებავენ. 30. გუშინ ორ ბილეთს შემპირდნენ და თუ დღეს გამომიგზავნეს, საღამოს დაგირეკავ და ხვალ თეატრში ერთად წავიდეთ. 31. შენი წიგნი უკვე დაიბეჭდა?

Exercise 69. Translate the following sentences into English using the verbs in *the Passive Voice* where necessary.

1. იჩქარე, სადგურში გელოდებიან. თუ დროზე არ მიხვალ, იცოდე, დაგტოვებენ. 2. ავადმყოფს ახლა სინჯავენ და მერე მკურნალობას დაუნიშნავენ. შეიძლება საავადმყოფოშიც დააწვინონ. 3. მოსწავლეებს ახალ გაკვეთილს უხსნიდნენ, როდესაც კარი შემოაღეს. 4. გაკვეთილის დამთავრებამდე ხუთი მოსწავლე გამოჰკითხეს. 5. ის ოთახი უკვე დაალაგეს, შეგიძლიათ შეხვიდეთ. 6. ბევრი ინგლისური სიტყვა სხვანაირად იწერება და გამოითქმება. 7. თუ მას ეტყვიან, რომ ის ნაშვილებია, გული ეტკინება. 8. ბევრჯერ გავაფრთხილე ისინი, ასე არ მოქცეულიყვნენ, მაგრამ ჩემს გაფრთხილებას არავითარი ყურადღება არ მიაქციეს. 9. შენთვის არასოდეს უსწავლებიათ, როგორ უნდა ელაპარაკო უფროსებს? უფროსებს პატივს მიაგებენ. 10. გამოცდების შედეგებს ორ დღეში გამოაქვეყნებენ. დარწმუნებული ვარ, თქვენ შვილს ინსტიტუტში მიიღებენ.

11. შეხედე! იმ სახლს ღებავენ, მაგრამ ფერი არ მომწონს. 12. ეს წამალი რეგულარულად უნდა მიიღონ. 13. ფიქრობენ, რომ ის მონაწილეობას მიიღებს დებატებში. 14. დადის ხმები, რომ თქვენ ესპანეთის ელჩად გნიშნავენ. მართალია? 15. მას ნიჭიერ ახალგაზრდად თვლიდნენ. 16. ლექციის ბოლოს პროფესორს ბევრი შეკითხვა დაუსვეს. 17. არ შეეხოთ ამ კიბეებს. ის ეს-ეს არის

შეღებეს. 18. ნუ ღელავ, ბავშვებს მიხედავენ – დროულად აჭმევენ და დააბინავებენ. 19. სასიყვარულო წიგნები ყოველთვის კარგად იყიდება. 20. ეს ყავა ეს-ეს არის აადუღეს. მიირთვით. 21. მე ეს-ეს არის ძალიან საინტერესო სამსახური შემომთავაზეს ახალ ოფისში, რომელიც გასულ კვირას გაიხსნა.

22. ის ექიმთან უკვე გააგზავნეს და ყოველ წუთს ველოდებით. 23. იტალიაში იტალიურად ლაპარაკობენ, საფრანგეთში – ფრანგულად. 24. წუხელ ჩემი მეზობლის ბინა გატეხეს (to break into). სახლში არავინ არ იყო. დილით პოლიციას გამოუძახეს, მაგრამ ჯერ-ჯერობით ქურდები ვერ იპოვეს.

25. ბავშვებს მეტი ხილი და ბოსტნეული უნდა მისცეთ, რადგან ისინი მდიდარია ვიტამინებით. 26. დღეს წყალიც გამოგვირთეს და გაზიც. არ ვიცი, სადილი როგორ მოვამზადო. – დაწყნარდი, დღეს ჩვენ რესტორანში ვართ დაპატიჟებული. 27. ისინი ამ სახლში უკვე რამდენიმე წელია არ ცხოვრობენ.

28. ყველა სარემონტო სამუშაო თვის ბოლოსთვის შესრულდება.

29. შეთანხმდნენ, რომ კრებას ორი დღით გადადებდნენ. 30. ცნობილია, რომ ის მონაწილეობას იღებდა შარშანდელ აჯანყებაში.

Exercise 70. Translate the following sentences into English using the verbs in *the Passive Voice* where necessary.

1. გამოცდების ცხრილში რამდენიმე ცვლილებაა შეტანილი, ამიტომ დროზე გაეცანით მას. 2. რატომ აკრიტიკებენ მას ყოველ კრებაზე? 3. ლექსიკონების გამოყენება გამოცდაზე აკრძალულია. 4. ამ მწერლის ნაწარმოებები ჯერ არ უთარგმნიათ სხვა ენაზე. ამიტომ მას მხოლოდ საქართველოში იცნობენ.

5. უხერხულად ეგრძნობ თავს, როდესაც მიყურებენ. 6. ამბობენ, რომ ფეხბურთი საქართველოში ინგლისიდან შემოვიდა. იმ დროიდან მას აქ წარმატებით თამაშობენ. 7. თქვენ არ აგიხსნეს, რა უნდა გააკეთოთ? 8. ის ახლახან საავადმყოფოში წაიყვანეს. 9. როდესაც სადილი გაამზადეს და სუფრა გაშალეს, სტუმრები მაგიდასთან მიიწვიეს. 10. საინტერესოა, რამდენჯერ შესრულდა ეს ნაწარმოები თქვენს ფილარმონიაში? 11. ამ წამალს ყველა აფთიაქში ეძებენ, მაგრამ ჯერ ვერ იპოვეს. 12. მე დარწმუნებული ვარ, რომ შენ დიდი ინტერესით მოგისმენენ, როდესაც მათ ამას მოუყვები. 13. გუშინ მას კრებაზე ელოდებოდნენ, მაგრამ ის არ მოვიდა. 14. ის საკითხი, რომელიც გუშინ კრებაზე იხილებოდა, ძალზე მნიშვნელოვანია. 15. როდესაც ჩვენ ამ ქალაქში ჩამოვედით, ქალაქის ცენტრში დიდი ძეგლი შენდებოდა. 16. მე მითხრეს, რომ ის მოიწვიეს ჩვენს ინსტიტუტში ლექციების წასაკითხად. 17. ბოლო წლებში ჩვენს ქალაქში

ბევრი ახალი სახლი აშენდა. 18. როდესაც ტელევიზორი ჩაერთე, ჩაიკოვსკის კონცერტს ასრულებდნენ. 19. რა საკითხებს შეეხებიან მომავალ კრებაზე? 20. ჩვენს სკოლაში ორ უცხო ენას ასწავლიან. 21. წელს ჩვენს ქალაქში ბევრი ახალი შადრევანი გაიხსნა. 22. რა შენდება თქვენი სახლის გვერდით? – სკოლა. უკვე ორი წელია მას აშენებენ. 23. ბავშვებს მეტი ყურადღება უნდა დაეთმოს. 24. ეს სამუშაო ვერ შესრულდება თქვენი დახმარების გარეშე. 25. ამ კამათს ბოლო უნდა მოეღოს (to put an end to). 26. ამ ინფორმაციას არ შეიძლება დაეყრდნო (to rely on). 27. როდესაც დედა სახლში მოვა, ყველა ჭურჭელი უკვე გარეცხილი იქნება. 28. 7 საათისთვის სუფრა გაშლილი იყო. 29. თუ ყვავილებს რეგულარულად არ მორწყავენ, ისინი დაჭკნება. 30. არ მესმის, რატომ ლაპარაკობენ ამდენს ამ წიგნზე.

Test Your Knowledge

Exercise 1. Put the verbs in brackets in the appropriate form.

1. Mrs Sabin (to take) particular pains to tell me that she (to be going) to be in the saddle and that if I (to say) anything to anybody I (to suffer) for it. 2. Paul Drake (to wait) for Mason in the lobby of the Plaza Hotel in San Molinas. He (to look) at his watch and (to say): "You (to be) late, Perry, but Gibbs (to wait) for you." 3. I (to tell) them that I (to repay) my mother's debt as soon as I (to earn) enough. 4. Gabriel (to watch) his wife, who (not to join) in the conversation. She (to stand) right under the dusty fanlight and the flame of the gas (to light up) the rich bronze of her hair, which he (to see) her drying at the fire a few days before. 5. He (to go) to the changers' office and (to gasp) when twenty thousand franc notes (to spread) out before him. He never (to have) so much money in his life. He (to put) it in his packet and (to turn) away when the woman to whom he (to lend) the thousand francs (to come up) to him. 6. Annabel's eyes(to brim) again, responding to his sympathy. At the door, he (to meet) with the press who just (to arrive), and who (to surge) past him without wasting words, and (to enter) the big room. 7. But the person who just (to open) the outer door and now (to stand) at the other side of the frosted glass partition (to be) obviously not Mr Dersingham, so Turgis (to go) out to discover the caller's business. 8. She (not to be) there more than a few minutes when Evelyn Ansdell burst in, crying: "My dear, mother (to be) on the phone. Do go in and talk to father until I (to come) back. If you (not to do) it, he (to come) down and (to do) something absurd. I (to be) as quick as I can." 9. "A father (to have) his feelings, Miss Mattie. We (not to hear) much about them. He (to keep) them to himself. He (to hide) them, (to bury) them," he (to continue). "An Englishman

(not to like) to make a display of these things. If we (to suffer), Miss Mattie, we (to like) to suffer in silence. Isn't that so?" 10. She laughed. She (to be) a nice little thing, even though Tergis (to keep) on grumbling about her. But he (not to grumble) so much lately. He (not to do) anything much lately, except get on with his work – he (to do) that all right – and then sit mooning. 11. "What I (to feel), Smeeth," (to say) Mr Dersingham, after a few preliminaries, "is that you (to do) your bit for the firm, and the firm now ought to do its bit for you. You (to have) a good deal of extra work lately, just as we all (to have)?" 12. It (to be) a very busy time for me – and I (to be) glad to say so, sir." "For me too I (to put) by back into it these last few weeks. Jolly heavy going, if you (to ask) me." 13. While we (to wait) he (to bring out) the catapult which (to bulge) from his inner pocket and (to explain) some improvements which he (to make) in it. I (to ask) him why he (to bring) it, and he (to tell) me he (to bring) it to have some gas with the birds.

Exercise 2. Put the verbs in brackets in the appropriate form.

1. We (to wander) around for a good five minutes before anyone (to come). Then the plastic strip curtain over a recessed doorway (to part), and the gallery keeper (to come) gently through. 2. By the time Jik and Sarah (to come back) I (to give) a bed, (to climb) into it, and (to feel) absolutely rotten. 3. "The police (to be) to the motel," Jik (to say). "We (to tell) them about the picture being missing, but I (not to think) they (to do) much more about it unless you (to tell) them the whole story." 4. I didn't even know if I (to recognize) my attackers again if I (to see) them. Certainly not the one who (to be) behind me, because I (not to have) a single straight look at him. 5. Sarah said, "We (to ask) the girl in the reception desk at the motel if anyone (to ask) for us." "And they had?" She (to nod). 6. Why the girl (not to tell) us someone (to enquire) for us?" "She (to go off) for a coffee break, and (not to see) us when we (to come back). And after that, she (to forget)." 7. "If you (to get thrown) out of the Hilton's windows, you (not to be) alive to tell the tale," he (to say) cheerfully. "They (not to open) far enough," I (to say). "It's impossible." 8. I opened my eyes. She (to walk) towards the back of the aeroplane and (to stand) in the aisle beside my seat. 9. By the time she (to come out), I (to assemble) a few more wits, and (to stop) her with the flap of the hand. "Sarah You (to follow) to the airport. I (to think) you very likely (to follow) from Melbourne.Tell Jik to take a taxi, spot the tail, lose him
10. He (to give) me the impression that he (to repeat) something which he (to learn) by heart or that, magnetized by some words of his own speech, his mind slowly (to circle) round and round in the same orbit. 11. I too (to listen); but there (to be) no sound in the house, and I (to know) that the old priest (to lie) still in his coffin as we (to see) him, solemn and truculent in death.
12. He (to walk) swiftly down Hendrietta Street. The golden sunset (to wane), and the air (to

grow) sharp. A horde of grimy children (to populate) the street. 13. A young well-dressed Negro (to meet) me on the steps and (to ask) me whether I (to need) a room. I (to say) I (to come) to see "Madame la Comtesse" – I couldn't keep the double-barrelled name in mind and I (to leave) the postcard in my hotel room. 14. I (to be disappointed) if you (not to wish) to come with me but I (to sail) on the sixteenth. I never (to have) much fun 15. She (to put) her arm lovingly round Charlies's neck. "You (to be) simply wonderful. I (to shake) like a leaf when I (to come) here and you (to make) everything all right." 16. But once when Sam (to tell) one of his stories, a strange boy (to join) the children. Nobody (to know) his name and nobody (to see) him before. 17. He never (to choose) between Tonya and Lara. He still (to love) his wife and (not to want) to hurt her in any way. At home he (to feel) like a criminal. He (to know) he (to put) his family's happiness and safety at risk.

Exercise 3. Put the verbs in brackets in the appropriate form.

1. I don't know if it (to happen) to you at all, but a thing I (to notice) with myself is that, when I (to confront) by a problem which (to seem) for the moment to stump and baffle, a good sleep often (to bring) the solution in the morning. 2. The response was prompt. The door (to pull) open, he (to seize) by the arm, (to pull) through into the farther compartment and the girl (to close) and (to bolt) the door behind him. Robert (to catch) his breath. Never he (to imagine) anything so lovely. She (to wear) a long foamy garment of cream chiffon and lace. She (to lean) against the door into the corridor, panting. Robert often (to read) of beautiful hunted creatures at bay. Now, for the first time, he (to see) one – a thrilling sight. 3. "You (to accomplish) your mission in the most satisfactory manner," (to say) the stranger. "You (to prepare) to undertake a further one?" 4. The evening was a great success. Mrs Packington (to be) a good dancer as a girl. Under Claude Luttrell's skilled guidance she soon (to pick up) modern steps. He (to congratulate) her on her gown and also on the arrangement of her hair. (An appointment (to make) for her that morning with a fashionable hairdresser). On bidding her farewell, he (to kiss) her hand in a most thrilling manner. Mrs Packington (not to enjoy) an evening so much for years. 5. It was one o'clock when they (to arrive) at Teheran. There were more police formalities. The German pilot (to come) up and (to stand) by smiling as Mr Parker Pyne (to finish) answering a long interrogation which he (to understand). 6. She shook her head in disbelief. She (to tremble) slightly now. She (to look) away from him. "I (to like) to have tea," she (to say). She (to lead) the way into the kitchen, a tiny room where a kettle (to boil) on a charcoal hibachi. She (to busy) herself with the preparation of the tea, not looking at him. "I (cannot, to believe) that you (to be) here," she (to say). 7. He (to stop) at an outdoor tea pavilion and (to eat) lunch; then, as he (to pay) the cashier, his eyes (to fall) on a rack of garish postcards

and there it was, a picture of her house 8. The envelope was at the hotel desk "This (to come) by messenger?" Calder (to say). The clerk (to look) puzzled, apologetic. "I not (to know), sir," he (to say). "It (to leave) at the dcck while I (to answer) a call at the switchboard, at about seven o'clock. But the first two (to deliver) by messenger?" "Yes, sir. That (to be) correct."
9. "Now, I'll do what I can about it but I (to want) your word you (to do) nothing further about the matter until I (to tell) you to. It (to be) your plan to stay here until the conference (to finish) and then you (to fly) to Washington."

Exercise 4. Put the verbs in brackets in the appropriate form.

1. Anne (to turn) toward the young man who (to stand) in a corner trying to look inconspicuous. He (to dart) forward, (to shake) hands and (to recede) back against the wall. 2. "Good luck on Monday," Anne (to say) lamely. "I (to see) you then, when you (to come) with Gino and Allen. Remember, we (to have) a big date after the show." 3. "It's your fault. After all, what is a girl supposed to do? She can't walk up to a man and say," By the way, even though we just (to meet), I (to think) you (to be) the man I (to wait) for." 4. I (to think) it's a marvellous idea. Believe me, the first girl who (to do) that sort of thing certainly (to make) an impression. Especially if she (to look) like you. Now you settle down on the couch and I (to fix) us a drink. I (to give) you a light Scotch. It (to help) you relax." 5. "You (not to have) to destroy me. I'm only a middle-aged woman who (to love) you and (to want) to do what you (to want) to do. I (to destroy) two or three times already. You wouldn't want to destroy me again, would you?" 6. I (to talk) now, then; because I (to leave) this afternoon. What these plutocrats (to give) you for looking important around here?" 7. "How would you like to come back to Richmond? You (to be) over here eight years and you (not to know) the opportunities you (to miss). 8. "My husband (to feel) unwell for some weeks," she (to say) concisely. "Nevertheless, he (not to complain) in a way to make me uneasy. He suddenly (to collapse); he cannot articulate or move his limbs.
9. After the bridal party (to photograph), there was a group of the ushers Later, Caroline, (to come) and (to pluck) Michael off the floor. 10. You (to remember) how I (to start) smoking a pipe? When we (to court). You (to give) me one once for my birthday and (to tell) me to start smoking it because it (to make) me look more distinguished! So I (to smoke) one ever since. I (to get used) to it quick enough, and I (to like) it now. I never (to be) without it in fact. 11. As he (to sit) there, living over his life with her and evoking alternately the two images in which he now (to conceive) her, he (to realize) that she (to be) dead, that she (to cease) to exist, that she (to become) a memory. 12. He (to exchange) some words with a Tonton Macoute at the door and by the time I (to emerge) he (to find) me a taxi. "Sit down, Mr Brown. Your luggage just (to come)."

Exercise 5. Put the verbs in brackets in the appropriate form.

1. "What time you (to wake up)?" "Not until after eight o'clock," she said. 2. "You (to be) boring! I never (to know) anyone to make such commonplace observations in so relationary a tone!" 3. I ever (to tell) you about my cook? It (to happen) while you (to be) away. I (to give) a dinner for my colleagues and my cook simply (to disappear). No marketing (to do). He (to pick up) in the street on the way to market. My wife (to have) to open the tins we (to keep) for an emergency." 4. Dr Macphail (to tell) them again what he (to know) of the tragedy. At last the door quietly (to open) and Mrs Davidsome (to come) out. Silence (to fall) upon them. 5. I (to come) in here, week in and week out, for Mr Benenden's Own Mixture for years. 6. You see, we (to be) together all our lives, more or less, since my people (to die). 7. "Of course you (to belong) here, Mr Brown. You (to be) a true friend of Haiti". He (to giggle) again. "All the same many true friends (to leave) us recently". 8. But now he (to weep), sitting straight upright in his chair; he (to weep) with great dignity and I (to think): "I never (to see) a coloured man weep before." I (to see) them laughing, angry, frightened, but never overcome like this man with inexplicable grief. 9. His name is Frank Bevins. I (not to think) he (to say) anything to the officers. In fact, I (to gather) from what he (to tell) me, he (not to want) to have any contact with the officers. I (to think) the man may be wanted himself. He (to tell) me he (to have) some information he (to give) me for fifty dollars. 10. "You (to think) what's going to happen to Priscilla now, what her existence (to be) like? You (to take) her life, now you (to discard) her. "Well, she (to take) my life too. She (to take) years and years from me when I might have been happy and living in the open!" 11. Jik (to stand) also, but I (to know) from the jut of his beard which way he'd vote. It (to be) he who (to choose) the bad-weather routes we (to take) into the Atlantic and the North Sea. At heart he (to be) more reckless than I. 12. She (to stand) up in a sudden impulse of terror. Escape! She must escape! Frank (to save) her. He (to give) her life, perhaps love, too. But she (to want) to live. Why should she be unhappy? She (to have) a right to happiness. Frank (to take) her in his arms, fold her in his arms. He (to save) her. 13. "They (to take) him to the mortuary. We'd better go down with her. How she (to take) it?" "I (to think) she's stunned. She (not to cry). But she (to tremble) like a leaf." 14. An incredible sound (to assault) their ears. The gramophone which (to be) silent for so long (to play).

Exercise 6. Choose the correct answer.

Model: *Hurry up, you for.*

A. are waiting *B. are waited* *C. being waited* *D. are being waited*

1. Half the street in the middle of the night.

A. roused B. were rousing C. rousing D. was roused

2. It never occurred to him that he

A. was not wanted B. was not being wanted C. did not want D. is not wanted

3. You already that Mr Ackroyd didn't want to be disturbed.

A. had told B. are told C. told D. had been told

4. His room meticulously by the other three men.

A. was searching B. searched C. had been searched D. had searched

5. It that he's in Europe.

A. rumoured B. was rumoured C. has been rumoured D. is rumoured

6. It us what we are to do.

A. will be shown B. are shown C. had shown D. showed

7. Can't you stop when you to?

A. spoke B. were spoken C. will be spoken D. are spoken

8. The medical records down.

A. will fly B. are being flown C. have flown D. have being flown

9. Remember that you worse if you don't keep your mouth closed.

A. will beat B. will be beaten C. are beaten D. were beaten

10. I don't think you without strong supporting evidence.

A. are convicted B. had convicted C. would be convicted D. convicted

11. I'm afraid only the principals to this party.

A. invite B. have invited C. being invited D. are invited

12. Here, you many things.

A. taught B. will have taught C. been taught D. will be taught

13. He looks and acts demented whenever his name
A. mentioned B. will be mentioned C. is mentioned D. will mentioned

14. The wedding till another day.
A. postponed B. was been postponed C. will postpone D. has been postponed

15. But such great pains to inform us of his existence that I had to turn you loose.
A. had taken B. had been taken C. were being taken D. were taking

16. My shirts at a Chinese laundry.
A. washed B. are washed C. were washing D. has been washed

17. Dinner by the time you come back from school.
A. will have cooked B. will cook C. will have been cooked D. will be cooking

18. Fernly Park by Roger Ackroyd.
A. owns B. is owning C. is being owned D. is owned

19. When Mr Ackroyd last alive?
A. has been seen B. was seen C. saw D. was being seen

20. I for by the Duchess of Hampshire.
A. sent B. was sending C. have been sent D. had sent

21. They will move in as soon as the house
A. will be built B. will have built C. has been built D. builds

22. It was a card he by someone.
A. was given B. had been given C. gave D. was been given

23. All these things in a hundred years.
A. were forgotten B. had been forgotten C. will be forgotten D. will forget

24. It that later he would permanently settle in the district.

A. is understood B. was understanding C. was understood D. had understood

25. "Can I have gin?" "Oh no, it for your friends."

A. is being kept B. are kept C. were been kept D. will keep

26. You me by God himself.

A. sent B. have been sent C. had sent D. are sent

27. His mobile phone rang when he

A. examined B. was examined C. was being examined D. had examined

28. The performance was long over, but the actors still

A. were applauding B. were being applauding C. were applauded D. were being applauded

29. By the middle of this century medicines for many common illnesses.

A. will have been invented B. will be invented C. will have invented D. will be inventing

30. He strictly for many months.

A. is watched B. was been watched C. has been watched D. had watched

Exercise 7. Choose the correct answer. See the model of the previous exercise.

1. He was quick to tell everyone that no accusations

A. have been made B. had been made C. are being made D. will be made

2. You thought I

A. have been fired B. had been fired C. had fired D. fired

3. The miniature to Miss Penn tomorrow.

A. is returned B. will have returned C. will be returned D. will be returning

4. She listened, but could not follow what

A. was said B. was being said C. had been said D. was saying

5. He as a gentleman in the city.

A. was treating B. had treated C. have been treated D. was being treated

6. You a thousand times that my heart can't take your jokes.

A. were told B. have been told C. are being told D. had being told

7. The tickets when I came to the station.

A. were sold out B. had been sold out C. have sold out D. had sold out

8. It was obvious that he as well as I.

A. was consulted B. had been consulted C. was been consulted D. has consulted

9. When the toast he threw open a window significantly.

A. was drunk B. has been drunk C. had been drunk D. is drunk

10. By the end of the century new forms of energy

A. will be developed B. will be developing C. will have been developed D. will develop

11. My neighbour in connection of the bank robbery.

A. is questioning B. is being questioned C. has being questioned D. had questioned

12. Won't you tell me what it is that ?

A. are stolen B. is being stolen C. has been stolen D. had stolen

13. My sanity in question tonight.

A. was called B. has called C. is calling D. has been called

14. He knows the ropes. He yet.

A. wasn't charged B. hadn't charged C. hasn't been charged D. isn't charging

15. He one morning by an old civil service colleague.

A. has phoned B. had been phoned C. has been phoned D. was phoned

16. Whenever David's name he looked vaguely at the sky.

A. has been mentioned B. had mentioned C. had being mentioned D. was mentioned

17. She the next day by Billy O'Brien.

A. was visited B. had visited C. has been visited D. has visited

18. This places me in a most embarrassing position. I to detain her.

A. am forcing B. shall force C. shall be forced D. being forced

19. My conduct must tell you how I

A. have brought up B. have been brought up C. was bringing up D. had being brought

20. With old and young great sorrow by a sleepless night.

A. is being followed B. is followed C. have been followed D. had followed

21. As we into Mr Wood's suite, we had no time for more discussion.

A. were shown B. had shown C. were being shown D. are being shown

22. It was Angela's first visit and it at her own suggestion.

A. was made B. was being made C. had made D. has been made

23. He looked about him, conscious that he closely from between those square red fingers.

A. had been watched B. is watching C. was being watched D. had being watched

24. It's the finest peace gesture that ever

A. was attempted B. has been attempted C. is being attempted D. has attempted

25. The boat for the next week and is on standby anytime you want it.

A. was rented B. is been rented C. is renting D. has been rented

26. Human troubles easily into a few main heads.

A. are classified B. will classify C. have been classified D. have classified

27. He reached the ancient little pile when the door , and he was the first to enter.

A. was opened B. was being opened C. has opened D. is been opening

28. For a while he even at the club.

A. was not seen B. has not been seen C. is not seeing D. has not seen

29. So off they went to cafes and cabarets where someone always the night before.

A. was shot B. have been shot C. was shooting D. had been shot

30. Then a whistle from the kitchen.

A. was hearing B. had heard C. was heard D. has been heard.

Exercise 8. Translate the following into English.

1. თუ გინდა, რომ პროფესორმა კარგი ნიშანი დაგიწეროს, წაიკითხე მისი მონოგრაფია. მე დარწმუნებული ვარ, რომ ის კითხვებს თავის წიგნიდან დაგისვამს. 2. ჩვენ თითქმის ერთი საათი ველოდეთ მას ავტობუსის გაჩერებაზე, მაგრამ ერთი საათი რომ გავიდა, გადავწყვიტეთ დაგვერეკა მისთვის. მას ადრე არასოდეს დაუგვიანია და ვიცოდით, რომ რაღაც სერიოზული შეემთხვა. 3. ჩემი ძმა ძალიან ჯიუტია. ის ყოველთვის ყველას ეკამათება. თუ მას ცოლი გაექცევა, საკუთარ თავს დააბრალოს. 4. როდესაც თბილისში ჩამოვედი, ძლიერ ვიცანი ქალაქი. სახლები შეუღებავთ სხვადასხვა მყვირალა ფერებში და ეს ძალიან განსხვავდებოდა იმ სახლებისგან, რომლებიც ორი წლის წინ დავტოვე.

5. მაინტერესებს, როდის ჩატარდება კრება და საერთოდ ჩატარდება თუ არა, რადგან დირექტორი მიელინებიდან ჯერ არ დაბრუნებულა. 6. ხომ ვერ მათხოვებ წიგნს, რომელიც გასულ კვირას იყიდე? – მე ის ჯერ არ დამიმთავრებია. – კი მაგრამ, კიდევ არ მორჩი წაკითხვას? შენ ხომ მას უკვე ხუთი დღეა, რაც კითხულობ. 7. მე ვერაფერს ვიტყვი ანას საქმროს შესახებ, რადგან არ მინახავს თვითონ, მაგრამ ვიცი, რომ მას ძალიან აქებენ. 8. რა კარგია, რომ ჩვენს გვერდით ახალი სპორტული მოედანი გაიხსნა ამ თვეს. ახლა უკვე არ მეშინია ჩემი ბიჭების გამო. ვიცი, რომ სხვაგან არსად წავალენ, იქ დილიდან საღამომდე ფეხბურთს ითამაშებენ. 9. სად შენდება თქვენს ქალაქში ახალი მეტროს სადგური? 10. რადგან მთელი დღე მოხსენებას ვწერდი და ძალიან დაღლილი ვიყავი, საღამოს გარეთ გავედი სასეირნოდ. თოვლი უკვე შეწყდა, მაგრამ მსუბუქი ნიავი ქროდა. 11. შეხედე იმ კაცს, ხელს გვიქნევს. ვინ არის? იცნობ? – როგორ არა, ის ჩვენი მეზობელი ნიკოა. ისიც ფეხბურთის მატჩზე მიდის. 12. დედა სუფრას შლიდა, როცა ტელეფონმა დარეკა.

13. როდესაც წვეულებაზე მივედი, ყველა ცეკვავდა და ჩვენ ყურადღება არავინ მოგვაქცია. 14. გუშინ მთელი საღამო ტელევიზორს ვუყურებდი – ოლიმპიადის

საზეიმო გახსნა იყო. 15. ნელი, ხელები ისეთი ციცი გაქვს. რას აკეთებდი? – ანასთან ერთად ეზოში ვგუნდაობდი. 16. მაგიდაზე ცარიელი ღვინის ბოთლები და ჭიქებია. რას აღნიშნავდით? – ჩვენი სპორტული გუნდის გამარჯვებას შეჯიბრში. 17. თეალები გაწითლებული გაქვს. არ გეძინა? 18. როგორც იქნა, წვიმამ გადაიღო. მოდი, სასეირნოდ წავიდეთ. 19. თქვენ ეს ვინმეს უთხარით? – მხოლოდ ვალერის. საიდუმლოდ, რა თქმა უნდა. 20. მათ ფილმი უკვე ნახეს და ახლა ჭადრაკს თამაშობდნენ.

Exercise 9. Translate the following into English.

1. როდესაც სახლში მიველდი, დედას სადილი უკვე გაემზადებინა და ჩვენ გველოდებოდა. 2. როდესაც კარი შემოაღო, მიხედა, რომ რაღაცა მოხდა სახლში. 3. ჩემი შვილი ცოცხალია, ახლა არ შეუძლია ჩემთან ჩამოსვლა, მაგრამ დადგება ის დღე, როდესაც დამიბრუნდება. 4. გზაში თომასს ეკითხე: მამა შეედი მყავს, დედა დანიელი. სად გირჩევნია ცხოვრება? – რა თქმა უნდა, შეედეთში. 5. ჩემს შესახებ რა იცი, – გააგრძელა სოფიამ. – ბევრი არაფერი, – უპასუხა გარსეევანმა. 6. – როგორ ახერხებ მერე ამ ხელფასით მათ რჩენას? შენი ცოლი არ მუშაობს, მერე კიდევ, პატარა ბავშვს რამდენი რამ სჭირდება? – დაინტერესდა სანდრო. 7. თქვენ უკვე აგიხსნეს, როგორ უნდა იმოქმედოთ?

8. პეტრეს უკვე ერთი საათია, რაც ყველგან ეძებენ. ხომ არ იცით, სად წავიდა? 9. ეს წერილი დირექტორს უნდა გადაეცეს. 10. ათი საათისათვის ყველა ბილეთი უკვე გაიყიდება. 11. ახლა ჩემი მეგობრები ანას დაბადების დღეზე არიან, ცეკვავენ, მღერიან და ხუმრობენ. მეც მინდა მათთან ვიყო, მაგრამ ხვალ გამოცდას ვაბარებ და ახლა ვზიეარ და ახალ სიტყვებს ვიზეპირებ, გრამატიკის წესებს ვიმეორებ. 12. ხვალ მთელი დღე ბიბლიოთეკის სამკითხველო დარბაზში ვიმუშაებ. 13. შენ უნდა აგვიხსნა, რა მოხდა იმ დღეს თქვენს ბინაში. 14. სად იყავი გუშინ საღამოს? – კინოში წავედი. – ფილმი მოგეწონა? – ძალიან. 15. რას გააკეთებ ხვალ შვიდიდან რვამდე? – სტატიას ვთარგმნი. 16. ნიკო თავის პატარა დას ათამაშებს, სანამ დედა სადილს გაამზადებს. 17. ის ახლა მოხსენებას წერს, მაგრამ როგორც კი მორჩება, თვითონ დაგირეკავთ. 18. როგორც იქნა, დადგა ის დღე, რომელსაც მე ასე დიდხანს ველოდი. 19. ისინი რუსეთში გადასახლდნენ მას შემდეგ, რაც საქართველოში ოცი წელი იცხოვრეს.

20. ახალი კაბა იყიდე? – არა, ეს კაბა უკვე ორი წელია, რაც მაცვია. 21. თუ სტუმრებს შვიდ საათზე მოიყვან, იმ დროისთვის მე ყველაფერი გამზადებული მექნება. 22. ვიგრძენი, რომ ვიღაცა მითვალთვალებდა. მოვტრიალდი და ჩემს

უკან ყოფილი თანაკლასელი ნიკო იდგა. მე ის დიდი ხანი არ მყავდა ნანახი და ძალიან გამიხარდა. 23. ხვალ თერთმეტ საათზე მოდი ოფისში. იმ დროისთვის დირექტორი უკვე მოაწერს ხელს შენს მიელინებაზე და იქედან პირდაპირ აეროპორტში წახვალ.

Exercise 10. Translate the following into English.

1. დენი ყურადღებით ისმენდა და დროდადრო თავს აქნევდა. შემდეგ ყურმილში ჩასძახა: – კარგით, მე და პიტი გამოვდივართ! – მერე მე შემომხედა და თქვა – მისის მეისფილდი იპოვეს. 2. მარიკას არ ეუპასუხე, რა აზრი ჰქონდა მისთვის იმის მოყოლას, რაც ენახე და განეიცადე. უსიტყვოდ მოებრუნდი და ნანგრევებისკენ გაეემართე. 3. მეორე დილას ანას საკმაოდ გეიან გამოეღვიძა. კეროლი უკვე წასულიყო. ანა ადგა, სასადილოში სასაუზმოდ ჩავიდა და შემდეგ კოლეჯის ბაღში გაისეირნა. 4. ბედისწერა განაგებს ადამიანის ცხოვრებას და ვინც მის საქმეში შეეცდება ჩარევას, უბედურება ელის. 5. წელს თბილისში უამრავი ახალი სტადიონი და პარკი გაიხსნა. ბავშვები გახარებულები არიან.
6. მას უთხრეს, რომ ბიბლიოთეკა დაკეტეს საშობაო არდადეგების გამო. 7. რა გასაკვირია, რომ ის არ დაპატიჟეს. მან რამდენიმე უღირსი საქციელი ჩაიდინა. 8. ეს ტექსტი დროზე უნდა ითარგმნოს. 9. შენ დაგცინებენ, თუ ამ ფეხსაცმელს ჩაიცმავ. 10. თავს როგორ გრძნობ? სიცხე ხომ არა გაქვს? 11. როგორც კი აციედება, ბუხარში ცეცხლს დავანთებთ. 12. ფულს არ მოგცემ, თუ ისევ სიგარეტს იყიდი. 13. თუ ხუთი საათისთვის არ დამირეკავ, არ დაგელოდები და უშენოდ წავალ. 14. ხვალ ამ დროს ფეხბურთს ვითამაშებ ბიჭებთან ერთად ჩვენს ეზოში. 15. გარეთ ბნელოდა. მზე უკვე ჩასული იყო. 16. მას ძალიან შიოდა. მთელი დღე არაფერი ეჭამა. 17. მამას ყველა გაზეთი წაეკითხა და უკვე იცოდა, რაც ჩვენ შეგვემთხვა. 18. რამდენი ხანია ისინი დაქორწინებულები არიან? – უკვე ორი წელია. 19. მე არასოდეს არ მინახავს ეს სპექტაკლი, მაგრამ ბევრი წამიკითხავს მის შესახებ გაზეთებში. 20. ხედავ იმ კაცს, რომელიც ქუჩის კუთხეში დგას? – რომელ კაცს, სიგარეტს რომ ეწევა? – არა, რომელსაც შავი სათვალეები უკეთია. ის ჩვენი ლექტორია. 21. ამ გაზეთს უკვე ოცი წელია ეკითხულობ. მასში ყოველთვის ძალიან საინტერესო სტატიები იბეჭდება მიმდინარე პოლიტიკურ საკითხებზე. 22. უკვე წაიკითხე რა წერია იმ წერილში? როგორც კი მას წაიკითხავ, აზრი შეგეცვლება ბევრ რამეზე. 23. "როგორ დაიჯერე ასეთი სისულელე? ჩვენ დროში კეთილი ჯადოქრები არ არსებობენ, აღარც ბოროტები, სხვათა შორის", – ამბობდა მისის უაიტი.

Exercise 11. Translate the following into English.

1. – ეს რა ჰქენი! – შესძახა მამაჩემმა ჩემს დანახვაზე. – ახალი თანამშრომელი აიყვანე – ეს როგორ გაბედე! გიკრძალავ, გესმის? 2. როდესაც დერეფანში გაეიდნენ, ნინომ რეზოს ჰკითხა: – რა ოპერაცია გაგიკეთეს? რამე სერიოზულია? 3. თქვენ აქ დიდი ხანია ხართ? – მკითხა გოგონამ. – დიახ! ჩვენ აქ უკვე ორი წელია ვართ. 4. სასტუმრო ოთახში შეეედი და აივანთან მდგარ საავარძელში ჩაეჯექი. – რაღაც მოგიტანე, – მითხრა უილმორმა. კოლოფი, რომელიც ხელში ეჭირა, კალთაში ჩამიდო და გეერდით მომიჯდა. კოლოფისთვის არც კი დამიხედავს. 5. 2008 წელს უკვე ოცი წელი გახდება, რაც მისტერ სმიტი ამ ქარხანაში მუშაობს. 6. წლის ბოლოსთვის მე უკვე ათი ინგლისური რომანი მექნება წაკითხული. 7. დილიდან გაზეთებს ათვალიერებს და ჯერ მეტი არაფერი გაუკეთებია, ხვალ კი გამოცდა აქვს. საინტერესოა, როგორ აპირებს გამოცდის ჩაბარებას. 8. რამდენი ხანია, რაც სათვალეებს ატარებ? ბავშვობაში შენ სათვალეებს არ ატარებდი. 9. როდესაც ჭიდან წყლის ამოღება დაეაპირეთ, აღმოჩნდა, რომ ჭა დამშრალა – ზაფხული ძალიან ცხელი იყო. 10. მას შემდეგ, რაც მან ტორტის ორი დიდი ნაჭერი შეჭამა, განაცხადა, რომ მეტს ვერაფერს ვერ შეჭამს. 11. მე ახლა მანქნის ტარებას ვსწავლობ, რადგან ვიცი, რომ მამა დაბადების დღეზე მანქანას მიყიდის. 12. უხერხულია მასთან ასე ადრე დარეკეა. ის გუშინ გვიან დაბრუნდა და ალბათ ჯერ კიდევ სძინავს. 13. მას შემდეგ, რაც მათ ტელევიზორი იყიდეს, ბებია სულ ტელევიზორთან ზის და მექსიკურ სერიალებს უყურებს. 14. როდესაც ეზოში გაევედით, ბალახი სველი იყო. უწვიმია. 15. ერთი საათი მდინარეში ბანაობდნენ, როდესაც წვიმა წამოვიდა.

16. როდესაც ოთახში შეეედი, ჩემმა ბიჭმა უცებ რადაცა შეინახა. სიგარეტის სუნი იდგა. მივხვდი, რომ ეწეოდა. 17. უკვე ნახევარი საათი ეწერდით ტექსტს, როდესაც ზარი დაირეკა. 18. ახალ ბინაში გადავალთ, როგორც კი კედლებს გაეწებავთ და იატაკს შეეღებავთ. 19. მატარებელს თუ ვერ მივუსწარით, ავტობუსით წავალთ. 20. ქალაქის მერმა მობინადრეებს გამოუცხადა, რომ არაკანონიერი შენობები მალე დაინგრევა. 21. ის დროზე უნდა გააფრთხილოთ, სანამ უარესი რამ არ ჩაიდინა. 22. მე დიდი ეჭვით მელაპარაკებოდნენ. 23. დედამ უთხრა ნიკოს, თუ ყველა საავარჯიშო გააკეთე, შეგიძლია დაიძინოო.

24. ყოველთვის ეოცნებობდი პარიზში წასვლაზე, მაგრამ ჯერჯერობით ვერ ვახერხებ. 25. დროა, სახლში წავიდეთ. მშობლები ინერვიულებენ. 26. ძალიან ძნელი წარმოსადგენია, რას გააკეთებენ ისინი ხვალ ამ დროს.

Exercise 12. Translate the following into English.

1. თქვენ, თუ არ ეცდები, განდერსონის მდივანი იყავით. როგორც ჩანს, მომხდარმა თქვენზე ძალიან იმოქმედა. – ორი ღამეა, არ მიძინია, – მიუგო მარლიუმ. 2. ირა შემოსასვლელში გავარდა, ჩანთა აიღო, ქურთუკი ჩაიცვა და სახლიდან გავიდა. ის იყო ავტობუსის გაჩერებას მიუახლოვდა, რომ გაახსენდა, სახლში კონსპექტი დარჩა. 3. უილიამსი მაშინვე შეენიშნე. ბართან იდგა და ბარმენს ღიმილით უხსნიდა რაღაცას. დარბაზი მოეათვალიერე, ყველაზე მოშორებით მდგომ მაგიდასთან ვატო იდგა და დაჟინებით უყურებდა შემომსვლელებს – რა თქმა უნდა, დამინახა. 4. უილიამმა რაღაც შეფუთული გამომიწოდა. – ეს რა არის? – საჩუქარი მოგიტანე. გახსენი და ნახე. ამით იმ კითხვასაც გასცემ პასუხს, რომელიც დიდი ხანია გაწვალებს. 5. – როგორ ფიქრობ, დაგვხდებიან? – მხრები ავიჩეჩე. – ალბათ, ყოველ შემთხვევაში, იმედი მაქვს. ეგვენიას ველაპარაკე და რეისის ნომერი ვუთხარი. – არ მომწონს ის ამბავი, რომ ყველამ ერთად ბაბუაშენის სახლში უნდა ეიცხოვროთ.

6. ცხოვრებამ ბევრი მასწავლა. მიუხედი, რომ წინსელისათვის დიდი ბრძოლაა საჭირო. 7. ბავშვები იმედოვნებდნენ, რომ მათ ეშმაკობას არ შეამჩნევდნენ და არ დასჯიდნენ. 8. ოთახი დილას და საღამოს უნდა გაანიავდეს. 9. ეს ყვავილები ეს-ეს არის მორწყეს. 10. ხალიჩა ჯერ არ გაურეცხავთ. 11. არ შეხვიდეთ ახლა იმ ოთახში. 12. პოლიციაში გვითხრეს, რომ ყველა ზომა უკვე მიღებულიაო.

13. მშობლებს ასე არ ელაპარაკებიან. 14. პეტრე, რომელიც მთელი საათი ნელის თვალს არ აშორებდა, უცებ წამოდგა და ოთახიდან გავიდა. 15. ნიკო ძლივს იდგა ფეხზე. დაულევია. 16. ახლა პირველი ლექცია მიდის. პეტრე დაფასთან დგას და წინადადებებს წერს. დანარჩენი სტუდენტები დაფას უყურებენ.

17. მომავალ წელს ამ დროს ისინი ბათუმში იცხოვრებენ. 18. როდესაც დღეს სკოლიდან მოვბრუნდებით, ბებია ფანჯარასთან იჯდება ჩვენს მოლოდინში.

19. როდესაც მერძევე ქალმა ქუჩიდან დაგვიძახა, ჩვენ ჯერ კიდევ გვეძინა.

20. სად იყო ნიკო, როდესაც ეძებდით? – ის კომპიუტერთან იჯდა და თამაშობდა. 21. ოლივერმა უცებ იცნო ქალი, რომელიც ფეგინის სახლში დაინახა. 22. დიდი ხანია ინგლისურს სწავლობ? 23. მთელი წელია არ მინახიხარ. სად იმალებოდი? 24. როგორც იქნა, მოხვედი! სად იყავი ამდენ ხანს? რატომ გაგვანერვიულე? 25. ის ამას არ დაიჯერებს, სანამ ყველაფერს თვითონ საკუთარი თვალით არ ნახავს. 26. შენ სანამ სახლში დაბრუნდები, მე ყველაფერს მოვრჩები და მერე ერთად ვუყუროთ ტელესერიალს. 27. გუშინ ძალიან გვიან დავბრუნდი და ამიტომ არ დაგირეკე.

Exercise 13. Translate the following into English.

1. რაც აქ ჩამოვედით, უკვე სამი წერილი მივიღეთ მშობლებისგან. 2. როგორც იქნა, ჩემი ოცნება ასრულდა. ბავშვობიდან ვოცნებობდი ექიმი გამოვსულიყავი. 3. რატომ აცდენს პეტრე ასე ხშირად ლექციებს? – ის არ აცდენს, აგვიანებს და მერე მასწავლებელი ლექციაზე არ უშვებს. 4. მეხუთე კურსის ბოლოსთვის მე უკვე მექნება ჩაბარებული ორმოცდაათ გამოცდაზე მეტი. 5. მალე კიბოს წამალს გამოიგონებენ და ყველა ავადმყოფს მოარჩენენ. 6. მაღაზია ეს-ეს არის გაიღო, მაგრამ უკვე ბევრი ხალხი მოგროვდა. 7. როდესაც მათ ვესტუმრე, სადილს ამზადებდნენ. მთხოვეს, სადილად დარჩიო. 8. რას გააკეთებ ხვალ ამ დროს? – პიანინოს დაეუკრავ. 9. დღეს კაფესთან 5-დან 6-მდე დაგელოდებით. ამ დროისთვის მორჩები ყველა შენს საქმეს ოფისში? 10. სტუდენტები ახლა ტექსტს წერენ, თუ ტექსტს კითხულობენ? – არა, მასწავლებელს უსმენენ. მასწავლებელი მათ ახალ მასალას უხსნის. 11. როდესაც ანამ ინსტიტუტი დაამთავრა, მისი და უკვე ორი წელი უცხო ენათა ინსტიტუტში სწავლობდა.

12. მთელი დღე ქალაქს ვათვალიერებდით და საღამოს ფეხებს ძლივს მივათრევდით. 12. გუშინ ამ დროს ქობულეთის პლიაჟზე ვირუჯებოდით.

13. სანამ ზღვაში ვცურავდით, ღელეა დაიწყო და ზღვიდან ძლივს გამოვედით. 14. წვიმაში ველოდებოდით მას, სანამ არ დაბნელდა, მაგრამ ის არ მოვიდა.

15. რას ეძებდი, როდესაც ოთახში შემოვედი? – ჩემს სათვალეს. – მაგრამ შენ ხომ ის ცხვირზე გეკეთა. – დიახ, მერე შევამჩნიე. ასეთი რამ ხშირად მემართება. 16. ეს-ეს არის დამირეკა. ის ხვალ მოვა აუცილებლად, თუ რამემ ხელი არ შეუშალა. 17. არ მიხვიდე მათთან 4 საათზე. ის ჯერ სამსახურიდან დაბრუნებული არ იქნება. მისი სამუშაო დღე 6 საათზე მთავრდება. 18. ხვალ მთელი დღე ის სპორტდარბაზში ივარჯიშებს. 19. დაკაკუნება ძლივს მოასწრო, რომ კარი გაიღო. 20. როდესაც შენ დარეკე, ყავა უკვე დალეული მქონდა და სამსახურში წასასვლელად ვემზადებოდი. 21. დედამ სუფრა გაშალა და ბავშვებს დაუძახა. 22. დედას სუფრა გაეშალა და ბავშვებს ეძახდა. 23. ანა ბავშვობიდან სცენაზე ცეკვავს, მაგრამ ეშინოდა, რომ სცენის დატოვება მოუხდებოდა, რადგან წონაში საგრძნობლად მოიმატა ბოლო წელს და უკვე ისე კარგად ვეღარ ცეკვავს. 24. მე ამ ოფისში მხოლოდ ერთი წელია, რაც ვმუშაობ, მაგრამ ჩემი თანამდებობა სულ უფრო მეტად მომწონს. 25. მე ვნახავ იმ ფილმს, მაგრამ მას შემდეგ, რაც წიგნს წავიკითხავ.

The Sequence of Tenses

The sequence of tenses is a dependence of the tense-form of the verb in a subordinate clause on the tense form of the verb in the principal clause.

The rules of the sequence of tenses can be formulated as follows:

1. If the verb in the principal clause is in one of the present or future tenses the verb in the subordinate clause may be in any tense required by the context.

Tom Culver's friends will wonder what has happened to him.

She imagines there will be some task for her to do.

Martha explains that she doesn't know where he is.

They know he has been drinking.

He is saying that he was in the bedroom and heard strange sounds in the next room.

I've been telling them why we didn't ring them up yesterday.

I've always known he will let me down.

She says that she had been sleeping for two hours when the telephone rang.

He wonders what I was doing at that time.

2. The rules of the sequence of tenses mainly concern object clauses, but they are also observed in some other subordinate clauses, such as subject, predicative, appositive clauses and in clauses of purpose.

After the past tense forms in the principal clause we find relative use of tense forms in the subordinate clauses, a shift of tenses into the past. The observance of the rules of the sequence of tenses is compulsory when the action of the subordinate clause is viewed from the past.

a) If the past action of the subordinate clause is simultaneous with that of the principal clause, the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous is used in the subordinate clause no matter which past tense form may be found in the principal clause.

He said that it was lucky they weren't going by boat.

Master Parys said that he didn't think plays were the sort of entertainment he favoured.

Charles was saying that money provided no comfort at all when the mind was dead.

He said he didn't have any change.

I hoped I wasn't looking as stunned as I felt.

Mr Irving had said that the target always collected her post on Thursday afternoons.

b) If the past action expressed in the subordinate cause precedes (is prior to) that of the principal clause, the Past Perfect or the Past Perfect Continuous is used in the subordinate clause no matter which past tense is found in the principal clause.

Her son-in-law told her that they had come for her anniversary.

Henry wanted to know how Tessa had got in.

Priscilla said that when Bob had left for Rosemary's they had all been waiting in two cars at the bottom of the drive.

He said that he had always been in love with her.

She said that she had been dreading this.

We knew that he had gone over to Salisbury that day.

He had honestly not understood why this answer had upset her so much.

c) If the action expressed in the subordinate clause is posterior to that of the principal clause (i.e. refers to the future), the Future-in-the-Past (Indefinite, Continuous, Perfect) is used.

It was very late when I got back, and I hoped that Caroline would have gone to bed.

I told Caroline at lunch time that I would go to Fernly for dinner.

I knew the Lord would answer my prayer.

I was wondering if I would ever see you again.

I knew that they would be waiting for me at the station.

d) If there are several subordinate clauses in a sentence, the rule of the sequence of tenses are observed in all of them.

She made a speech first saying that she had no ear and no voice, but that she would do what she could.

I said I didn't think he could be done for blackmail if his victim didn't even know he was being blackmailed.

I had always thought that when the time came he would laugh at his executioner.

Keller said that he didn't understand why after he had worked forty years and he had got a maid he had to take out the garbage.

Amanda told Laura that Tom had forgotten his key so she would have to let them in, when they arrived.

e) The rules of the sequence of tenses may be observed or not when reference is made to the actual present time or the actual future time. This use occurs in dialogues, newspapers, radio and TV reports.

He said he doesn't drink coffee in the evening.

What did you say? – I said the children are playing in the yard.

I wanted to know what you'll have for supper.

The rules of the sequence of tenses are not observed in the following cases:

1. When the subordinate clause renders the so-called universal or general truth or something which the speaker thinks to be one.

Tom said that man is by instinct a lover, a hunter, a fighter. Amanda answered that instinct belongs to animals.

The teacher told the pupils that water boils at 100 degrees centigrade.

He said that the earth is always moving.

2. In reporting a narration, especially, if there is a concrete past time.

He said that he was born in Sokhumi and his family moved to Tbilisi during the war.

She told me that she left school in 2003.

The orator said that the Borodino battle took place in 1812.

3. When the action in the subordinate clause is represented by a modal verbal predicate with modal verbs having no past tense forms, such as ***"must", "should", "ought to".***

The doctor told my mother that she should keep to a diet.

The girl said that it was late and she must go home.

He knows that he ought to respect the family traditions.

4. The Past Indefinite in subordinate clauses of time, introduced by the conjunctions ***"when"*** and ***"since"*** is not changed according to the rules of the sequence of tenses into the Past Perfect.

She said that they had been in love since they met.

She said when he learned that terrible news he was shocked.

5. The Past Continuous remains unchanged (or is changed into the Past Perfect Continuous).

He said that when he looked out it was raining.

Nick said that from 10 till 12 he was working at his report (or: had been working at his report).

He didn't tell us that he had been training the whole year.

6. If the words spoken are still true or if a message is being repeated immediately.

He said the meeting will be held next Monday. (The meeting hasn't taken place yet).

Mother said that she has laid the table and is waiting for us. (Immediate reporting).

7. When the verb in the subordinate clause is in the Subjunctive Mood (I and II types of conditional sentences, after ***wish, would rather / sooner, had better, it is time, as if / as though, to be afraid lest, etc.***).

She said, "I wish I were at the seaside now." – She said she wished she were at the seaside.

She said, "Nick looks as if he belonged to the sea." – She said that Nick looked as if he belonged to the sea.

She said, "I couldn't forget it if I tried." – She said that she couldn't forget it if she tried.

Linda said "We'd better be going." – Linda said they'd better be going.

She said, "I'd rather be an old maid than marry him," – She said she'd rather be an old maid than marry him.

She said, "I am afraid lest I should disappoint them." – She said that she was afraid lest she

should disappoint them.

She said, "I would never sleep if I knew there was a mouse in the room!" – She said she would never sleep if she knew there was a mouse in the room.

She said, "It's time we went home." – She said it was time they went home.

Exercise 1. Say whether the action of the clause precedes, follows or is simultaneous with the action of the principal clause in the following sentences.

1. He understood well enough what her smiles meant. 2. In a quarter of an hour the lad came back, and said that Mrs Newberry would have no objection to accommodate him. 3. Stockdale's gratified look told that she had lost nothing by not appearing when expected. 4. Saxby told the story at the club which agreed that Caffin was a bit of a fraud, that he had always been a poser. 5. Billson said that after all Caffy had done pretty well for himself. 6. After a month, however, even Saxby began to wonder how long the girl would stay. 7. She wrote back to say that she had no boat and she did not mean to sail. 8. He meant to explain to the girl that everybody knew how badly she had been treated. 9. He wrote to her immediately after he had left her and told her how much he adored her and how much she meant to him. 10. He told her what agony it had been to him that a sudden job had prevented him from being with her when he'd so eagerly looked forward to it. 11. He assured her that this meant nothing to him. He could get a job somewhere, in the colonies, where he would earn much more money. He was sure he could make her happy. Naturally there would be a scandal, but it would be forgotten, and away from England people would not bother. 12. She reproached him for the mess they had got into. 13. It appeared that the Chinese woman had been fond of him. She'd kept him on her own miserable earnings for the last two years. 14. I wanted to know who he was. I supposed he'd been a clerk in some English firm or an assistant in an English store at Singapore. I asked the Chinese woman if he'd left many effects 15. For the first time he realized how effective the smile was, and why there had been no real protest from the others. 16. From now on, he assured himself, everything would work out as he had foreseen. 17. In Keith's case, Mel sometimes thought, the father had done his younger son a disservice. 18. He wondered if Keith really knew just how lucky he had been.
19. In a moment, Keith thought, he would admit how he had loitered. 20. She was neither aware, nor cared, that outside it was still snowing, nor that the taxi was moving slowly in heavy traffic. 21. But more than ever he knew that Cindy's and his own decision for divorce had been inevitable. 22. Demerest remembered what he had said to Gwen this evening. 23. I told him that Amy had said she had heard them too. I did not mention the other noise we had both heard. 24. I was sure I had never seen or heard anything to suggest that Diana was on anything but tolerable terms with Jack. 25. A moment later I decided that yesterday she had been too excited not to

behave as she really wanted to.

Exercise 2. Say whether the action of the clause precedes, follows or is simultaneous with the action of the principal clause in the following sentences.

1. I decided I would ask Mama later, maybe after dinner. 2. I tried to remember if Terence had said something about going out to a movie. 3. I said I thought he was at Lawrence. 4. He knew where he wanted to go. 5. I knew that I was under observation, so I continued eating as if the news had not interested me. 6. She told him he was an idiot, and didn't know what he was talking about. 7. She hoped Edward would notice that she refused all food, and be properly alarmed and sorry. 8. He knew there was an opening large enough to get his ship through. 9. I thought it was the most beautiful spot I had ever seen. 10. So when Mr Lucas thought he had gained the day, he suddenly felt himself lifted off the ground. 11. The boy said that she was a widow-woman, who had got no husband, because he was dead. Mr Newberry, he added, had been a well-to-do man enough, as the saying goes, and a farmer; but he had gone off in a decline. 12. A young woman's voice replied that Susan Wallis was there and that she had come to ask if Mrs Newberry could give her some mustard to make a plaster with, as her father was taken very ill on the chest. 13. He noticed lying on a chair a greatcoat, hat, and breeches. Marta said that Mrs Newberry had given them to her to brush, and that she had brought them up there thinking they must be Mr Stockdale's, as there was no other gentleman lodging there. 14. He asked me who the nominators were. 15. She declared in the same dramatic manner that she would do what she liked with herself, that he didn't belong to anybody now. 16. He told her that she'd let her imagination run away with her and had read into the letters more than was there. 17. He said he would do anything she wanted. He implored her not to love him less and he was tortured by the thought that this disaster had changed her feeling for him. 18. She wondered how much I knew and she saw at once that I knew everything. 19. Mr Power was careful to explain to her that he was not responsible, that he had come on the scene by the merest accident. 20. She suspected that a man of her husband's age would not change greatly before death. 21. Only she herself knno, not for anyb ew that at the centre of her heart was a hard little place that could not feel love. 22. She thought of men and women she had seen together, that she had heard talking together as they sat in the street cars or in apartments or walked in a Chicago park. 23. There were times when he realized his daughters were the only reason his marriage had survived.
24. Mrs Quonsett sensed that she had now been included in the count - but that was all.

Exercise 3. Use *the Future-in-the-Past* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. I thought it (to please) him to know that Colonel Brabason had such a high opinion of him.

2. I thought a few rubbers (to calm) me, but the fact is I can't give my mind to the game. 3. He had hopes that he soon (to make) himself so indispensable that he (to get) someone to take him into partnership. 4. She imagined she (to intrude) heavily if she telephoned to Luigi in the country. 5. It was impossible to guess how near to it they (to pass). 6. I knew Carl (to carry) on an affair, but I thought perhaps Moms might get jealous. 7. Tom privately decided that only Kitty (to have) a son called Crispin. 8. Everyone expected that the inquest (to reveal) something of the murdered man's inner life. 9. She guessed her husband (not to speak) his mind before the guests. 10. He was sure that some day he (to become) as famous as Sherlock Holmes. 11. At last the ordeal was over. She (to have) a cup of tea and then go to bed for a couple of hours to relax. 12. He promised he (to be) back in five minutes. 13. When I looked at the picture, I saw that the clothes in it were lovely and (to be) very easy to copy. 14. I hoped that she (to be) always happy and smiling as she was in that picture. 15. I came to see you simply because I thought that you (to annoy) me until I did. 16. He ran down the corridor to the sleeping car, where he felt sure he (to find) a door that (to open). 17. In one way or another he knew that they both (to survive). 18. She (to do) such a thing for his sake and for Miranda's, he knew.

Exercise 4. Use *the Future-in-the-Past* instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. I said I never (to marry) anyone but you, Emily, and I never have. 2. But it seemed to Patrolman Richard Genero that it (to continue) to rain forever and that eventually he (to be washed away) into the gutter. 3. Carel told Pattie that he soon (to be) a widower and that when he was free he (to make) her his wife. 4. Never thought I (to do) this sort of a job in a house here. 5. There was magic inside him that (not to let) the grass kill him; he was a witch doctor, and, for anyone who wasn't, the grass (to scorch) his guts away. 6. The scene was still in front of her. Never she (to forget) his expressionless head in the water. 7. But I wanted them to know the sort of questions they (to ask) – by lawyers, even perhaps the press. 8. I began to talk in the hope that (to bring) ideas. 9. She did not know if her legs (to support) her. 10. Many years later when they were both dead he (to tell) Isabel's daughter how long ago he had loved her Mother. 11. It seemed likely that Ralph Paton (to return) there by now. 12. Conceited fool – to think that Megan (to take) it so hard! In a week or two she almost (to forget)! And he – well, he (to have) the reward of virtue! 13. Most of the cars departed, and the rest, I supposed, (to follow) as soon as fresher news broke. 14. But he knew he (to have) to act. 15. She had been afraid that when she saw Alex she (to be unable) to speak, but (to choke) and (to have) to run from the table. 16. Changing the conversation he began to speak to Cooper about the work that (to require) of him. 17. She wondered if her death really (to cause) him much sorrow. 18. But, for whatever reasons, she knew there (to be) resignations among airline staffs when the present emergency

was over.

Exercise 5. Use the appropiate form of the verb.

1. He told them that they to stay the night there and he a new propeller in the morning when the tide out. (to have, to put on, to be) 2. He said that he all right when King Eddie . (to be, to come) 3. He promised that he with me as soon as daylight to pink in. (to be, to begin) 4. He told her if she a surprise for him, he her. (to prepare, to forgive) 5. He warned Mr Jaraby that if he , he him to leave. (to shout. to ask) 6. I told her that she angry with me, if I her, but she promised not to be. (to be, to tell) 7. He didn't like that a damn bit because if they it a felony, and if he in he them full of lead. (to get caught, to come, to spray) 8. He told Mr Spade that he intended to search his offices and warned him that if he to prevent him he certainly him. (to attempt, to shoot) 9. I replied that I the consequences if there to be any. (to take, to be) 10. He was warned that the day when he . (to come, to punish) 11. He asked if he those letters in to sign as soon as he . them. (to bring, to do) 12. He thought when the council business he a mill at Warley. (to encourage, to build) 13. She exclaimed that they him before the night out. (to see, to be) 14. I added that he before the journey over. (to be sorry, to be) 15. She said she nothing, whatever time he . (to say, to come) 16. He said that he , he for that last hundred yards if he to sit down cross-legged on the grass and the governor and chinless wonders pick him up and carry him there. (to budge, to go, to have, to have) 17. They knew that that might be their only chance, the only time they free till they so old they wandering. (to be, to be, to enjoy) 18. We told him to take the chance. There time for him to create a dozen new kinds of cars when we He it all the better if he a real rest. (to be, to come back, to do, to have)

Exercise 6. Use the appropiate form of the verb.

1. The boys said that sometime when they big, they with him and all those things. (to be, to go, to see) 2. He promised that when he really his pile, he something to help turn Zenith into another Detroit. (to make, to do) 3. She said that she when she She didn't need any lawyer - not right then when she one she one. (to do, to get good and ready, to need, to get) 4. He wondered what was going to happen when Molly to sell that necklace and it that it was a fake. (to try, to come out) 5. Mason frowned thoughtfully and asked them when she to tell her that she in about an hour. (to return, to be back) 6. Miss Jones warned that if he again he to the contrôleur. (to drink, to complain) 7. She inquired if she her and added that she very pleased if they her that she did. (to look like, to be, to tell) 8. She thought that she sit by the tree in the orchard until mother puttering about the kitchen. (to

go, to finish) 9. He said that now they Mr Poirot there they long. (to have got, not to be) 10. Sikes put a gun against Oliver's head and warned him that if he one word when he outside with him, he him. (to say, to be, to shoot) 11. He said that next time Christmas , he Fred and everybody else to keep away, and they all into the workhouse, and then they satisfied. (to come round, to tell, to go, to be) 12. His instructions were to tell Mr Sawney that unless something , steps by the Department, to put him out. (to do, to take) 13. He assured them that his life . quite ruined unless they John at once to the Upper House. (to be, to send) 14. She agreed that they had been defeated but before the end he they . (to come, to see, to conquer) 15. They seemed to believe that if everybody quiet and still, the new, big planes . and us. (to keep, to go away, not to bother) 16. He thought that when his two years of probation he a furnished house to live in, with a varnished door and a brass knocker. (to finish, to have) 17. She asked us not to be angry with her and added that we her when we it all. (to forgive, to hear)

Exercise 7. Use the appropriate form of the verb.

1. Mason said that I a chance to visit with my mother for a few minutes before the matron her back. (to have, to take) 2. They said that the first witness, if the court Frank Remington. (to please, to be) 3. He was told that he could make quite sure of one thing. If that thing , that girl him. (to clear up, to marry) 4. I thought if they those five complete sets of furniture from the house, I sure in the crib because the crib was paid for. (to remove, to sleep) 5. He told Mr Golspie that if they to take on a few new people and advertise for them, he what he meant. (to have, to see) 6. He grumbled that he life if it him. (to enjoy, to kill) 7. He asked them that they to give him some money for clothes, as he hadn't a thing – and then afterwards, if he it, he mother's scheme, if the shop still in existence. (to have, not to like, to try, to be) 8. She said if there . an inquest she to answer questions. (to be, to have) 9. I exclaimed that I had ordered him for half-past seven sharp and if he , the play (to fail, to spoil) 10. Mason's voice was filled with sympathy as he said to Judge Romley that if the Court it more merciful to take a recess. (to please, to be) 11. They told the Frenchman that if he his mouth, they to arrest him. (not to close, to force) 12. He promised that if he in my backyard he in an ambulance instead of a bridal chaise. (to come, to go) 13. He said that if Inspector Raglan me to assist him, I both honoured and flattered. (to permit, to be) 14. He told me if I the way I did. I . (to feel, to wait)

Exercise 8. Use the appropriate form of the verb.

1. He said that if his girl him on the phone he to her any time he pleased. (to call, to talk)

2. They thought if no word from her, they the dead things lie. (to come, to let) 3. It was only fair to add, that, if the rogues all together, I probably my subordinates in reserve. (to retire, to keep) 4. He thought if anything they together. (to happen, to run away) 5. He asked if he there, who that his purpose in coming there that night – visiting his rooms – unaccompanied - had been solely to obtain the papers. (to discover, to believe) 6. We knew that if that earring , and it did not look as though it would be found, every one of us under a certain suspicion. (to find, to be) 7. He told me that if I the money over to him, he it in every way he could to make it impossible for anyone to have so much again.(to turn, to use) 8. He said that if he that party he for sure. (to lose, to sack) Out of my pocket I took a new ten-lira note and promised him if he him, I him this. (to fetch, to give) 9. He said aloud that he would do it that night. If it him he himself talk to the girl. (to kill, to make) 10. Elisa thought that we time if we to the Salinas road and pick up the highway there. (to save, to go back) 11. They told him that if he just them a little about himself, everything all right. (to tell, to be) 12. One couldn't tell when the boss . (to be back) 13. He promised that he his eyes until we .. safely out of the house. (not to close, to be) 14. We believed that when we the explanation of that telephone call we the explanation of the murder. (to find, to find)

Exercise 9. Use the appropriate form of the verb instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. He knew that I (not to tell) him the truth, but was not going to take me up on it. 2. I realized that I (to have) to think of something to say to Diana. 3. He told me that I (to be) still very weak because I (to lose) much blood, but he hoped that I (to be) well in a few days. 4. I was sure now that Dominique Gayarre (to be) the man I (to meet) in New Orleans. 5. I told them in what circumstances I (to see) Antoine last and described my fight with the man who (to wound) me. 6. I explained that I (to expect) a call at any moment and that's why I (to take) my bag. 7. He told me he (to win) a sweepstakes – some lottery. But I don't think he 8. He was sure that the publication of his theories (to bring) great changes. 9. He thought that he (to get) some money for helping to catch Oliver. 10. Mr Sowerberry knew that if he (not to punish) Oliver, his wife never (to forgive) him. 11. I just said that we (to play) a game. A game in which I (to pretend) to fall into the lake and be drowned. 12. There we felt sure that we (to find) a bed for the night. 13. He said he (to come) if I (to send) for him. 14. He was told to go to church alone with many warnings of what (to happen) if he (to stray). 15. It occurred to me that though I (to tell) that the President (to go), it (to be) wise at least to inquire for the Commissioner. 16. He wondered if it (to be) always this way when things (to be) sour with two people who (to live) together for a long time.

Exercise 10. Use the appropriate form of the verb instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. I had been told by Mr D. that I (may) meet three chiefs before we (to leave) Sierra Leone. 2. The engineer said the path (to go) straight down to the coast of Konakry. 3. I thought that we (to go) to Monrovia straight from Bolahun and that we (to be) there within a fortnight. 4. After the dance the chief's son, Peter Bonoh, said that his father (to wish) to show the visitors his town. 5. They said the chief (to expect) the white man the night before. 6. Alfred suggested it (to be) a good thing to spend the night with the chief. He (to be) offended otherwise. 7. I had promised them a short march of three hours; but I was afraid my temper (to give way) altogether if I (to have) to argue them on at every village. 8. Then I suddenly remembered that I (to see) her only yesterday. 9. He (to hide) nothing from her except what he (to think) (to wound) her or what (to make) himself ridiculous. 10. Hiram is a dying man. He told me in a fashion that (to be) entirely matter-of-fact that his doctors (to give) him only a few months to live. 11. Noting his hostess's agitation, he hoped that nothing (to go) wonky with the dinner. 12. Butler promised Sarah that he (to keep) her in mind if anything (to turn up). 13. Sarah said that she (to come back) then and if Butler (not to have) anything for her then, she probably just (to quit) permanently. 14. Mrs Summer told Howard if he (to think) things over, he (to see) she (to be) right in not even trying to love him. Then she added that she (to be back) some day next week, between three and four. 15. Forrest told Alida that he (to want) her so much that nothing (can) stand in the way of that, but he (to owe) his parents a debt that he couldn't explain to her. They (to do) more than spend money on him; they (to try) to give him something more intangible – something that their parents (to give) them and that they (to think) (to be) worth handing on. 16. Alida told Forrest that she (to want) to go back. They (can) wait. They (not to have) any right to cause all this pain. They (to be) young. She (to go) away for a while, and they (to see).

Exercise 11. Use the appropriate form of the verb instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. He said that it (to be) more than a day's march from Pandemai. 2. Kolieva said they (to want) to talk to me. 3. I said that the Government wage (not to include) food, and I (to pay) for their food. 4. I had understood from him that they (to agree) to work for three shillings a week. 5. On the way back to our house I remembered we (not to take) our quinine for two days. 6. I told the chief he (to lie), that he (to do) nothing about the men's shop. 7. He said he (to show) me that he (not to be) a liar. 8. No one knew who he (to be) but one of the curates said he (to serve) the gentleman with a small rum. 9. In a quarter of an hour a brief message was delivered to him that his lordship (to come) the next day. 10. He said he never (to learn) anything worth passing on. 11. He brightened slightly when he (to see) his aides, telling them he (to join) them in the dining-room shortly. 12. He said she (to look) like a lily of the valley. 13. Oliver remained silent

all the way back to the shop, thinking about everything he (to see) and (to hear). 14. I wondered where on earth Mrs Fowler (to find) the extraordinary clothes she (to wear). 15. He said he (to leave) a constable on duty at the house all night, and that he (to return) himself in the morning. 16. He wondered how much longer her happy innocence (to last).

Exercise 12. Use the appropriate form of the verb instead of *the Infinitives* in brackets.

1. When they were sitting side by side at table he told her that he (to know) Walter Fane ever since he (to come) to the Colony. 2. I said I (to have) no privileges but (to wish) to buy food for my men. 3. He said that if I ever (to approach) Dail with any proposition like that, he (to kill) me. He said he (not to take) a cent from the Products Refining Company. 4. He said that Marcel (to come back) half and hour before and (to ask) for a room for the night. 5. I quite understood what Katharine Harris (to mean) when she (to say) that the lady (to look) "French like". 6. He wondered why he ever (to fall) in love with her. 7. She hoped honestly that the two years they (to spend) together (to remain) with him as a priceless memory. 8. It was supposed that the Colonial Secretary (to retire) soon and everybody hoped that Townsend (to succeed) him. 9. He told his wife what Miss Thompson (to say) to him and (to ask) her to speak to Mrs Davidson. 10. Then I explained that I (to recognize) her face from the photograph (to find) in the purse.
11. I told him this morning that I (not to want) Christine wandering about on her own. He asked me later if it (to be) all right if she (to come) with him to the gates to get the empty churns.
12. Doctor Gallup slapped the folded evening paper down on the table and asked Fifi to read it because it (to tell) how four man-killers (to enter) a bank in West Crampton three weeks before. It (to tell) her how they (to shoot down) the cashier in cold blood, and how one of them, the most brutal, the most ferocious, the most inhuman (to get away). And it (to tell) her that that human gorilla (to be supposed) to be hiding in the neighbourhood of Montauk Point. 13. George Van Tyne told Aunt Josephine that his one hope (to be) that some day she (to be able) to forgive him for throwing the sand – he (to be afraid) that his impersonation (to run away) with him.
14. Van Tyne said cheerfully that Fifi (to know) about it all along. She even (to recognize) him in the tree that first day. She (to beg) him to desist until that afternoon, but he (to refuse) until she (to kiss) him tenderly, beard and all.

Exercise 13. Translate the following sentences into English observing the rules of the sequence of tenses.

1. ძალიან გამიკვირდა, როდესაც ტელეფონის ყურმილში მისი ხმა გაიგონე. მას ჩემთვის სამი წელი არ დაურეკავს და ძალიან გაეოცდი, რომ გაეახსენდი. მივხვდი, რომ ძალიან სერიოზული თხოვნა ჰქონდა. 2. ვიცოდი, რომ უარს არ

მეტყოდნენ დახმარებაზე, თუ ეთხოვდი. 3. ის არ იყო დარწმუნებული, რომ მომდეენო დღეს ყველაფერი კარგად იქნებოდა. 4. მას ეშინოდა, რომ გართულებული საომარი მდგომარეობის გამო მომაეალ კეირას სწაელა არ დაიწყებოდა. 5. ის არ იყო დარწმუნებული, რომ ორი დღის წინ, როდესაც ილაპარაკეს, ნელიმ მას სიმართლე უთხრა. 6. გასულ კეირას, როცა პეტრემ ის გოგონა დაინახა, მიხვდა, რომ სწორედ მას ეძებდა მთელი თაეისი ცხოვრება და ის იყო მისი გულის ქალბატონი. 7. არ ეიცოდი, როდის დაბრუნდებოდნენ ქობულეთიდან. 8. ძალიან ვეჭეობდი, რომ ბიჭი სიმართლეს ამბობდა, რადგან ძალიან ნერვიულობდა და თვალებს ვერ მისწორებდა. 9. მე ეიცოდი, რომ დღეს რაღაცა მოხდებოდა ჩემს ცხოვრებაში ისეთი, რაც ჩემს ცხოვრებას მთლიანად შეცვლიდა. 10. მე არ მეგონა, რომ გუშინ სახლში იყაეი. მეგონა შენ მორიგე იყაეი საავადმყოფოში. 11. არ მეგონა, რომ შენ ასეთი ფიცხი ხარ და ასეთ უმნიშენელო საკითხზე გაბრაზდებოდი. 12. ძალიან ეინანე, რომ მას ყველაფერი მოეუცეი. როგორ ეიფიქრებდი, რომ ამას ასე ახლოს მიიტანდა გულთან. 13. მან იცოდა, რომ მათი გზები კელავ გადაიჯრებოდა და ახლა არაფერი არ უნდა შეეცვალა. 14. წამით რეზოს მოეჩვენა, რომ ნიკოს რაღაც ძალიან მნიშენელოვანის თქმა სურდა. 15. ჩვენ ვთვლიდით, რომ ის ძალიან წესიერი კაცი იყო და აზრიდაც არ მოგვდიოდა, რომ მან მოგვატყუა. 16. ბიჭები იმედოვნებდნენ, რომ მამა მათ ფეხბურთის მატჩზე წასელის ნებართვას მისცემდა. 17. ნიკომ არ იცოდა, რატომ არ დაურეკა ანამ და, საერთოდ, იყო თუ არა ანა სახლში. 18. ეიცოდი, რომ მათი მეგობრობა მალე სიყვარულში გადაიზრდებოდა. 19. ვერ მიეხვდით, თუ რატომ ტიროდა ბაეშეი, ეიფიქრეთ, რომ რაღაცა სტკიოდა. 20. ის შიშობდა, იქნებ სწორად ვერ გაიგეს ჩემი ნათქვამი და ხომ არ ეაწყენინეო. 21. ჩვენ გვეგონა, რომ ის სიმართლეს არ ამბობდა. 22. ის წუხდა, რომ ცოტა ფული ჰქონდა და სათანადო მასპინძლობას ვერ გაუწევდა სტუმრებს. 23. მე არ ეიყაეი დარწმუნებული, რომ მას ესმოდა, თუ რას ეგულისხმობდი. 24. მე არ ვიცოდი, რომ შენ ასეთი ამაყი იყაეი. 25. მე ეიცოდი, რომ ის მართალი არ იყო, რომ მან ულირსი საქციელი ჩაიდინა და მომაეალში ინანებდა, რომ ასე მოიქცა. 26. მან იგრძნო, რომ ეიღაცა უთვალთვალებდა.

27. ჩვენ ეიფიქრეთ, რომ რადგან ის მალე ცოლს ირთაედა, ჩვენ გამოსამშეიდობებელ საღამოს მოგვეწყობდა რესტორანში. 28. ჩვენ გვეგონა, რომ მშობლებს ეძინათ და ძალიან ჩუმად გაეაღეთ კარები, რომ არ გაგეღეიძებინა. 29. ეშინობდი, რომ მას ძალიან შიოდა, რომ მთელი დღე არაფერი უჭამია და ერიდებოდა ამის თქმა. 30. მან არ იცოდა, რომ შეყვარებული ეარ და რომ ჩემი

შეცვარებული თანაჯგუფელი გოგონაა.

Exercise 14. Translate the following sentences into English observing the rules of the sequence of tenses.

1. მან თქვა, რომ დაპატიჟებს გოგონებს, რომლებთანაც ის სკოლაში ერთად სწავლობდა. 2. ჩვენ ძალიან ვინანეთ, რომ არ წავედით ექსკურსიაზე. 3. ნიკომ მითხრა, რომ ვერ დარეკა, რადგან ჩემი ტელეფონის ნომერი დაეკარგა. 4. მამა შემპირდა, თუ გამოცდებს კარგად ჩააბარებ, მანქანას გიყიდიო. 5. მე არ მეგონა, რომ კონცერტი ასეთი მასაწყენი იქნებოდა. 6. ბესომ თქვა, როდესაც მამა მოვა, ჩემს სურათებს ვაჩვენებო. 7. ჩემმა მეგობარმა მითხრა, ფულს რომ ვიშოვი, მანქანას ვიყიდიო. 8. მე არ ვიყავი დარწმუნებული, რომ კონცერტი დროზე დაიწყებოდა. 9. მე მიეხედი, რომ ბიჭი რაღაცას მიმალავდა. ვეჭვობდი, რომ მან იმ დღეს გაკვეთილები გააცდინა და ახლა ეშინოდა, რომ ამას გავიგებდი.

10. მან თქვა, არ მშიაო, რადგან სახლში კარგად ვისადილე და ყავაც დავლიეო. 11. მან მითხრა, რომ უკვე ათი წელი იცნობდა პეტრეს და რომელიც მუდამ მისი საუკეთესო მეგობარი იყო. 12. ისინი შემპირდნენ, რომ დაგველოდებოდნენ, სანამ მოვიდოდი. 13. მასწავლებელმა ნიკოს უთხრა, რომ მისი გამოთქმა საგრძნობლად გაუმჯობესდა ბოლო დროს. 14. მასწავლებელმა მითხრა, გამოცდაზე კარგ ნიშანს დაგიწერ, თუ გამოცდისათვის სამ ინგლისურ წიგნს წაიკითხავო. 15. მე ვიცოდი, რომ მამას ჯერ ხელფასი აღებული არ ჰქონდა და ახალ ფეხსაცმელს ვერ მიყიდდა. 16. მე მიეხვედი, რომ ის შოკოლადს იმიტომ არ ჭამდა, რომ ალერგიული იყო. 17. მას საშინლად ეძინებოდა, რადგან წინა ღამეს ძმის ქორწილისთვის ნამცხვრებს აცხობდა. 18. მან ძალიან უცნაურად შემომხედა და მიეხვედი, რომ სხვა პასუხს ელოდა ჩემგან. 19. დარწმუნებული ვიყავი, რომ დედამ ყველაფერი იცოდა, რაც მოხდა. 20. ჩვენ მოგვეჩვენა, რომ ანას რაღაცა სწყინდა ჩვენგან და ამიტომ ხმას არ გვცემდა. 21. ყველამ ვიცოდით, რომ ის ცდებოდა, მაგრამ ვერ ვებედავდით მისთვის ამის თქმას.

22. ჩვენ გვეგონა, რომ ლექცია ათ საათზე იწყებოდა და ამიტომ არ ვჩქარობდით. 23. მე არ ვიცოდი, საფულე სად დაეკარგე. 24. ის შიშობდა, რომ სახლში გაუბრაზდებოდნენ, როდესაც ამ ამბავს გაიგებდნენ. 25. როდესაც მათ დააგვიანეს, ჩვენ ვიფიქრეთ, რომ ალბათ უცნობ ქალაქში გზა აერიათ. 26. მე მიკვირდა, რომ ის სახლში იჯდა და არაფერს არ აკეთებდა სიტუაციის გამოსასწორებლად. 27. ვიცოდი, რომ მას არაფერი განსაკუთრებული არ გაუკეთებია და გეიკვირდა, რომ ყველა მის გმირობაზე ლაპარაკობდა. 28. მე

გამახსენდა, რომ ნიკო სახლში არ იყო, რომ ის ორი დღის წინ ლონდონში წაეიდა. 29. მიეხვედი, რომ აზრი არ ჰქონდა მისთვის რამის თქმა, იმიტომ რომ ის ძალიან ჯიუტი იყო და მაინც არ დამიჯერებდა. 30. მან არ იცოდა, ისინი რას იზამდნენ, როდესაც ყველაფერი შეიტყობდნენ.

Indirect Speech

Indirect speech is a mode of utterance in which the speaker's exact words are not reproduced directly but are reported in the form of an object subordinate clause (for declarative and interrogative sentences) or an infinitive object (for imperative sentences).

When direct speech is turned into indirect speech the following rules must be applied:

1. Indirect speech is usually introduced by verbs of saying (***tell, say, ask, etc.***) or their synonymous verbs and expressions.

2. The quotation marks and the comma (or colon) are omitted.

3. The pronouns may be changed or not, depending on the general sense.

He asked me, "Do you know where Peter has gone?" – He asked me if I knew where Peter had gone.

He said to Peter, "What did you expect to find in the next town?" – He asked Peter what he had expected to find in the next town.

Pete said to us, "That pen you found is mine." – Pete told us that pen we had found was his.

"I am not going; don't waste your breath, Fagin," replied Nancy. – Nancy replied that she was not going and told Fagin not to waste his breath.

We said, "She doesn't look unhappy." – We said (that) she didn't look unhappy.

4. The conjunction ***"that"*** is introduced before the object subordinate clause, but constructions without ***"that"*** are very common in colloquial speech.

Nelly said, "Whenever I'm busy, I always forget the time." – Nelly said whenever she was busy she always forgot the time. (or: Nelly said that whenever she was busy she always forgot the time.)

5. If the reporting verb is in the Present or the Future (Indefinite, Continuous or Perfect) the direct speech is reported without any change of the tense.

Nick says, "I phone to my parents twice a week." – Nick says (that) he phones to his parents twice a week.

6. If the verb in the principal clause is in the past tense, demonstrative pronouns and adverbials expressing nearness are replaced by words expressing distance.

Adverbs, adverbial phrases, demonstrative pronouns change in indirect speech as follows:

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
this	that
these	those
now	then, at that time, at that moment
here	there
today	that day
tonight	that night
yesterday	the day before / the previous day
the day before yesterday	two days before
ago	before
a year ago	a year before / the previous year
last night	the previous night
last week (month, year)	the previous week (month, year)
tomorrow	the next day / the following day
next week / year	the next week / year or the following week / year

The above-mentioned changes do not take place if the speaker speaks in the same place and at the same time as the speaker whose words are reported, i.e. if the reported speech is connected with the present.

He said that he was going to his office today.

He said that they lived here last year.

My friends told me yesterday that they will visit us tomorrow. So I must ask my sister to bake a cake for us.

He said that he had bought those shoes yesterday.

7. If the reporting verb (the verb in the principal clause) is in the past tense the tenses in the subordinate clause are changed according to the rule of the sequence of tenses.

The Present Indefinite is replaced by the Past Indefinite:

He said, "My little son asks a lot of questions." – He said that his little son asked a lot of questions.

The Past Indefinite is replaced by the Past Perfect:

Nick said, "We bought a house in the country last month." – Nick said that they had bought a house in the country the previous month.

The Future Indefinite is replaced by the Future Indefinite in the Past:

He said, "I'll do it tomorrow." – He said that he would do it the next day.

The Present Continuous Tense is replaced by the Past Continuous:

He said, "I am not sleeping." – He said that he was not sleeping.

The Past Continuous remains unchanged or is replaced by the Past Perfect Continuous:

He said, "I was fixing my car then." – He said that he was (had been) fixing his car then.

The Future Continuous is replaced by the Future Continuous in the Past:

He said, "I'll still be working at nine o'clock." – He said that he would still be working at nine o'clock.

The Present Perfect is replaced by the Past Perfect:

She said, "I have translated the article already." – She said that she had translated the article already.

The Past Perfect remains unchanged:

He said, "My wife had cooked dinner by 5 o'clock." – He said that his wife had cooked dinner by 5 o'clock.

The Future Perfect is replaced by the Future Perfect in the Past:

He said, "I shall have tidied up the flat by 12 o'clock. – She said that she would have tidied up the flat by 12 o'clock.

The Present Perfect Continuous is replaced by the Past Perfect Continuous:

She said, "I have been waiting for Nellie for an hour." – She said that she had been waiting for Nellie for an hour.

The Past Perfect Continuous remains unchanged:

He said, "The children had been playing football for two hours by 5 o'clock." – He said that the children had been playing football for two hours by5 o'clock.

The Future Perfect Continuous is replaced by the Future Perfect Continuous in the Past:

She said, "They will have been building a house in the country for two years by June." – She said that they would have been building a house in the country for two years in June.

If the Past Indefinite in direct speech denotes an action taking place at a definite moment, it remains unchanged in indirect speech. So does the Past Indefinite after ***"since"***:

She said, "I had cooked dinner before the children came from school." – She said she had cooked dinner before the children came from school.

She said, "I haven't seen my teacher since I left school." – She said that she had not seen her teacher since she left school.

8. Indirect statements are generally introduced by the verbs ***"to say", "to tell", "to announce", "to inform"*** (in official style), ***"to declare", "to assure", "to remark, "to admit", "to promise", etc.*** The verb ***"to tell"*** is used to introduce indirect speech only; the person addressed must be mentioned:

She said to us, "I am leaving tomorrow." – She told us that she was leaving the next day.

She said, "I have learnt the poem". – She said (announced) that she had learnt the poem.

9. Word order in an indirect question is the same as in a statement.

a) An indirect general question is introduced by the conjunction ***"if"*** or ***"whether"***:

I said to her, "Did the train arrive in time?" – I asked her if the train had arrived in time.

b) An indirect special question is introduced by the same adverb or pronoun that introduces a direct question.

He said, "Where does Nick live?" – He asked where Nick lived.

In the principal clause of sentences with indirect questions besides the verb ***"to ask"*** as an introduction some other verbs and expressions may be found. They are: ***to wonder; to inquire; to want; to know; to be interested; would like to know; tell me, please, etc.***

He said to me, "How long have you been learning English?" – He wondered (wanted to know, inquired) how long I had been learning English.

c) An order or a request in indirect speech is expressed by an infinitive (affirmative or negative form). The choice of the introducing verb is determined by the character of the order or request. The most commonly used verb to introduce an indirect order is ***"to tell"***, but other verbs are also used: ***to ask, to order, to command, to beg, to request, to implore, to urge, etc.***

I said to her, "Drink coffee. Don't let it go cold." – I asked her to drink coffee and not to let it go cold.

Don't rush around in the heat," said Granny to me. – Granny told me not to rush around in the heat.

"Don't be ridiculous," Aunt Lena said to Ann. – Aunt Lena commanded to Ann not to be ridiculous.

"Do stay with me tonight, please," she said to me. – She implored me to stay with her that night.

With the above-mentioned verbs introducing indirect speech Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood is also used:

He said to the children, "Don't touch anything on my table." – He ordered the children shouldn't touch anything on this table.

Little Nelly said, "Please, Mum, read me a fairy-tale." – Little Nelly begged her mother read (should read) her a fairy tale.

d) Indirect offers, suggestions, advice are expressed by the verbs: ***to offer, to propose, to suggest, to advise, to recommend, to urge, to warn to insist, etc.*** After some of them the Infinitive and Subjunctive or the Suppositional Mood are used, after others the Gerund and Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood.

He said to me, "Let's visit our aunt today." – He suggested that we should visit our aunt that day. (He suggested visiting our aunt that day.)

"Look here, Lily, don't take that high and mighty tone with me," he said. – He warned Lily not to take that high and mighty tone with him.

He said to me, "You had better take the umbrella. It's going to rain." – He advised me to take the umbrella. It was going to rain. – He advised I take (should take) the umbrella. It was going to rain.

Exercise 1. Change the following sentences into *indirect speech*. Mind that the reporting verbs are in the present tense.

1. Ned says, "That's a fine eagle." 2. "Now", Carmey says, "I am going to show you how we make a nine dollar eagle a fifteen dollar eagle." 3. I whisper in Mr Tomolillo's ear, "Do you have any tattoos?" 4. He says, "I hope you didn't mind my getting dizzy." 5. "What happens," Mr Tomollilo asks, "if you choose to change your name? Do you just cross it off and write the next above it?" 6. "We must be running along," I murmur. 7. "Say hello to the people, Laura," Carmey begs. 8. I ask with interest, "Does your wife help you?" 9. Ned says, "Did they come?" 10. Mr Tomollilo asks, "Is that a Federal law?" 11. "Weren't some of those people scared?" he asks. 12. "What do you mean? I've never heard such nonsense!" says Sophy, deeply alarmed. 13. "Do you play patience alone down here in the evenings?" she asks, with a spasm of pity. 14. "Things always seem to happen when I come into a house," says Violet. 15. "Have I not already told you? I see that priests have their vanities, like other artists," she says. 16. She says, "I am a lost sheep. I joined your congregation. But how did you know?" 17. "I am deeply concerned about Bee," Sophy says. 18. "Does mother hate Violet for some deep, intuitive reason?" she says. 19. "Close your eyes!" she says in a singing voice. "And let us pray!" 20. "Don't worry about me," he says. "I'll fry up the fish". 21. "Do you think he'll ever leave her?' asks May. 22. "I'll be getting some chicken pieces so we can have supper together around 8. Ring me if you need me," he says to May. 23. "Don't look so stupid, Stacy. There isn't any time now to let them know," says Kate. 24. "I'll get up, Kate," Stacy says. "Stay where you are." 25. "Good morning, girls," she says. "I hope you slept well, Mary."

Exercise 2. Change the following sentences into *indirect speech*. Mind that the reporting verbs are in the present tense.

1. "You look stupid in this dress," he says desperately. "Take off that dress! Go upstairs and take it off right now!" She says, "I don't think so." 2. "Let me give you a better explanation of what happened – one you can live with," I say to him. 3. "Have you told anyone else?" I ask him. 4. "Who are you?" I ask. "I'm Richenda Gosforth," she says. 5. "Hello?" says a woman. "Is that Ada Mullins?" 6. The man says to the child, "Have you lost anything?" 7. "Pull yourself

together, Mrs Parker, she's a lovely child," says the nurse. "You don't know what I'm suffering," Lou says. 8. "Did your father find out any more about that guy in Polo?" he asks. 9. "Do you see this?" she asks me. 10. "I have been waiting for this," she says. 11. "Do not ask me too many questions or look serious, Dr Lonsdale," she says. "I know well that my whole life is abnormal; but, believe me, I am forced to do what I do." 12. "Why do you lead such an extraordinary life?" I ask. "I have no choice," she answers, "I am under a promise, which I must fulfill. There are times, however, when I need help. I have never seen you before, but I like your face. If the time comes, will you give me your assistance?" 13. "William, why didn't you wait for me?" I say. 14. "Did you ever hear from her, Bunny?" he asks. 15. "It's finished. What did you expect?" I say. 16. "You told me yourself that you had written to her in the country," he says. 17. "You told me a lie!" I say to him. "I did nothing of the sort," he replies. 18. "I really think you had better stay away," says Raffles. "I've no use for you this time." 19. "Are you suggesting you've been framed, sir?" she says to him. 20. "When did you get here?" I ask her. 21. "What did he look like when he came home?" he asks me. "What clothes was he wearing? Did you notice anything extraordinary about his manner or appearance?" 22. "Let's go and see him," says Wilson. "And don't make a noise." 23. "Is there anything new? Did you hear him say anything?" he asks the agent.

Exercise 3. Put the following statements into *indirect speech*.

1. "I'm not going to say good-bye," he said to me. "I'm going to say what the Americans do." 2. She said to him, "Everybody tells me you're in New York." "I flew over a couple of nights ago. I've been here a day," he answered. 3. I said to him, "I've told you all about our family. Now you've got to tell me about you." 4. "I'm going to get a doll's house for my birthday," she boasted to her friends. "They promised." 5. Miranda said to Mr Wray, "I haven't got a father. He died about ten months ago." 6. "A man like that," the lieutenant said, "does no real harm." 7. "Now I'm ready for anything," he said grimly. 8. "We feel differently here at the 87th," Carella said smoothly. "We've always relied very heavily upon information provided by the medical examiner's office." 9. "It's not fair," she complained to Shirley. "They're picking all the mushrooms." Shirley answered, "That's what they're paid to do." 10. "I hope I'm not interrupting something," she said savagely. 11. "I told Mrs Nash I was waiting for you", she entreated. "She's been telling me about her son." 12. "I was asleep," he said. "Mother gave me a pill." 13. "I don't want to go home,' Alice thought in a panic. "I'm lonely." 14. She pulled herself together very quickly and said, "We won't go home till morning." 15. She said to him, "Well, there was no need to shout at him." "I didn't shout," he said. "I hardly raised my voice. And anyway, if you don't shout they go on pestering." 16. "It'll be a long way," he said, "and

probably smelly." "I don't mind the smells," she said. "If you wait for me here, I'll go up by myself. I want to see what it's like." 17. "In Russia," the Contessa said to them, "the people ride in sleighs across the snow and the wolves howl at them, but it does not matter because they are snugly wrapped in great furs and the horses pull them through the dark, because it is dark all winter in Russia, and the motion of the sleigh is smooth and the furs are warm and they fall asleep while the horses run and the night is full of vast silences and strange noises so that they hang bells on the horses' bridles, and all the nobility speak in French, so that people will know how civilized they are."

Exercise 4. Put the following statements into *indirect speech*.

1. "When war broke out I tried to enlist," he said. "But I was rejected on political grounds."
2. "There is an extra bed in my room," the consul said. "You are welcome to it if you like."
3. "We understand," they said kindly. "You can take him into Canada but the US won't let him back." 4. "I think, Watson, you have put on weight since I saw you," Holmes said. "I see you have been getting yourself wet lately and that you have a very careless servant girl." 5. "This is too much," Watson said. "I really had a walk to the country and came home very dirty; but as I have changed my clothes, I can't understand how you deduce it." 6. Watson said, "Miss Adler lives quietly, sings at concerts, drives out at five o'clock every day, and comes back at seven. She doesn't often go out at other times." 7. "The bride gave me a sovereign, and I'm going to wear it on my watch-chain in memory of this day," he said. 8. "I'm going to have some cold beef and a glass of beer," he said to the doctor. "I have been too busy to think of food and I suppose I'll be busier tonight. I'll need your help." 9. "When Mrs Hudson has brought in the food I will explain the details to you. I have only time to discuss them when I eat," he said.
10. "I am sure she doesn't carry the photograph with her," he said. 11. "I have heard of you much, Mr Holmes. You are very famous," he said. 12. "I want you, John," said my uncle, "to witness my will. I leave my estate to my brother, your father, and it will be yours then. You can live here or sell it." 13. He said, "I signed the paper and the lawyer took it away with him. I thought that case was over but I was not able to understand anything." 14. "My father examined carefully the attic," I said. "We found that small box, it was empty. There was nothing important there." 15. The man said, "I have turned to the police. They listened to me with a smile. I am sure they think that these letters are just jokes."

Exercise 5. Put the following statements into *indirect speech*.

1. The Contessa continued, "Long, long ago there were real Centaurs who roamed in Anatolia and knew strange things and sometimes took little babies and trained them in their ways and

they grew up wise and strong and fit to be rulers, because the Centaurs taught them magic."

2. "There's a man I often see here," Nell said. "No matter what time of day I choose he's nearly always here too." 3. Nell said, "I don't know what sort of man he is. It's his dog I'm interested in - you don't see so many white bull-terriers about these days." 4. "Miss Benson was sacked," Nell said, "shortly after we left. I can't remember who told me. She was found on the hockey field in the middle of the night, dead drunk apparently and singing bawdy songs." "You're making it up," Margaret said. 5. "I understand the Fell girl is telling a different story now from what she did at first. She claims now she actually saw Mrs Newberry shoot her husband."

6. "Your clerk told me I was to come straight in," said Mr Pringle to the Professor. 7. "I hope you don't think I am playing a joke on you, Professor," he said half seriously. "But I have to tell my story to someone who knows, because it's true." 8. "Professor," said the voice, "I can't stand it any longer. I'm going to look into the book for myself. If anything happens to me this is to say good-bye." 9. "I'm not sure I understand what you're talking about," said Openshaw to Father Brown. "But even if my clerk was eccentric, it doesn't explain what happened to him." 10. "I've hired a boat and I bathe and fish," said my guest to me. "I read a great deal. I have a good many books here and if there's anything I can lend you I shall be very glad." 11. "Oh, I don't care if she hears me!" said Lady Ingram. "All governesses are useless. They never teach children anything." 12. "Jane, you've come to say good-bye," she whispered, coughing. "You are just in time. I'm going soon." 13. "I don't want to play with Miss Ann Wentzel," I screamed. "I hate Miss Ann Wentzel. She's fat and she calls me a Yankee. She said my socks were ugly." 14. "I work for the American government. I'm doing research on Japanese economics after the war and that happens to include you father," the man said to me. 15. "You don't amuse me," Calder said "I'll send you some Japanese papers tomorrow. You are proficient in written translation, I take it."

Exercise 6. Change the following imperative sentences into *indirect speech*.

1. "Listen to me," he said to his fellow-students. 2. "Be careful," he shouted once more. 3. "Get up!" she repeated. "You must go and send the telegram. 4. "You'd better go away," said Mary. "It's the safest thing, and the most sensible." 5. "Don't lose you temper," Anne was saying. "Listen! You've frightened the ducks. Poor dears!" 6. "Do come to the point, my dear Denis," protested Mr Scogan. 7. "Pray, don't talk to me of eating," said Emmeline, drooping like a sensitive plant. 8. "Let's go out into the garden," Ivor said. "It's a wonderful night." 9. "Let us examine the facts," he said. 10. "Don't be ridiculous," said Sam mildly. 11. "Don't mention that despicable man. A traitor to God," the mother said. 12. "Blow out the candle. You'll sleep better," she said to her son. 13. "Get in and sit down," she commanded. 14. "Well, go on,

Mother. What did you hear?" she said to her mother. 15. "You had better send for the doctor. He has a fainting fit," somebody cried. 16. "Pack all these things up," he said to the boy. "It's no good leaving them about." 17. "Come inside, into my office, Professor. If you can call it an office now," the father apologized. 18. "Don't be a tyrant," said Miss Spence, looking first at him and then at his wife. "Let the poor invalid have what she fancies; it will do her good."

19. "Don't talk about Ruth like that," Jo said to his mother. 20. "Let's go and see Hassan's tower,"she said. 21."A Mr Loomis on the line, sir," said the Ubco operator. "Tell him I'm not here," Palmer said. 22. "Don't speak of her in that horrible casual way. She's an angel!" he said to me. 23. "For Heaven's sake, be quiet both of you," she said. 24. "Keep your eyes open, or you may have a fall," I said to her. 25. "Hurry up," she said briefly, "let's dry the floor." 26. She said, "Go and do your homework, Mary." 27. "Don't let me go," she whined.

Exercise 7. Change the following imperative sentences into *indirect speech*.

1. "Go to sleep. You're tired. I'll wake you when we need to start," she said to her husband.

2. "Mind your own business!" he said defiantly. 3. "Stop!" she commanded to Jim, "Don't make me do that." 4. "For pity's sake pull yourself together and carry through to the end.Take my word for it, that girl will be out of the house by twelve noon," said Appleton to Knowleton.

5. "Don't talk nonsense, you'll be right here eating breakfast in an hour," said Abe. 6. You'd better souse your head in cold water," Abe said to McKisco. 7. "You had better tell me. It's to your advantage," said John to Pete. 8. "Don't make hasty steps. You'd better make sure first," said Jack to his son. 9. "Let's add another diamond to your cuff links, then," Palmer said, finding it impossible to avoid sarcasm. 10. "Don't antagonize him, Woody," Burckhardt said quickly. 11. Arthur Bryce said to Ruth, "Don't hold it against Alice." 12. He said to her, "Don't talk about it, you mustn't talk about dying. You must never, never die. I won't let you die."

13. "Walk with us," she said to Arthur Bryce. 14. "Let's have dinner here in the hotel tonight, I haven't the strength to go out again," she said. 15. "Don't be silly," she snapped. 16. "Come then, shall I take you to your Gran?" she said to the little girl. 17. Palmer said to Virginia, "Let me walk you home." 18. "Tell him I've arrived," he said to the attendant. 19. "Mac, please," Virginia said. "Try and collect yourself." 20. "Go to the orchard and see how the apples are coming," she said to her husband. 21. "Go carefully with the bathwater," she said. "We'll be short if there's no rain." 22. "Don't rush around in the heat," she said to her children. 23. "Don't ask him for the money straight out, just let him know you're broke," Hell said to May.

24. "Close your eyes!" she said in a singing voice. 25. "Just don't expect me to be your bridesmaid," I said. 26. "Go to sleep, kid," said Hell to May. 27. Fleming said to him, "Get back into bed. I'll tell them you're not well."

Exercise 8. Put the following general questions into *indirect speech*.

1. "Is that your sister?" Benny asked Laura. 2. "Are you going to be good friends to one another?" she asked. 3. "Has it been a success?" Laura asked Harold. 4. "Did they misbehave then?" asked Laura. 5. "Do you really want to go?" Harold asked Laura. 6. He said to Flora, "Did you happen to notice whether the window was open or shut?" 7. He asked Flora, "Was your uncle alone, or was there anyone with him?" 8. "Did your uncle ask specially not to be disturbed?" the inspector said to her. 9. Blunt asked Flora, "Does it mean so much to you?"

10. "Did Poirot ask you any more questions?" I inquired. 11. Poirot said to me, "Do you want to know the truth?" 12. After tea Stella said shyly, "Have you read that, Frank?" 13. Hasn't Mr Pervin come in, do you know?" she said. 14. "Is Stella here?" he said. 15. Hilda said, "Do I look nice?" 16. "Is it you, Bertie? Have you come?" Isabel said. "Have you had a miserable drive?" 17. "Has the evening paper come yet?" he said. 18. "Have you never felt any qualm about the injury you have done him?" Dr Audin said to her. 19. "Was she carrying a small, blue overnight bag?" Hawes asked. 20. "Do you like the flowers, Barbara?" Tudor said. 21. "Daniels, did you write the number down?" Larry said. 22. "Do you have a black raincoat and umbrella, Mr Tudor?" Carella asked. 23. "Did you ever go to Barbara's apartment?" she said to Mr Tudor.

24. "Will you show me the house?" she asked Kitty. 25. Jennifer said to Claudia, "Do you trust him?" 26. "Do you mean to say you know nothing about it?" he asked. 27. "Will you give me some money?" she said to her husband. 28. "Does thunder strike hay huts?" Anita asked.

29. "Are you warm, dear?" Anita asked him. 30. "Do I look horrid?" she asked. 31. "Do you think Friday unlucky?" demanded Crundle.

Exercise 9. Put the following special questions into *indirect speech*.

1. "What does he do, this young fellow? And how did he come to be a friend of yours?" Poirot said to Mr Hardman. 2. "How do I look?" he asked. 3. "When did you first suspect the Countess?" Hastings said to Poirot. 4. "What are you going to do this morning?" she asked.

5. "M. Poirot!" she said. "Now, what do you think of that?" 6. "How long did the interview last?" the inspector asked. 7. The inspector asked Mrs Ackroyd, "Who is she? What do you know about her?" 8. "What questions do you want me to ask?" I asked apprehensively.

9. "When did you last see M. Ackroyd alive?" Blunt said. 10. "That is it?" I cried. "What have you found?" 11. "What did you say to her?" I asked. 12. Maurice said to Sylvia, "Why did you get Miss Cherrill to ring up my grandmother if you didn't want our help?" 13. "Where are you going, Tom?" she asked. 14. "What is he saying?" asked Jaume. 15. He asked, "How long will it take me to get to Las Casas?" 16. "What are you talking about?" Major Danby asked in confusion. 17. "Why did she break the decanter?" he cried. 18. "What did they do that for?" she

asked. 19. "Why didn't you produce this before?" asked French. 20. "What time does the first tram pass?" he said. 21. He said to me, "How do you know that?" 22. "Which of my servants did you wish to see?" she asked. 23. "When did this occur?" asked Saunders. 24. "Why didn't you come before?" I said to him. 25. She said to me, "What've you been bawling about on this gorgeous morning?" 26. I said to him, "How long are you staying?" 27. He asked me, "How long can you put up with me?" 28. He said to her, "Where did you hear that?" 29. "What does your husband say?" Bartlett asked. 30. "Where are we going, Dad?" Nick asked. 31. "Where did you learn to play?" Emma said. 32. "Why do you want to know my name? he asked me.

Exercise 10. Put the following general and special questions into *indirect speech*. Begin the sentences with the words: *I / he wondered; I / he wanted to know; I (he, she, we, you, they) asked; I / he would like to know; tell me, please*

1. Do you think he will be back soon, if I wait for him? 2. Is it so difficult to get work? 3. Is that your married name? 4. Do you think that was a very gentlemanly thing to say? 5. Who did you meet in Boston? 6. How did you spend your time? 7. What do you mean? 8. Why, what have I done to her? 9. Where do they live? 10. Why did they choose you? 11. Do you sing well? 12. Is there anyone attractive in the show? 13. Are you kidding? 14. What does he look like? 15. Will you sell me your black coat? 16. What difference does that make? 17. How old are you?
18. Why did Longworth make you an offer? 19. Have you recovered from last night? 20. What do you like about her? 21. Did he tell you that? 22. Why haven't you called? 23. Do you think I'm in love with that featherbrained broad over there? 24. Will you go to New Haven for her opening? 25. How long does this go on? 26. What are you fighting for? 27. How did you spend your time yesterday? 28. What can I do for you? 29. Do I sound so suspicious? 30. Where has she gone to? 31. Do you know why I came to your place?

Exercise 11. Put the following general and special questions into *indirect speech*.

1. Do you think you're capable of loving someone" 2. What does she think about us? 3. What did she say? 4. When will I meet her? 5. Do you want to work for Henry Bellamy the rest of your life? 6. Are you going to fight again? 7. What was she saying? 8. How did she get that?
9. Don't you believe me? 10. Does it make so much difference to you? 11. Haven't you ever heard her singing? 12. Was she going to stand around in the room all day? 13. Has he already replaced the ring? 14. What do you want? 15. Shall I send you a singing telegram? 16. Can you imagine that? 17. Have you noticed the absence of the large diamond? 18. Why didn't Henry stay? 19. How can I go back to him now? 20. Why do you think I ran? 21. What did you tell him about me yesterday? 22. What does your mother want you to wear? 23. What were you doing

here? 24. Did you just come by accident today? 25. Are you sorry? 26. Will you come to dinner today? 27. Are you glad to see me? 28. Won't she wait for you? 29. Does the girl care about you? 30. What's happened to Lucy? 31. What do you intend to do?

Exercise 12. Put the following general and special questions into *indirect speech*.

1. "Has she met your Tony? Does she like him?" I said. 2. "Do you want a cup of tea, darling? Or shall I make you some hot chocolate?" she asked him. 3. "What can I do for you?" he said to Jenny. 4. "What did he talk about?" I asked. 5. "Why did he come?" I said to James. 6. The inspector said to Miss Ursula, "How long has she been here? Have you got a copy of the reference you had with her?" 7. "Were you in Mr Ackroyd's bedroom at all last night?" the inspector said to Ursula. 8. "Do you really wish to aid me?" he said to me. 9. "Have you told me everything known to you about this young man Paton?" he said. 10. "Are you quite sure it is the truth we want?" I said gently. 11. "What did you say?" Blackie said to Mike. 12. "Are you all right?" she called me. 13. "Doesn't he keep the Pension?" the Jew inquired calmly. 14. "What do you want?" he said. 15. "Haven't they tried to take your land?" he inquired. 16. "Did you sleep well, Montex?" the sergeant said. 17. "Was the widow very disconsolate?" asked Bristow. 18. "Why didn't you say anything to the porter yesterday?" asked Maigret. 19. "Are you coming in with me?" Maigret said to him. 20. "Do you consider that what we have heard just now has helped us to discover who was the woman in the big hat?" the chief said. 21. "When did you first notice there was anything wrong with this gentleman?" asked Lady Molly. 22. "Did the gentleman seem all right?" they asked. 23. "Why are you here today?" he asked me. 24. She said to Mr Buttery, "Have you ever seen this particular mansion lit up before?" 25. She said to John, "When did you last see Toby?" 26. Dottie said to Toby, "What's the matter, love, what's happened?" 27. "Does she want to marry you?" said Dottie. 28. "What shall we do when we run out of liquid assets?" I asked uneasily. 29. She said to me, "What do you mean? Where were you?" 30. "Doesn't Mrs Gregg indulge?" asked Bartlett. 31. "What do you think of them?" asked their father.

Exercise 13. Fill in the blanks with the most suitable verbs from the list in the box. Change the sentences into *indirect speech*.

complained, ordered, inquired, protested, forbade, admitted, gasped, cautioned, urged, sobbed, broke out, wailed, objected, demanded, reproved, rejoiced, suggested, interrupted, agreed, explained, exclaimed, sighed, whispered

1. "You're not only mean," Carella said, "you're also horny." "That I am," Parker proudly.

2. "She certainly is attractive," Juan suddenly, his repression bursting into words. 3. "You go on in, " Marion nervously," I'd rather wait out here." 4. "People can't help being sick." "Yes, they can," she illogically. 5. "I don't care," Marion. "I think it terrible." 6. "No, that's not it," Michael. 7. "Well, you know how it is in New York," Michael apologetically. 8. "What'll we talk about, Michael?" she nervously on the eve of the party. "Suppose everything goes wrong." 9. "No, no," Mr Hutton "You must do no such thing." "But I should like to come," Miss Spence 10. "We could have the Willoughbys," she doubtfully. "She's on the stage or something – and he writes movies." 11. "I've got some news for you," he immediately. "Charley Hart's getting married." 12. "Let's have them up for dinner – " "I'd like to do something more than that," he 13. "It'd be a nice courtesy to Charley," "All right," Marion, "but we mustn't spend much." 14. He roused himself and spoke gruffly to his bath-things. "Come here! You've done enough fooling!" he the treacherous soap. 15. "Oh, my medicine!" Mrs Hutton. "Run in and fetch it, Clara, will you?" 16. "Watch out!" he "Somebody's coming out of that house and will see us." 17. "Cognac," he the waiter. "A big one. Tres grand." 18. "Does the girl care about you?" he 19. "Be careful with our cards," Bartholdi . 20. "Oh, and you thought of me this morning!" she 21. "I've had such nice times," Myra, "and such sweet men." 22. "Just kneel by me," she

Exercise 14. Fill in the blanks with the most suitable verbs from the list in the box. Change the sentences into *indirect speech*.

advised, whispered, threatened, wailed, implored, demanded, begged, exploded, breathed, disagreed, yelled, defended, exclaimed, protested, fired off, agreed, suggested, ordered, muttered, remarked, apologized, said

1. "Heavens!" Rosemary. "They come in for the refuse from the flotte." 2. "My dear, I wouldn't eat those red currants if I were you," he , suddenly solicitous. "But I am so fond of them," Mrs Hutton , "and I feel so well today." 3. "For God's sake, Violet, drop the subject!" her husband. "Get a new joke, for God's sake!" 4. Mrs McKisco swayed toward Mrs Abrams and audibly: "He's nervous." "I'm not nervous," McKisco. "It just happens I'm not nervous at all." 5. Miss Spence received him aimed and intense. "Your wife is dreadfully ill," she at him. 6. "I don't think I ought to tell you." Mr Scogan shook his head. "Please, please!" she 7. "You'll look after the children's sports." "All right," Mary "I'll look after the children's sports." 8. "Perhaps I'd better get out and walk," the Countess . 9. "You stay here, you two!" Denry 10. "Haul on there!" a hoarse voice. 11. "Nothing to do with me, you know!" Denry himself. 12. "Who invited you to the Mayor's ball?" Mr Duncalf like

thunder. 13. "Move along there, please!" he 14. "Look at here!" Diana darkly. "If you call her you're liable to get a bullet the side of the head." 15. "Aw, go on and blab your mouth out!" he her. 16. "This is the life," he to himself. "Only live once. Might as well enjoy it." 17. "I must have been crazy," he 18. One American can lick three Frenchmen!" he to three small stout bourgeois drinking their beer at a table. 19. "I didn't mean, didn't mean to be so cold to you," he

Exercise 15. Fill in the blanks with the most suitable verbs from the list in the box. Change the sentences into *indirect speech*.

soothed, growled, commanded, demanded, confessed, retorted, snapped, assured, screamed, warned, complained, sobbed out, declared, insisted, requested, suggested, muttered, whispered, admitted, promised, comforted.

1. "It's my fault – it's my fault!" Dorris suddenly "I shouldn't have loved you; I oughtn't to have let you love me. Why was I ever born?" 2. "You can't leave us in this house alone," she emphatically. "Wherever you go we're going too!" 3. "No, I'm inclined to think I won't read about any of these." "But you must read something," Mr Scogan. 4. He began to look at the paintings. "May I see too?" Anne 5. "Shall we go and pay a call on Gombauld?" he carelessly. "It would be amusing to see what he's doing now." 6. "Be quiet, Mary!" she 7. "I'm cold," I 8. "It's none of your business!" he . 9. "Don't get out too soon," Roger. 10. "Be quiet overhead," their grandmother. 11. "Have either one of you asked my daughter to marry him?" "I did," Parrish, "three weeks ago." 12. "What do you want?" Elaine. "You've got your nerve to come butting in here!" 13. "Get in and sit down," she 14. "You're right," Knowleton gloomily. 15. "Well," Sam , "it'll be better when you get out into the country." 16. "Oh, this won't do at all!" Fran. "Haven't you something decent?" 17. "Here! I'll get somebody!" he her. 18. He , "Now that'll do! You ought to be ashamed of yourself." 19. "Let me up!" I . 20. "I'll teach you," he

Exercise 16. Fill in the blanks with the most suitable verbs from the list in the box. Change the sentences into *indirect speech*.

mocked, screamed, coaxed, groaned, admired, assented, complained, vowed, grumbled, replied, mumbled, retorted, confessed, encouraged, murmured, inquired, admitted, cut in, contradicted, demanded, stammered, corrected, agreed, threatened

1. "Great! Great idea!" Babbitt . 2. "I can tell you the whole story myself," he cried. "All right," his friend. "You tell it." 3. "I'm not much good at this," he . 4. "Isn't it revolting?" "Absolutely vile,"she mechanically, as they walked in. 5. "Fifi!" Aunt Cal. "My poor child! Sorrow and loneliness have driven you insane." 6. "You'll answer the doctor's questions, won't you, dear?" Aunt Jo. 7. "You devil!" Elaine, her face distorted. "Look, what's happened!" 8. "Why?" she him. "Why, just because this dance happens to be given for me." 9. "That's where he and I differ. Isn't it, Dersingham?" "Well, yes, in a way, I suppose," Mr Dersigham unhappily. 10. "I'll never say that again!" he . 11. "At the same time," Sam "Hurd and your friend Lockert aren't essentially different." 12. "Very queer indeed," he ; and his grey eyes narrowed. "And how long has this remarkable business been going on?" he 13. "That's true," he . "But those are reasons, not choices." 14. "Are you trying to tell me that for twenty years you didn't – ?" "Not exactly that," she , "because I had my small, grudging moments with self-protecting men." 15. "That's what comes of not doing your bedroom out, miss," her mother . 16. "And now it's too late." "No, it isn't," Denry her flatly. 17. Who told you that?" he 18. "This is beside the question," he finally. "I want to talk to Noel." 19. "I didn't realize that what I had to do would be so hard – Mr Templeton." "Chandler," he her dully. "My name's Chandler." 20. "Looking fine, Mr Jackson. Nice day if it hadn't rained." "Yeah," John Jackson cheerfully. 21. "Well, this beats me," Mr Smeeth "I can't make head or tail of it, I really can't." 22. Help yourself to the rolls before they get cold," she 23. "Keep your eyes off Norman, he's mine!" she people.

Exercise 17. Match the phrase in the box with the mood of the remark. Change the sentences into *indirect speech*.

he said shocked; he said with an elaborate shudder; he said disapprovingly; he said humbly; he said defiantly; he said sadly; he said tenderly; he said in a sort of ecstasy; he said approvingly; he said contemptuously; he said accusingly; he said aghast; he said jubilantly; he said critically; he said accusingly; he said dumbfounded; he said humorously; he said offended; he said gratefully; he said furiously; he said gaily; he said deeply alarmed; he said indignantly

1. "That old rug is full of moth." 2. "I'm all wet." 3. "Grandpa will step on it, and slip." 4. "Your daddy oughtn't to let you go with a country barber." 5. "Excuse me." 6. "Mind your own business." 7. "You're a marvel and I'm not fit to tie your shoe strings." 8. "You look tired." 9. "I have always wanted Isabel to like me but she never has." 10. "You mustn't say such things. I've never heard such nonsense!" 11. "Do you like this place, honey? I was hoping you would." 12. "That's the wonderful thing." 13. "That's right." 14. "He has flat feet." 15. "I don't believe

you've ever understood that your daughter is getting married in five days." 16. "Douglas was with them?" 17. "Well, so you crazy youngsters have come, I'm so glad." 18. "Charlie, you're not to ask Mr Cohen for that money!" 19. "I think you're unfair." 20. "Thank you, Mrs VanR – Mrs Gunn." 21."You shouldn't have done that." 22. "No, no!" 23. "Spiders are the only one of God's creatures I cannot love."

Exercise 18. Match the phrase in the box with the mood of the remark. Change the sentences into *indirect speech*.

he said reverently; he said consolingly; he said miserably, feeling guilty; he said reproachfully; he said passionately; he said resentfully; he said contemptuously; he said evasively; he said cynically; he said wrathfully; he said silently and bitterly; he said helplessly; he said compassionately; he said emphatically; he said decidedly; he said indignantly; he said apologetically; he said wickedly; he said tearfully; he said slowly and painfully; he said grimly; he said incredulously; he said awkwardly; he said defiantly

1."Your hands belong to anybody that wants them now." 2. "I don't know what's the matter." 3. "Ain't that so, Appleton?" "Absolutely!" 4. "There is no one in there." 5. "Hungry from your trip Poor girl, poor little girl, starving!" 6. "The servants are frightfully inefficient in this house!" 7. "You imagine you're happy, so you suppose everyone else is." 8. "Why, you little fool! What are you trying to do? Lose me my job?" 9. "I don't like them, not one of them." 10. "Well, you know how it is in New York. He's just as busy as I am." 11. "Travel! Where there's so much to do here at home" 12. "I'll come out again – later in the week." 13. "Oh, won't you promise to come back?" 14. "There's something I have to tell you." 15. "I don't suppose he'll try to rob us tonight." "Rob you!" 16. "Please go away! I want to be alone." 17. "Well, you are a kid. Must you quarrel all the time with your mother?" 18. "I know he's ill." 19. "So you're making friends with the Van Rensbergs." 20. "Give Sally my regards." 21. "You'll see, it'll be ever-ever such a fine wedding, and you'll like it." 22. "I intended to get you a present but my money got away before I could." 23. "I like her. I'm not a child and I rather resent your attitude."

Exercise 19. Translate the following sentences into English paying attention to the imperative sentences in *indirect speech*.

1. ფლორამ ერთ-ერთ მაგიდასთან დამსვა და მითხრა, რომ დაელოდებოდი და მიშველიდა. 2. ტომმა მითხრა, არსად წაესულიყავი, სანამ ყველაფერს არ

გაეარკვეედი. 3. მან გეითხრა: დარჩით დღეს ჩვენთან, არ ინანებთო. 4. ჩვენ ბაეშვებს ეუთხარით ჩუმად ყოფილიყვნენ და არ ეხმაურათ, თორემ ბაბუა გაიღვიძებდა. 5. დედამ მითხრა: დამეხმარე დღეს სადილის მომზადებაშიო. 6. მან მითხრა: არ გამიბრაზდე, ჩემი ბრალი არ არისო. 7. დედამ ბაეშვებს უთხრა, უცხო ადამიანებისთვის კარი არ გაეღოთ. 8. ჩვენ ეთხოვეთ მას, ასეთი სულელური კითხვები არ დაესვა. 9. გამომძიებელმა ტომს უთხრა, ყველაფერი მოეყოლა, რაც იცოდა. 10. დედამ ბაეშვებს უთხრა: ყველაფერი შეჭამეთ, რაც დაგიდეთ მაგიდაზე და თეფშებზე არაფერი არ დატოვოთო. 11. ჩვენ ეუთხარით მას, რომ ეჩქარა, წინააღმდეგ შემთხვევაში ჩვენ დაგვაგვიანდებოდა.

12. გამომძიებელმა პატიმარს უთხრა: გააგრძელე, რისი თქმა გინდოდა, ნუ გაჩერდებიო. 13. ღარიბმა კაცმა უთხრა მდიდარ კაცს: არ მიაბა შენი ცხენი იმაეე ხეზე, სადაც ჩემი ცხენია მიბმული. 14. მან გეითხრა: შეწყეიტეთ კამათი და ახლაეე დაიძინეთო. 15. ანამ გეითხრა, იმ კაცისთვის არ მიგეექცია ყურადღება, რადგან თვითონაც არ იცოდა, რას ლაპარაკობდა. 16. მან მთხოვა, გულთან ახლოს არ მიმეტანა მისი სიტყვები, რადგან ჩემი წყენინება არ უნდოდა. 17. ნელიმ დამირეკა: ჩემი წიგნის წამოღება არ დაგაეიწყდესო. 18. მე გაეაფრთხილე ბაეშვები, სახლიდან გასელის წინ გაზი და შუქი გამოერთოთ.

19. დედამ ანას უთხრა: კარგად მისმინე, რასაც გეტყვი არ დაგაეიწყდეს, რომ შენ ჯერ პატარა ხარ და დამოუკიდებლად ნუ მოქმედებო. 20. ჩვენ მას ეუთხარით: გააკეთე, რაც გინდა, მაგრამ როდესაც გაგიჭირდება, დახმარებისათვის ნუ მოხვალო. 21. ნიკოს ეუთხარით: იმოქმედე, როგორც გეუბნებიან და ნუ გვეკამათებიო. 22. მე ძალიან შეეხეეწე მას არაეისთვის არაფერი ეთქვა ჩვენი გეგმის შესახებ. 23. მამაჩემმა ქურდს უთხრა: წადი აქედან და აღარ გაბედო აქ მოსელა, თორემ პოლიციას ჩაეარებ შენს თავსო. 24. მე ოჯახში დავიბარე, არ დამლოდებოდნენ, რადგან გვიან მოვიდოდი და უჩემოდ ესადილათ.

Exercise 20. Translate the following sentences into English paying attention to the imperative sentences in *indirect speech*.

1. ბაეშვები გააფრთხილეს, რომ ბურთი არ გაეხიათ, რადგან მეტს არ უყიდნენ. 2. გამგზაერების წინ მას ეთხოვეთ, როგორც კი ჩაეიდოდა, დეპეშა გამოეგზაენა. 3. პეტრემ თაეისი და გააფრთხილა, რომ მისი წიგნებისთვის და რეეულებისთვის ხელი არ ეხლო. 4. მე ეთხოვე ნიკოს, ზღეაში შორს არ გაეცურა, თორემ ძალიან ეინერეიულებდი. 5. რამდენჯერ უნდა გთხოვო, რომ არ მოწიო

საძინებელ ოთახში. 6. მერიმ ქმარს სთხოვა, არ დაელია ბევრი, რადგან იმ დღეს სხვაგან იყვნენ წასასვლელები. 7. ავადმყოფმა ითხოვა, ფანჯარა გაგეელო, რადგან ჰაერი არ ყოფნიდა. 8. მე ეუთხარი ჩემს პატარა ძმას, რომ არ გავებრაზებინე, თორემ დავსჯიდი. 9. ხომ გაგაფრთხილე, ამ ძაღლს არ მოფერებოდი, თორემ გიკბენდა. 10. მასწავლებელმა გააფრთხილა ნიკო, რომ გაკეთილებზე არ დაეგვიანა. 11. ბებიამ გვითხრა, ხმამაღლა ილაპარაკეთ, არ მესმისო. 12. მამამ პეტრეს უთხრა, ნუ მიედებ-მოედები (to beat about the bush), თქვი, რისი თქმაც გინდაო. 13. ნიკომ მითხრა: დღეს, რეზოს ჩამოსვლამდე ნუ მომთხოვ ყველაფრის ახსნას, მერე მკითხე, რაც გაინტერებსო. 14. ძალიან ციოდა ქუჩაში და დედამ სთხოვა თავის პატარა გოგონას, ცოტაც მოეთმინა და როცა სახლში მივიდოდნენ, იქ გათბებოდნენ. 15. ნინომ მთხოვა: შემპირდი, რომ საღამოს ჩვენთან მოხვალო. 16. კაცი ეხვეწებოდა ქალს: წაიღეთ ფული და ჩქარა წადით, თორემ ჩემი ცოლი მოვა და არ მინდა, ასეთ სიტუაციაში მოგვისწროსო. 17. თვალცრემლიანი ანეტა ნათიას ეხვეწებოდა: ნუ ტირიხარ, დამშვიდდიო. 18. ირაკლიმ ჰკითხა ნიკას: გულზე ხელი დაიდე და ისე მითხარი, ეს ყველაფერი სიმართლეა? 19. ქეთიმ სთხოვა თავის მეგობარს: ჩემს ქმართან მიდი და ყველაფერი მოუყევი, დანარჩენი იმან იცისო. 20. ნიკომ თავის ცოლს უთხრა: ნუ ღელავ, ისე არ დავთვრები, რომ მანქანა ვერ წავიყვანოო. 21. არ წახვიდე უჩემოდ ბაკურიანში, მხოლოდ ერთი კვირა დამელოდე. ახლა ძალიან დაკავებული ვარ. 22. ქეთიმ თავის მეგობარ ანას სთხოვა: ხვალ სტუმრებს ველოდები და სუფრის გაშლაში მომეხმარეო. 23. ექიმმა დედას უთხრა: ძალიან ნუ გადაიღლები, არ ინერვიულო და საღამოს ადრე დაწექიო. გარდა ამისა დიეტაც დაიცავი და აუცილებლად მალე გამოჯანმრთელდებიო. 24. ექიმმა-დიეტოლოგმა მირჩია: საღამოს ბევრს ნუ ჭამ, მხოლოდ ერთი ჭიქა მაწონი დალიე, ძილის წინ კი სუფთა ჰაერზე ერთი საათი გაისეირნეო.

Exercise 21. Translate the following sentences into English paying attention to the ways of rendering general and special questions in *indirect speech*.

1. მან მკითხა, შენი და სად ცხოვრობს და თბილისში როდის ჩამოვაო. 2. მე ვკითხე ჩემს დას, რამდენი ხანია მელოდებოდა. 3. მან მკითხა, შაბათს სად მიდიხარო. 4. მან მკითხა, დაღლილი ხომ არა ხარო. 5. დედამ ბავშვებს ჰკითხა, ფინჯანი ვინ გატეხაო. 6. ექიმმა ავადმყოფს ჰკითხა, თავს როგორ გრძნობო.
7. ანამ მკითხა, ხომ არ მეჩქარებოდა. 8. მამამ ქეთის ჰკითხა, ახლა რას აკეთებდა. 9. მან მკითხა, კალათბურთს ხშირად თამაშობო. 10. დედას ვკითხე,

მამას ხომ არ ეძინა. 11. დედამ მკითხა, ჯეკმა როდის დამირეკა. 12. მან გეკითხა, იმ საღამოს წეეულებაზე რამე უცნაური ხომ არ შეგიმჩნეეიათო. 13. დედამ მკითხა, დღეს სკოლაში რა ნიშანი მივიღე. 14. ანამ მკითხა, სკოლაში ინგლისურს ესწაელობდი თუ ფრანგულს. 15. მერის აინტერესებდა, ხვალ სახლში ვიქნებოდი თუ არა. 16. მასწაელებელმა მოსწაელეებს ჰკითხა, აგატა კრისტის რამდენი რომანი ჰქონდათ წაკითხული. 17. წერილში ჩემი მეგობარი მეკითხებოდა, როგორ ვიყავი, ემუშაობდი თუ არა და ცოლის შერთვას როდის ვაპირებდი. 18. ანამ მკითხა, რამდენი ხანი ველოდებოდი. 19. ნიკომ მკითხა, კვირას რას ვაპირებდი და, თუ თავისუფალი ვიქნებოდი, მათთან ერთად პიკნიკზე ხომ არ წავიდოდი. 20. ჩემს შვილს აინტერესებდა, როდის გავიცანი მამამისი. 21. ნიკოს აინტერესებდა, როდის შედგა ეს საუბარი და ახლა რას ვაპირებდით. 22 დედამ მკითხა, სახლში როდის მივიდოდი და სადილად რა დაეხვედრებინა. 23. მასწაელებელს აინტერესებდა, გაეგებთ თუ არა ახალი მასალა. 24. მას აინტერესებდა, სად იყვნენ ახლა მისი სკოლის მეგობრები, რას აკეთებდნენ და დაოჯახდნენ თუ არა. 25. ანას ეკითხე, რატომ იყო მოწყენილი, ვინმემ ხომ არ აწყენინა. 26. ჩემს ძმას აინტერესებდა, ახლა რაზე ეფიქრობდი და სად ვაპირებდი საღამოს წასელას. 27. გამყიდველს ეკითხე, რა ღირდა ის მოდური ცისფერი კაბა და ჩემი ზომა ჰქონდათ თუ არა. 28. სადგურში ეიკითხეთ, იყო თუ არა მატარებელი ბათუმამდე და პირველი რეისი როდის გადიოდა. 29. ბებიას აინტერესებდა, კიდევ როდის ეესტუმრებოდით. 30. ქეთიმ მკითხა, ჩემმა ქმარმა თუ იცოდა ეს ამბავი და თუ იცოდა, რა მითხრა.

Exercise 22. Translate the following sentences into English paying attention to the ways of rendering general and special questions in *indirect speech*.

1. მასწაელებელმა მკითხა, გუშინ გაკვეთილები რატომ გავაცდინე. 2. მან იკითხა რომელი საათი იყო და ასე ადრე რატომ გავაღვიძეთ. 3. მამამ დედას ჰკითხა, ბაეშვები სახლში რატომ არ იყვნენ და სად წავიდნენ. 4. პოლიციელი მიუახლოვდა ბიჭებს და ჰკითხა, რატომ ჩხუბობდნენ. 5. დიასახლისმა გეკითხა, ღამე როგორ გეძინა და საუზმისთვის რა მოემზადებინა. 6. მამამ მკითხა, ზაფხულში სად ეისვენებდით. 7. მასწაელებელმა გეითხრა, რომ კარნახისთვის მოემზადებულიყავით. 8. მან მკითხა, რომელ საათზე ედგებოდი დილით და თუ ვეარჯიშობდი. 9. ქმარმა ცოლს ჰკითხა, თუ რატომ არ იძინებდა ბაშვი, ხომ არ შიოდა ან რაიმე ხომ არ სტკიოდა. 10. ჩვენ ანას ეკითხეთ, ნამცხვრების გამოცხობა ხომ არ ეხერხებოდა და ხშირად თუ აცხობდა. 11. ანამ მკითხა, ეს

მანქანა როდის ვიყიდე და რამდენი გადავიხადე. 12. მან მკითხა, თუ ენახე ანჟელა სადმე. 13. მან მკითხა, მოჩვენებების თუ მჯეროდა და თუ მჯეროდა, როდის ენახე. 14. მან მკითხა, სახლში მარტო თუ ვიყავი და რას ვაკეთებდი. 15. მე ანას ვკითხე, ხომ არ სციოდა და ცეცხლი ხომ არ დამენთო. 16. მე ვკითხე დედას, ბაზარში ასე ადრე რატომ მიდიოდა და რისი ყიდვა უნდოდა. 17. მან მკითხა, ხომ არ ვიცოდი ჯონსონები სად ცხოვრებდნენ. 18. ჩვენ ვიკითხეთ, ანა შეყვარებული ხომ არ იყო და, თუ შეყვარებული იყო, ვისზე. 19. ჩვენ ვკითხეთ მას, მანქანა ასე ჩქარა რატომ დაჰყავდა. 20. მან მკითხა, თუ რატომ მოვედი და რისი თქმა მინდოდა. 21. ანამ დალის ჰკითხა, ოდესმე ვინმე თუ ჰყვარებია. 22. მას აინტერესებდა, რა მოუვიდოდა სახლს, თუ მისი პატრონი მოკვდებოდა. 23. მან მკითხა, ასეთი ლამაზი კაბა სად ვიყიდე. 24. ჩვენ ნიკოს ვკითხეთ ახალ სახლში როდის გადავიდოდნენ და ახალმოსახლეობა თუ ექნებოდათ. 25. მან მკითხა, ყოველთვის ამ სახლში თუ ცხოვრობდით, ვინ იყვნენ თქვენი მეზობლები. 26. პეტრემ მკითხა, ძაღლის ხომ არ მეშინოდა. 27. მას ვკითხე, ოდესმე თუ წარმოიდგენდა, რომ ასეთი რამ მოხდებოდა. 28. მან მკითხა, მისი სათვალეები ხომ არ მინახავს. 29. ჩვენ ვკითხეთ ნიკოს, ყოველთვის რატომ ტყუოდა და ბოლოს და ბოლოს, სიმართლეს როდის გვეტყოდა. 30. დედამ მკითხა, ამდენი ფული რაზე დავხარჯე.

Exercise 23. Translate the following sentences into English paying attention to the ways of rendering general and special questions in *indirect speech*.

1. დედამ ნიკოს უთხრა, როგორ არ რცხვენოდა, რომ ეს გააკეთა. 2. ანამ პეტრეს ჰკითხა, მის დას ხელი სთხოვა თუ არა. 3. მასწავლებელმა იკითხა, რატომ აცდენდა ნიკო გაკვეთილს, აეად ხომ არ იყო. 4. მან მკითხა, დარწმუნებული ვიყავი, რომ იქ შევძლებდი წასვლას. 5. უცრად ის მოტრიალდა და გეკითხა, თუ რა დავუშაეთ ისეთი, რომ გვძულდა. 6. ჩვენ გავოცდით, რომ ისინი გაშორდნენ ერთმანეთს და ნელის დედას ვკითხეთ, რა მოხდა. 7. ნელიმ მკითხა, გუშინ რატომ არ დავურეკე. 8. ანამ მკითხა, რატომ გვინდოდა, რომ მთელი დღე სახლში მჯდარიყო და არსად არ გასულიყო; იგი უკვე კარგად იყო. 9. პეტრეს ვკითხე, რატომ ახველებდა, ხომ არ გაცივდა. 10. ჩვენ ვკითხეთ ანას, ვინ ელოდებოდა და მან კი თავის მხრივ გვკითხა, ჩვენთვის ამას რა მნიშვნელობა ჰქონდა. 11. მამა თევზაობიდან რომ დაბრუნდა, ვკითხეთ, რამდენი თევზი დაიჭირა. 12. მამამ ყვავილები რომ დაინახა მაგიდაზე, იკითხა ვინ მოგვართვა. 13. ანდრემ იკითხა, ვიცოდით თუ არა რაიმე პეტრეს შესახებ;

გაემგზავრა თუ არა იგი საბერძნეთში გასულ კვირას, როგორც აპირებდა.
14. ნიკალამ უცნობს მისამართი უკარნახა და ჰკითხა, რამდენ ხანში მოვიდოდნენ. 15. გამოცდიდან რომ გამოვედი, სტუდენტებმა მკითხეს, რა ნიშანი მივიღე, ლექტორმა რა კითხვები დამისვა, ძნელი იყო თუ არა ეს კითხვები.
16. ნიკომ მკითხა, წინაალმდეგი ხომ არ ვიყავი, სახლამდე მივეცილებინე, რადაცა მაქვსო სათქმელი. 17. მე ვკითხე პეტრეს, როგორ ფიქრობდა: ფულით ყველაფრის ყიდვა შეიძლებოდა. 18. მან მკითხა, რამდენი ხანი იყო რაც ამ სტუდენტს ვიცნობდი. 19. მათთან რომ მივედი, ვკითხე, რატომ დამირეკეს, რისი თქმა უნდოდათ. 20. ანა გამოპრანჭული რომ დაეინახე, ეკითხე რატომ გამოეწყო ასე, ეის უნდა შეხვედროდა. 21. ნიკა გუშინ სახლში გვიან დაბრუნდა და დედამ ჰკითხა, რატომ დააგვიანა, სად იყო, რატომ არ დაურეკა. 22. მეისონმა გეკითხა, დედის შესახებ რაიმე თუ ვიცით. 23. პეტრემ მკითხა, გავიგე თუ არა, რა მოხდა ცხინვალში. 24. მან მკითხა, რამდენი ხანია, რაც ეს საათი გექონდა და ვინ გვაჩუქა. 25. პერიმ მეისონს ჰკითხა, რატომ უნდოდა მისი დაშინება. 26. დედამ ნიკოს ჰკითხა, რას გულისხმობდა, რისი თქმა უნდოდა. 27. ანამ მკითხა, რატომ არ ვუთხარი, რომ მშიოდა. 28. ამერიკელ სტუმარს ეკითხეთ, ქართული კერძები ოდესმე თუ გაუსინჯავს. 29. მეზობელმა მკითხა, მისმა სტუმრებმა წინა დღეს ხომ არ შეგვაწუხეს. 30. მას აინტერესებდა, თავისუფალ დროს როგორ ვატარებდით.

Test Your Knowledge

Exercise 1. Put the following sentences into *indirect speech*.

1. "Do you know this man, sir?" he asked Donald. "I'm his cousin. What's happened?" I said.
2. "Why?" Don said in anguish. "Why did she come home?" "I expect we'll find out, sir." 3. "Is there anything to drink?" he asked. "Only the cooking brandy," I said. "We could have some of the wine," he said. "What wine?" "In the cellar." His eyes suddenly opened wide. "Good God, I'd forgotten about the cellar." "I didn't even know you had one," I said. 4. Frost asked, "Could you tell us what exactly was stolen?" "Silver. Paintings." "Who were the paintings by and how much were they worth?" After a pause Don said, "I don't know." "Were they insured?" "Yes." "How many bedrooms are there in your house?" asked Frost. Donald said, "I suppose five." "Can you tell us anything about your wife, about her character and about her job?" asked Frost. Donald said, "I can't". 5. "Do you know what Frost thinks?" he said. "More or less," I said. "I couldn't convince him. He kept asking the same questions, over and over. Why doesn't he

believe me?" said Donald. "A lot of people lie to the police. I think they grow to expect it," I said. "He wants me to meet him in my office tomorrow. He says he'll be bringing colleagues.. He says they'll want to see the books," said Donald. I nodded. "Better be grateful he didn't drag you down there today," I said. "I suppose so," Donald agreed. I said awkwardly, "Don, I'm sorry. I told him the wine was missing. It made him suspicious It was a good deal my fault that he was so bloody to you." 6. He smiled faintly. "You'd better go instead of me. I haven't the energy. And what does it matter? Without Regina there's no point in making money." "We're not talking about money, we're talking about suspicion. If you don't defend yourself, they'll assume you can't," I said. "I'm too tired. I can't be bothered. They can think what they like." "Don," I said seriously," "They'll think what you let them." "I don't really care," he said dully: and that was the trouble. 7. "Have they got anywhere with catching the thieves?" I said. He smiled wanly. "I don't even know if they're trying."

Exercise 2. Put the following sentences into *indirect speech*.

1. Ring – "Hello?" "Edith? Good morning." "Oh, hi, Dad." "Gerri? Did I wake you up?" "No," his daughter said after a moment. "There are hornets under the eaves or something. They wake me up all the time. Where are you?" "New York. How have you been?" "Fine." "Can I talk to Mom?" "She isn't here." "Then find her, Gerri. I'll wait." "I don't know where to look." "Gerri, put down the phone and call her. Call loudly enough for her to hear." "I might wake her up if she's still asleep." "Now, get going Gerri. This is a long-distance call." 2. "When do we start this work?" Palmer asked. "We've been working for the past fifteen minutes, sweetheart. Or didn't you notice?" Palmer smiled slightly. "If this is work, I've been cruelly misled for years. Just what kind of work are we doing?" "We're getting seen," Burns explained. "Together. In the right places. By the right people. It reminds me of my early days in Hollywood. Don't look around, whatever you do, but in the other corner table on this side there's a man sitting. He's almost finished eating. He'll get up in a minute and, on his way out, he'll stop by to say hello. His name isn't important. He's a bird dog for several columnists. Even that doesn't make him important enough for me to ask him to sit down and have a brandy. His only function is to register us sitting together and report it back He's getting up. Try to act furtive when he shows." 3. "What're you doing for lunch?" Burckhardt asked abruptly. "What else?" Palmer retorted. "I'm eating it with Mac Burns. I've canceled the date three times in the past week. Do you want me to break it again?" "No-no," Burckhardt said thoughtfully. "Then I'll tell you what I have to say straight, Woody." 4. "Shall I begin at the beginning?" he said. "Not necessarily," I said. "Begin anywhere. Begin at the end and work backwards to the beginning." 5. "Aren't you going to finish your food?" Mrs Maloney said. "No, I'm not," Mike Maloney said. "And I'll tell

you why, too. I don't want him to be denied anything he wants or anything his mother wants him to have, without earning it."

Exercise 3. Put the following sentences into *indirect speech*.

1. "Tony Polar? Anne – don't tell me you're not one of his fans?" "I've never even heard of him." He leaned across and spoke to the chauffer. "Leon, drive through the park till I tell you to stop. You're probably starving, but I have a special reason for the drive." She said, "Allen, I've got to talk to you." "Not just yet – shut your eyes .Now you can look. I hope it fits ." The diamond was overwhelming. She shrank away. "I can't take that!" "Don't you like it?" "It's the most fantastic thing I've ever seen!" 2. "Let me come up with you," he begged. "You were with me last night, Robby." "Is there a rule about two nights?" "Yes, when I'm working. Call me tomorrow." Her smile was promising. "What time?" "Around six. We'll have dinner before the show." 3. "Mother, how can a girl twenty-five look forty?" "When a girl has no money and marries for love, she ages real fast. Love doesn't last. Men only care about one thing. Remember your father!" "Mother, this is long distance," Jennifer said wearily. "You didn't call me just to complain about Daddy. Besides, John's been a wonderful husband to you. I don't even remember Daddy, but I'm sure he couldn't have been as nice as John." "He was a louse, your father. Rich, handsome and a louse. But I loved him. Our family had money, but we had a name." "Didn't we agree that I was to take a strange name so no one could trace me? If I'm to pass as nineteen, I have to be Jennifer North." "The whole town's been talking about you since you eloped." "Mother, why do you think I ran? Just before we were to go to Italy, I found out he had no money." "What do you mean? I saw the picture in the papers!" 4. "What did you tell him about me?" "I said you were dead." "But if you marry him, how do you explain me?" "You'll be my aunt – my mother's dear sister whom I support." "All right. Are you watching your weight?" "I'm very thin, Mother " "I know, but don't gain and lose. That's the worst thing for your breasts."

Exercise 4. Put the following sentences into *indirect speech*.

1. "Andrews? What's the matter with him?" "Nothing that I know of; only we haven't been able to find him to tell him Mrs Collinson has been rescued. His office hasn't seen him since yesterday morning, and nobody will say they know where he is." "Is there any special reason for wanting him?""I don't want her on my hands the rest of my life,"I said."He's in charge of her affairs, he's responsible for her, and I want to turn her over to him." 2. "Tell me what you know about Madison Andrews." "I don't know anything about him. He's her guardian or something. I read that in the newspaper. But I don't know him." "Aaronia Haldorn does." "Maybe she does,

but I don't. I just worked for the Haldorns. It wasn't anything to me but a job." "What was it to your wife?" "The same thing, a job." "Where is she?" "I don't know." "Why'd she run away from the Temple?" "I told you before, I don't know. Didn't want to get in trouble." 3. "I'll be there," Anne promised. "But it looks as if things will never be settled here. I spoke to Henry a few days ago. He's been wonderful – says to take as long as I need. But I'm coming in for Christmas. When Lyon calls tonight I'll tell him about the party. We'll see you then." 4. "How's your boy, Henry? I see he's done pretty well in the tournament." Henry Garnet's frown grew darker. "He's done no better than I expected him to." "When does he come back from Monte?" "He got back last night." "Did he enjoy himself?" "I suppose so; all I know is that he made a damned fool of himself." "Oh. How?" "I'd rather not talk about it if you don't mind." 5. She pushed him away when he wanted to kiss her. "Why haven't you come before?" "You locked the door on me. I thought you didn't want me!" "Was it only that? Had you no other reason?" "I've been busy," he said. "What have you been doing?" "Why did you hit her?" "How do you know I hit her? Have you seen her?" 6. "Why do you think your husband went off like that, Mrs Androvich?" "I don't know." "You didn't quarrel or anything that morning?" "No, we didn't quarrel." "I don't mean a real fight or anything," Carella said. "Anyone who's married has a quarrel every now and then."

Exercise 5. Translate the following into English.

1. დირექტორმა გამაფრთხილა, თუ კიდევ დაეაგვიანებდი, სამსახურს დაეკარგავდი. 2. მასწავლებელმა გეკითხვა, პეტრე თუ მოეინახულეთ და როგორ არის. 3. დედას ეკითხე, ჩემი ჩანთა ხომ არ უნახავს. 4. დალი შეგეკითხა, პეტრე თუ ეიცანით და შეცვლილი თუ არის. 5. მასწავლებელმა ჯონის უთხრა, რომ გაკვეთილებზე ბევრს ლაპარაკობდა, ხმაურობდა და ამიტომ მეორე დღეს დედა სკოლაში მოეყვანა. 6. ჩემს მეგობარს ეუთხარი: ეშიშობ შენთან ერთად ზღვაზე ვერ წამოვალ, დედა არ მიშვებს. 7. კაცი შემეკითხა, ხომ არ ეიცოდი ბათუმის მატარებელი როდის გადიოდა. 8. დედამ პეტრე გააფრთხილა, ბებიასთან რომ ჩაეიდოდა, სახლში დარეკეა არ დაეიწყებოდა. 9. იგი შემეკითხა, სად მივდიოდი გუშინ, ფოსტასთან რომ დამინახა. 10. ჩემმა დამ თქვა, რომ გუშინ სახლში არ იყო და არ იცის, ვინ დაურეკა. 11. პაატამ თქვა, რომ ბორჯომში არასოდეს ყოფილა. 12. მან მკითხა, სად ეისწავლე ცურვა. 13. ანამ მკითხა, ჩვენს მასწავლებელს თვეში რამდენს უხდიანო. 14. პოლიციელმა მკითხა, ხანძრის მიზეზი ხომ არ ეიცოდი. 15. ჯეიმსმა მითხრა, რომ დაღლილი არ იყო და შეეძლო ჩემთან ერთად სასეირნოდ წამოსვლა. 16. ჯონიმ მითხრა, რომ არ ხუმრობდა, მან თვითონ ნახა ეს ყველაფერი. 17. ბიცოლამ ტომს

უთხრა, არ ეცრუა. 18. ქალმა თაეის ქმარს უთხრა, ასე ნუ მიყურებო. 19. მამამ მკითხა, სახლიდან რატომ გაეედი დაუკითხაეად. 20. ნინომ მკითხა, სად მირბოდნენ ბაეშეები. 21. ბობმა მითხრა, რომ მას არ სჯეროდა, რომ ასეთი რამ შეიძლებოდა მომხდარიყო. 22. ის დარწმუნებული იყო, რომ მათი გზები კელაე გადაიჭრებოდა. 23. ბაეშეებს დიდხანს არ ეძინათ, რადგან ფიქრობდნენ, თუ რას მოუტანდა თოელის ბაბუა. 24. მან მკითხა, ინსტიტუტში შესელამდე რომელ ენას ესწაელობდი. 25. უფროსმა დამ უთხრა, რომ ძაღლისთეის თაეი დაენებებინა, და გაკეთილები მოემზადებინა.

Exercise 6. Translate the following into English.

1. მას აინტერესებდა, ადრე თუ იყო საქართეელოში და მეორედ როდის აპირებდა ჩამოსელას. 2. ლალიმ მკითხა, პალტო სად გაეხიე. 3. მასწაელებელმა ბაეშეებს უთხრა, რომ სახლში წასულიყენენ. 4. დედამ გეითხრა, ხმამაღლა ნუ ლაპარაკობთ, პატარა ანის სძინაეს. 5. ცნობილ მოგზაურს ეკითხეთ, აფრიკაში თუ ყოფილა და იქ რა ნახა. 6. მასწაელებელმა მკითხა, გაკეთილი რატომ არ ეისწაელე, და გამაფრთხილა, თუ ასე გავაგრძელებდი, გამოცდაზე ჩაეიჭრებდი. 7. სტუდენტებმა დეკანს ჰკითხეს, თუ როდის მთაერდებოდა სემესტრი და გამოცდები როდის დაიწყებოდა. 8. ბაბუამ ბაეშეები გააფრთხილა, რომ ცეცხლთან არ ეთამაშათ. 9. ჯენიმ ანას ჰკითხა, შარშან ლონდონში თუ იყო.
10. მას აინტერესებდა, თუ როდის დამირეკა უკანასკნელად ჯეკმა. 11. დედას ეკითხე, მამა სად იყო და სახლში როდის მოეიდოდა. 12. ლიზამ მკითხა, წინააღმდეგი ხომ არ ეიყაეი, ფანჯარა რომ გაეღო. 13. ბაეშემა იკითხა, ბურთს რისგან ამზადებდნენ. 14. გამყიდველს შეეკითხე, ეს პალტო რა ღირდა. 15. ანამ მკითხა, ხომ არ მეჩქარებოდა და მთხოვა, ოჯახურ საქმეებში დახმარება.
16. მაშინ ეფიქრობდი, ადრე თუ გეიან სიმართლეს მაინც გაარკეედნენ. ახლა კი ეხედები, რომ სიმართლე არაეის არ აინტერესებდა. 17. ლიკამ კიდეე ერთხელ სცადა დაერეკა ლიონისთეის, მაგრამ ამაოდ. გადაწყეიტა, სახლში მისულიყო მასთან და თუ არ დახედებოდა, მეზობლებისგან გაეგო მისი ასაეალ-დასაეალი (whereabouts). 18. სამსახურში მისელისთანაეე თაეის მდივანს უთხრა, რომ სამუშაო ჰქონდა და სთხოეა, არაეის არ შეეწუხებინა. 19. ანამ ნიკოს სთხოეა, სახლში გეიან არ დაერეკა, რადგან მამა მისი ბრაზობდა, როდესაც უცხო ბიჭები ურეკაედნენ. 20. მას ეთხოეე, არაეისთეის მოეყოლა იმ საღამოს საუბრის შინაარსი. 21. როდესაც მასთან მიეედი, აღმოჩნდა, რომ ახალ ბინაში გადასულიყო. ჩენ კი გეეგონა, რომ ის აეადაა. 22. ძმამ მითხრა, რომ არ

მეთანხმება და რომ საკუთარი აზრი გააჩნია ამ საკითხთან დაკავშირებით. 23. როდესაც ავტობუსში აეედი, გამახსენდა, რომ პეტრეს შეეპირდი, გამოგიელი - მეთქი. 24. მასწავლებელმა მოსწავლეებს უთხრა, კლასიდან არ გასულიყვნენ. 25. მე არ ვიცოდი, როდის დაბრუნდებოდნენ ისინი ქობულეთიდან, რადგან არაფერი არ დაუბარებიათ გამგზავრების წინ.

Exercise 7. Translate the following into English.

1. გიორგიმ დიასახლისს ჰკითხა, ტელეფონი თუ ჰქონდათ სახლში, რადგან სასწრაფო საქმის გამო დარეკვა სჭირდებოდა. 2. მან მითხრა, რომ წარმოდგენა არ ჰქონდა, რაზე ლაპარაკობდნენ. ამაზე ჩელეს არაფერი უთქვამს, მაგრამ საუბრისას რამდენჯერმე გიორგი ახსენაო. 3. ირაკლიმ უთხრა ზაზას, გაბომ იმ დილით ჩამოვიდა თბილისიდანო და როგორც კი ყველაფერი მომახსენა, მაშინვე შენთან წამოვედიო. 4. გიორგიმ ახალგაზრდებს ჰკითხა ტელეფონზე, ახლა სადა ხართო, და მერე დაუმატა, ჩემი მისამართი გაქვთ, ტაქსი აიყვანეთ და ჩემთან მოდითო. 5. თამთამ ბაიას უთხრა, ძლიეს გიცანი, ძალიან შეცვლილი ხარო. თამთა დაეთანხმა და უთხრა, რომ ისიც შეცვლილი იყო, მაგრამ ისევ ისეთი ნაზი, როგორიც ადრე. 6. აგნესამ შეამჩნია თეთრი ეარდები ლარნაკში და ქმარს ჰკითხა, ვინ მოიტანა. 7. ნიკომ საძინებელი ოთახიდან ბიჭებს გამოსძახა: გაეიღვიძე და ჩემთან შემოდითო. 8. ნანამ მითხრა: თუ სპეციალურ ლექსიკონს მომიტან, მე შენ სტატიას ვთარგმნიო. 9. პეტრემ მითხრა: ეს წიგნი წავიკითხე, როდესაც ლონდონში ვიყავიო. 10. ჩვენ ვნახეთ, რომ მისი გამოთქმა საგრძნობლად გაუმჯობესდა. 11. დედამ მითხრა, რომ ძალიან ცოტა ფული აქეს და დღეს ფულს ვერ მოგცემს. 12. დარწმუნებული ვიყავი, რომ როგორც კი ნიკო კარგ სამსახურს იშოვიდა, ის ანაზე დაქორწინდებოდა, რადგან მათ ერთმანეთი უკვე დიდი ხანია უყვარდათ. 13. ნიკომ მეგობრებს სთხოვა, რუსთაველის მეტროსთან დამელოდეთო. 14. ლიკამ დამირეკა და მითხრა, დედამ დღეს კარგი სადილი მოამზადა: ქათამი შეწვა და ხაჭაპური გამოაცხო და შენს მოსვლას ელოდებაო. 15. ლიზამ მითხრა, შენი საყვარელი ლარნაკი გავტეხე და არ გამიბრაზდეო. 16. მე ვიცოდი, რომ მათი ვაჟიშვილი ორი წელი ჯარში მსახურობდა და გაზაფხულზე სახლში გამოუშვებდნენ. 17. ჩემმა დამ დამირეკა და მითხრა, რომ მათ შუქი გამოურთეს. 18. სააგენტოში დავრეკე, ტელეფონთან გამოვიძახე დიკ ფოული და ვთხოვე შემხვედროდა ელის და მარკეტ-სტრიტის კუთხეში. 19. მის მარპლმა გვენდას ჰკითხა, ხომ არ გაგიკეირდათ აქ რომ მნახეთ, მერე დაუმატა, ჩემმა ექიმმა ზღვის პირას მირჩია დასვენება და თანაც

თქვენ იმდენი მელაპარაკეთ ზღვის შესახებ, რომ ცდუნებამ მძლია. თანაც გავიგე, რომ ჩემი მეგობრის ყოფილ მზარეულს და მის ქმარს აქვე პანსიონატი გაუხსნიათ და მშვენივრად მოეწყვეო.

Exercise 8. Translate the following into English.

1. სახლისკენ მიმავალ გზაზე გეიზმა მკითხა, რას ფიქრობ კარტრაითებზეო. მე ვუპასუხე, რომ მომწონდა ისინი, განსაკუთრებით მათი ქალიშვილი, რომელიც მამამისის ძალიან ჰგავდა. ჩემდა გასაკვირად, გეიზმა მითხრა, რომ კარტრაითი მამამისი არ იყო. მისის კარტრაითი უკვე ქერიეი იყო, როდესაც კარტრაითს გაპყვა ცოლად. 2. გეიზმა თქვა: კარტრაითებს ოც წელზე მეტია, რომ ეიცნობ. მისის კარტრაითი გათხოვილი იყო კაცზე სახელად ბრონსონი. 3. ერთ დღეს მისის ბრონსონმა უთხრა გეიზს: მეგობარს ველოდები, რომელიც ცოტა ხანი ჩვენთან დარჩებაო. რამდენიმე დღის შემდეგ ბრონსონებმა გააცნეს გეიზს თავიანთი სტუმარი, კარტრაითი, რომელიც უკვე დიდი ხნის უმუშევარი იყო. გეიზს ეკითხე, ჰყავდათ თუ არა ბრონსონებს იმ დროს შვილები. გეიზმა მიპასუხა, რომ მათ იმ დროს შვილი ჰყავდათ. უცრად გეიზმა თქვა, ბრონსონი მოკლეს, მაგრამ, რა თქმა უნდა, ფულის გამო არ მოუკლავთო. 4. ჯიმი ვალენტაინი იმ დღეს გაათავისუფლეს. დარაჯმა უთხრა ვალენტაინს, სეიფების გატეხვისთვის თავი გაენებებინა და პატიოსან კაცად ქცეულიყო: შენ ხომ სინამდვილეში ცუდი ბიჭი არა ხარო. ჯიმმა გაკვირვებით უთხრა, თავის ცხოვრებაში სეიფი არ გაეტეხა. დარაჯმა გაიცინა და უთხრა, რომ ვალენტაინს ეფიქრა მის რჩევაზე. 5. ციხიდან ერთი კვირის განთავისუფლების შემდეგ ქალაქში რამდენიმე სეიფი გატეხეს. ბენ პრაისი, ცნობილი დეტექტივი დაინტერესდა ამ შემთხვევებით. მან იფიქრა, რომ ეს ჯიმი ვალენტაინის ნამუშევარი იყო, მან განაახლა მუშაობაო. გარდა ამისა, მხოლოდ მას გააჩნდა ხელსაწყოები, რომლებიც აღებდნენ ნებისმიერ სეიფს და კვალსაც არ ტოვებდნენ. 6. ჯიმი დასახლდა სასტუმროში. რეგისტრატორს უთხრა, რომ ის მათ ქალაქში ბიზნესის დასაწყებად ჩამოვიდა. 7. ბენ პრაისმა მოლარეს უთხრა, რომ ერთ ნაცნობ კაცს ელოდებოდა. 8. უცრად მათ ჭალების კიენი მოესმათ. ყველაზე უმცროსი გოგონა უფროსებისაგან შეუმჩნეველად ერთ-ერთ სეიფში შესულიყო და ჩაკეტილიყო. 9. მისტერ ადამსმა აკანკალებული ხმით თქვა, რომ სეიფის კარის გაღება შეუძლებელი იყო, რადგან სეიფის საათი არ იყო მომართული. ბავშვი დიდხანს ვერ გაძლებდა სეიფში, რადგან იქ საკმარისი ჰაერი არ იყო. 10. უცრად სპენსერმა უბრძანა იქ მყოფთ, კარს მოშორებოდნენ.

11. ბიჭებმა სთხოვეს გრეისს, რეისთვის წერილი მიეწერა. 12. გრეისს გაახსენდა ის დრო, როდესაც პირველად გაიცნო რეი. რეის უნდოდა ცოლად შეერთო იგი, მაგრამ გრეისს მაშინ ახალდამთავრებული ჰქონდა სკოლა და სატელეფონო კამპანიაში ახალდაწყებული ჰქონდა მუშაობა. გარდა ამისა, ის ძალზე ახალგაზრდა იყო და ჯერ არ აპირებდა ვინმეზე გათხოვებას.

Exercise 9. Translate the following into English.

1. მთვრალი კაცი კარებზე მუშტს ურტყამდა და ფილიპინოს უყვიროდა, ახლავე გამოდი იქიდანო; ერთ დროს ხომ გამოხვალ, მე აქ დაგელოდები, სანამ არ გამოხვალო. ბიჭი ეხვეწებოდა: წადი, მომშორდი, მე არაფერი ცუდი არ გამიკეთებია შენთვისო. მთვრალი კაცი აგრძელებდა ლანძღვა-გინებას. ფილიპინო ეუბნებოდა: წადი აქედან, მე დანა მაქვს და პრობლემის შექმნა არ მინდაო. მთვრალმა უთხრა: მე ამერიკელი ვარ, ორჯერ დაჭრილი ვიყავი, არსადაც არ წავალო. მას არ ეშინოდა ჭუჭყიანი, ყვითელსახიანი ფილიპინოსი, რომელსაც დანა ჰქონდა. ბიჭმა უთხრა: მოგკლავ, მე კი პრობლემები არ მინდა, წადიო. ბიჭი ეხვეწებოდა, პრობლემები არ შემიქმნაო. 2. გემზე ყველამ იცოდა, რომ ფილიპინომ მთვრალი მოკლა, მაგრამ არავინ ხმას არ იღებდა. ფილიპინო კი ყვიროდა, რომ მას არ უნდოდა მისი მოკვლა. – თქვენ ხომ იცოდით, რომ ის მთვრალი იყო და რატომ არ გააჩერეთო. – ფილიპინო აგრძელებდა, – მთვრალმა პალტო გამიხია, ჩემი დახრჩობა უნდოდა. მას რამდენჯერმე ვუთხარი, თავი დაენებებინა, მაგრამ არ მომეშვა. ეს ჩემი ბრალი არ არის. ოკლახომაში მიედივარ, ძმა მყავს ცუდად. თქვენ გგონიათ პრობლემას ვეძებ, როდესაც ავადმყოფი ძმა მყავს. მთვრალი კაცი რატომ არ გააჩერეთო.

3. როგორც კი ობრი მელკომბი დებორას წარუდგინეს, მან უთხრა: ადრე არასდროს შევხვედრივართ ერთმანეთს, მაგრამ თქვენი სახე ძალიან მეცნობა. ცოტა ხნის შემდეგ ჰკითხა: თქვენთვის არავის უთქვამს, რომ ტიციანის ვორბეკში გამოფენილი სურათის ასლი ხართო, რაზეც დებორამ უპასუხა, რომ არასოდეს სმენოდა ტიციანის ამ სურათის შესახებ. ობრი შეჰპირდა დებორას, რომ მომდევნო დღეს ამ გამოფენაზე მოსაწვევ ბილეთს გაუგზავნიდა.

4. კლიენტმა გამყიდველს უთხრა: მომეცით რაიმე ცოცხალი, რომელიც გალიაში ზის, ოღონდ ვირთხები არ შემომთავაზოთ; რაიმე ცოცხალი მინდა, რასაც ფრთები აქვს და დაფრინავსო. გამყიდველმა ორ თეთრ მტრედზე მიუთითა და უთხრა, რომ მათი ფასი ხუთი დოლარი და ორმოცდაათი ცენტი იყო. კლიენტმა უთხრა, რომ მხოლოდ ხუთი დოლარი ჰქონდა და თუ ის ამ თანხაზე

დათანხმდებოდა, ამ მტრედებს წაიყვანდა. გამყიდველმა ცოტა ხანს იფიქრა და მერე კლიენტს უთხრა, თუ ასე ძალიან უნდოდა ეს მტრედები, ფასს დაუკლებდა და შეეძლო წაეყვანა. კლიენტმა დახლზე ხუთი დოლარი დადო, მიუახლოვდა გამყიდველს და ჰკითხა, ხმაური ნერვებს ხომ არ უშლიდა. შემდეგ ისევ ჰკითხა გამყიდველს, თუ იცოდა მან, რა დრო დასჭირდა მას, რომ ეშოვა (გამოემუშაებინა) ეს ხუთი დოლარი, რაზეც თვითონვე უპასუხა, რომ მას დასჭირდა ათი წელი და დაამატა: ხუთი დოლარი რომ მომცეს გამაფრთხილეს, რომ მეორედ აღარავის დაევჭირე.

General Revision

Exercise 1. Replace *the Infinitive* by the correct form of the verb.

When he and his wife (to wake) the next morning, the box (to be gone). Payment of the notes immediately (to stop) at the Bank of England; but no news of the money (to hear of) since. So far, the circumstances of the case are perfectly clear. They (to point) unmistakably to the conclusion that the robbery (must, to commit) by some person living in the house. Suspicion (to fall) upon the servant-of-all-work, upon the shopman, and upon Mr Jay. The two first knew that the cash-box (to inquire) for by their master, but (not to know) what it (to be) he (to want) to put into it. They (to assume), of course, that it (to be) money. Mr Jay, on the other hand, (to tell) during the afternoon's conversation on the subject of joint-stock banks, that his landlord (to have) a deposit of two hundred pounds in one of them. He also (to know) that Mr Jatman (to leave) him with the intention of drawing that money out; and he (to hear) the inquiry for the cash-box, afterwards, when he (to come) downstairs. He (must, to infer) that the money (to be) in the house. That he (can, to have) any idea, however, of the place in which Mr Jatman (to intend) to keep it for the night, is impossible, seeing that he (to go) out before the box (to find), and (not to return) till his landlord (to be) in bed. Consequently, if he (to commit) the robbery, he (must, to go) into the bedroom purely on speculation.

Exercise 2. Replace *the Infinitive* by the correct form of the verb.

From Mr Matthew Sharpin

to Chief Inspector Theakstone.

London, 6 July, 18-

When I presented your letter of introduction to Sergeant Bulmer, he already (to make) some inquiries on the subject of this young man. The result, so far, (not to be) at all favourable. Mr Jay's habits are irregular; he (to frequent) public houses, and (to seem) to be familiarly acquainted with a

great many desolute characters; he (to be) in debt to most of the tradespeople whom he (to employ); he (not to pay) his rent to Mr Jatman for the last month; yesterday evening he (to come) home excited by liquor, and last week he (to see) talking to a prize-fighter. Nothing (to discover) in relation to him yet, which (to resound) to his credit in the smallest degree.

I now (to report), down to the very last details, all the particulars communicated to me by Sergeant Bulmer. I believe you (not to find) an omission anywhere; and I think you (to admit), though you (to be prejudiced) against me, that a clearer statement of facts never (to lay) before you than the statement I now (to make). My next duty is to tell you what I (to propose) to do, now that the case (to confide) to my hands.

I (to remain) your obedient servant,

Matthew Sharpin.

Exercise 3. Replace *the Infinitive* by the correct form of the verb.

From Mr Matthew Sharpin

to Chief Inspector Theakstone.

London, 6 July, 18-

This is the plan that I (to adopt) for discovering whether Mr Jay is or is not the person who (to steal) the cash-box:

I propose, today, to present myself at the house in the character of a young man who (to look) for lodgings. The back room on the second-floor (to show) to me as the room to let, and I (to establish) myself there tonight, as a person from the country who (to come) to London to look for a situation in a respectable shop or office.

By this means I (to live) next to the room occupied by Mr Jay. The partition between us (to be) mere lath and plaster. I (to make) a small hole in it through which I can see what Mr Jay (to do) in his room, and hear every word that (to say) when any friend (to happen) to call on him. Whenever he (to go) out, I (to be) after him. By employing these means of watching him, I (to believe) I (may, to look) forward to the discovery of his secret – if he (to know) anything about the lost bank-notes – as to a dead certainty.

My plan (to appear) to me to unite the invaluable merits of boldness and simplicity. Fortified by this conviction, I (to close) the present communication

I (to remain) your obedient servant,

Matthew Sharpin.

Exercise 4. Replace *the Infinitive* by the correct form of the verb.

It is clear to me that no attempt (to make) yet to change the stolen bank-notes; and I may add that

Sergeant Bulmer was of that opinion also, when he (to leave) the case in my hands. What is the natural conclusion to draw from the conversation which I just (to set) down? Evidently, that the confederates (to meet) tomorrow to take their respective shares in the stolen money. Mr Jay probably (to run) the chief risk. I, therefore, (to make) it my business to follow him – attending at the Regent's Park, tomorrow, and doing my best to hear what (to say) there. If another appointment (to make) for the day after, I, of course, (to go) to it. In the meantime, I (to want) the immediate assistance of two competent persons - supposing the rascals (to separate) after their meeting - to follow the two minor criminals. It is only fair to add, that, if the rogues all (to retire) together, I probably (to keep) my subordinates in reserve. Being naturally ambitious, I (to desire) to have the whole credit of discovering this robbery to myself.

Exercise 5. Replace *the Infinitive* by the correct form of the verb.

The Inspector is not in a position to append any explanations of importance to the last of the letters. It (to discover) that Mr Matthew Sharpin (to leave) the house in Rutherford Street five minutes after his interview outside of it with Sergeant Bulmer – his left cheek displaying a bright patch of red, which (may, to be) the result of a slap on the face from a female hand. He also (to hear), by the shopman at Rutherford Street, to use a very shocking expression in reference to Mrs Jatman; and (to see) to clench his fist vindictively, as he (to run) round the corner of the street. Nothing more (to hear) of him; and it (to conjecture) that he (to leave) London with the intention of offering his valuable services to the provincial police.

On the interesting domestic subject of Mr and Mrs Jatman still less (to know). It, however, (to ascertain) positively that the medical attendant of the family (to send) for in a great hurry, on the day when Mr Jatman (to return) form the milliner's shop. The day after, Mr Jatman (to purchase) some smelling-salts at the shop, and afterwards (to appear) at the circulating library to ask for a novel that (to amuse) an invalid lady. It (to infer) from these circumstances, that he (not to think) it desirable to carry out his threat of separating himself from his wife.

Exercise 6. Replace *the Infinitive* by the correct form of the verb.

The couple who rented 2712 (to be) there about a year. The husband (to work) in the city. In fact they (to come) originally from Lancaster or Harrisburg. He (to be) probably in his middle thirties and she (to look) to be at least his age and maybe a year or two older. He was in India during the war and while he (to be away) she (to live) with her people. Mrs Hallis (to be) under the impression Mrs Derfer (to be) married before. Something (to give) her that impression. She (not to be) sure whether Mrs Derfer (to widow) or (to divorce) Mrs Burns admitted that the logical thing (to be) that the strange man (to be) an ex-husband who (to push) aside or (to buy) off and (to be) either

curious or (to seek) revenge. And yet no matter how logical it (to be), Mrs Burns (not to believe) that theory. She (to hope) and (to pray) that there (to be) no revenge mixed up in it, it (to be) awful for the children to have something happen.

Exercise 7. Replace *the Infinitive* by the correct form of the verb.

The late afternoon sun (to loiter) pleasantly along Fifth Avenue when Sylvester, who just (to come) out of that hideous public library where he (to consult) some ghastly book, told his impossible chauffeur that he (not to need) his stupid, incompetent services any longer. Swinging his cane – which he (to find) too short – in his left hand - which he should have cut off long ago since it constantly (to offend) him - he (to begin) walking slowly down the Avenue.

When Sylvester (to walk) at night he frequently (to glance) behind and on both sides to see if anyone (to sneak) up on him. This (to become) a constant mannerism. For this reason he (to be) unable to pretend that he (not to see) Betty Tearle sitting in her machine in front of Tiffany's.

Back in his early twenties he (to be) in love with Betty Tearle. But he (to depress) her. He misanthropically (to dissect) every meal, motor trip and musical comedy that they (to attend) together, and on the few occasions when she (to try) to be especially nice to him – from a mother's point of view he (to be) rather desirable – he (to suspect) hidden motives and (to fall) into a deeper gloom than ever. Then one day she (to tell) him that she (to go) mad if he ever again (to park) his pessimism in her sun-parlour.

Exercise 8. Replace *the Infinitive* by the correct form of the verb.

When she next recovered full consciousness she (to be) in bed. She (to imagine) a maid (to undress) her, for on turning up the reading lamp she (to see) that her clothes (to put) away neatly. For a minute she (to lie) there, listening idly while the hall clock (to strike) two, and then her overwrought nerves (to jump) in terror as she (to hear) again that child's cry from the room next door.

In a quick panic she (to creep) into a neglige and (to slip) down the corridor towards Knowleton's room. It was very dark in the other wing, but when she (to push) open his door she (can, to see) by the faint light that his bed (to be) empty and (not to sleep) in. Her terror (to increase). What (can, to take) him out at this hour of the night? She (to start) for Mrs Whitney's room, but at the thought of the dogs and her bare ankles she (to give) a little discouraged cry and (to pass) by the door.

Exercise 9. Replace *the Infinitive* by the correct form of the verb.

I.

The day dragged toward a not-too-promising night. Amanthis (not to appear) and Jim (to wonder) forlornly if she (not to change) her mind about dining with him that night. Perhaps it (to be) better if she were not seen with them. But then, he (to reflect) dismally, no one (to see) them anyhow - everybody (to go) to the big dance at the Harlans' house.

II.

I'm going to tell you a little story. It's about a girl who (to go) to a war once and (to meet) a man who she (to think) (to be) the finest and bravest man she ever (to know). She (to fall) in love with him and he with her and all the other men she ever (to know) (to become) like pale shadows compared with this man she (to love). But one day he (to shoot) down out of the air, and when he (to wake up) into the world he (to change). He (not to know) it himself but he (to forget) things and (to become) a different man. So she (to go away) and every night for a while she (to cry) herself to sleep but he never (to come) back to her and five years (to go) by. Finally word (to come) to her that this same injury that (to come) between them (to ruin) his life. He (not to remember) anything important any more - how proud and fine he once (to be), and what dreams he (to have) once. She was the only one who (to know) all the things he (to forget). So she (to take) a revolver and she (to come) after this man to the apartment. She (to be going) to either bring him to himself - or go back to the dust with him where nothing (to matter) any more.

"Charlie!" she (to cry) in a thin clear voice. "You (to remember) Fontenay in the late fall?"

A bewildered look (to pass) over his face.

"You (to have) on your blue uniform, Charlie, and you (to go) to the front in an hour. Try and remember, Charlie!"

"You (to remember) the poplar trees?" (to go on) Diana. "The sun (to go) down and the leaves (to be) silver and there (to be) a bell ringing." The tears (to stream) from her eyes. With a choking sob his whole body (to seem) to wilt under him and he (to pitch) back senseless into his chair.

"He (to faint)!" Diana cried.

"You devil!" (to scream) Elaine, her face distorted. "Look, what (to happen)! What right you (to have) to do this?"

"What right?" Diana (to turn) to her with black, shining eyes. "Every right in the world. I (to be) married to Charlie Abbot for five years."

Charlie and Diana (to be) married again in Greenwich early in June. After the wedding her oldest friends (to stop) calling her Diamond Dick - it (to be) a most inappropriate name for some years, they (to say), and it (to think) that the effect on her children might be unsettling.

Exercise 10. Replace *the Infinitive* by the correct form of the verb.

George went contentedly home to receive his wife's expostulations about a new crocodile dressing-case which (to deliver) during the afternoon. It (not to be) quite the same to look at, because the original one (to make) to order. But it (to buy) at the same shop and the manager (to oblige) George by charging the same price for it.

In the meantime, the police (to rely) on the newspaper paragraph to produce the owner of the crocodile case. When he (to fail) to materialize on the following morning they (to look) at the name of the manufacturer and (to take) the case round to him.

The manufacturer (to inform) them that he (to make) that case the previous Spring to the order of a Miss Callermere - that the lady since (to marry) and that, only the previous day, her husband (to order) an exactly similar one but (to accept) a substitute from stock.

Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into English

1

1. საღამო იყო. პეტრემ ის იყო ტელევიზორთან ჩათვლიმა, რომ კარზე ზარის ხმა გაისმა. 2. ქალი, რომელსაც ელზა ელოდა, ყველაზე ბოლოს გამოვიდა.
3. ათი წლის წინ ბინას რემონტი გაეუკეთეთ. მას შემდეგ ჩვენი რემონტი მოძველდა, კედლებს და იატაკს ფერი შეეცვალა, კარები გახუნდა. 4. კარი არ გააღო, ბავშვს სძინავს. ყოველთვის იღვიძებს, როდესაც ვინმე კარს აღებს.
5. მითხრეს, სტატია უკვე თარგმნეს და დაბეჭდესო. 6. ნიკო ძალიან ბევრს ლაპარაკობს ლექციაზე. ლექტორმა უთხრა, თუ კიდევ ილაპარაკებ, შემდეგ ლექციაზე არ დაგიშვებო. 7. სექტემბერში შესრულდება სამი წელი, რაც ჩემი ვაჟიშვილი ინგლისურს სწავლობს. მომავალ წელს ინგლისში აპირებს გამგზავრებას. იქ უნივერსიტეტში ისწავლის. 8. მამამ გეთხოვა, კედელს ხელი არ ახლოთ, რადგან ეს-ეს არის შეღებეო. 9. თუ ცოტას იჩქარებ, მატარებელს მიუსწრებ. 10. როგორც კი მურთაზი წაეიდა, თათიამ თეას დაურეკა, რომელსაც ჯერ ისევ ეძინა და იმ ღამის მკვლელობის შესახებ არაფერი იცოდა. 11. რა ნელა კითხულობ! იმ დროისათვის, როდესაც შენ ერთ წიგნს დაამთავრებ, მე უკვე სამ წიგნს წავიკითხავ. არაფერი არ ამდიდრებს ადამიანის ლექსიკას ისე, როგორც წიგნების კითხვა. 12. ორი წლის წინ ერთმანეთს დაშორდნენ და მას აქეთ ერთმანეთი არ უნახავთ. ამბობენ, რომ ნელიმ წერილი მიიღო ნიკოსგან გუშინ და ახლა მოუთმენლად ელის მის ჩამოსელას. 13. როდესაც მას სამოცი წელი შეუსრულდება, ის უკვე ორმოცი წელი იმუშავებს ჩვენს ქარხანაში.
14. გლორიამ ერთ-ერთ მაგიდასთან დამსვა და მითხრა, დამელოდე, ახლავე გიშველიო. 15. ყურმილი ისე სწრაფად აიღო, მომეჩვენა, რომ ელოდა ჩემს ზარს.

16. ფანჯარასთან მიეედი და გადაეიხედე. მისი მანქანა მართლაც იქ იდგა.
17. ნატომ სახე პირსახოცით შეიმშრალა და თავის ოთახს მიაშურა.
18. მომავალი წლისათვის ის გამოუშვებს ლექსების კრებულს. 19. მან მითხრა, რომ მისი გამოთქმა საგრძნობლად გამოკეთდა. 20. დიდი ხანია, რაც ისინი კამათობენ. დროა გაეაჩეროთ, თორემ იჩხუბებენ. 21. რამდენი ლექცია გაქვთ ინგლისურში ყოველ კვირას? 22. ვისი საკურსო ნაშრომი იხილება ახლა?
23. ეკას არ ახსოვდა რამდენი ხანი ეძინა, მაგრამ რომ გამოფხიზლდა, აშკარად უკეთესად გრძნობდა თავს. 24. ნელი ახლა სამზარეულოშია, დედას ეხმარება სადილის მომზადებაში. დედა ცომს ზელაეს, ნელი კი ხახვს ჭრის. მამა ტელევიზორს უყურებს და ქალებს ეძახის, იჩქარეთ, მშიაო. 25. მან მკითხა, რა შემიძლია თქვენთვის გავაკეთოო, მაინტერესებს, რა ზომები მიიღეს მათ.

2

1. მომავალ წელს გახდება ათი წელი, რაც თბილისში ვცხოვრობთ. 2. იმ წუთას საერთოდ არ აინტერესებდა, რა მოხდებოდა ხვალ. მთავარია, რომ დღეს იყო ბედნიერი. 3. თუ ის არ მოვა კრებაზე, მის საკითხს არ შეეხებიან. 4. სანამ ვიცოცხლებ, არ დაგივიწყებ. 5. როდესაც ლექტორი დარბაზში შევიდა, ორკესტრი უკვე უკრავდა. იქვე, გრძელ სკამზე ერთმანეთისაგან მოშორებით ჯენისი და პიერი ისხდნენ და, როგორც ჩანს, მას ელოდებოდნენ. 6. ივნისში შესრულდება ერთი წელი, რაც მისგან წერილს მოველი. 7. რამდენი პარკი და შადრევანი გაიხსნა თბილისში ბოლო ხანს? – ძალიან ბევრი და ერთი ახალი სტადიონიც იხსნება ამ საღამოს ვარკეთილში. ყველას ეპატიჟებიან მის გახსნაზე. 8. დედათქვენი დაბრუნდა სამსახურიდან? – არა ჯერ, ნახევარ საათში მოვა. – როგორც კი მოვა, უთხარით, რომ დამირეკოს. 9. როგორც კი წავიკითხავ წიგნებს, დაგიბრუნებთ. 10. ახლა არ წვიმს. მზე ანათებს. მსუბუქი ნიავი ქრის. სასიამოვნოა ასეთ ამინდში სეირნობა. ბაღშეები ეზოში დარბიან, დამალობანას თამაშობენ. მოხუცები სკამებზე სხედან და ბავშვებს უყურებენ. 11. რა დროსაც არ უნდა დაურეკო მას, მისი ტელეფონი სულ დაკავებულია, მუდამ თავის შეყვარებულს ელაპარაკება. 12. იმ დროისათვის, როდესაც იქ მივალ, ყველა წიგნი უკვე გაყიდული იქნება. 13. ნორა იმაზე უკეთესი აღმოჩნდა, ვიდრე ეფიქრობდით. 14. ყოველ დილით ჩემი და შვიდ საათზე დგება, დილის ვარჯიშს აკეთებს, გაკვეთილებს იმეორებს და რვა საათზე სახლიდან გადის. მე კი რვა საათზე ვდგები, რადგან ძილი ძალიან მიყვარს და ამიტომაც ყოველთვის ვაგვიანებ სკოლაში. 15. რამდენი ხანია, რაც ამ კაბას კერავ? – უკვე ერთი კვირაა. ვფიქრობ მოვასწრებ, ჩემი დის ქორწილისათვის. ძალიან მინდა იმ

დღეს ახალი კაბა ჩავიცვა. 16. ამ სიტყვების დამთავრება ძლიეს მოვასწარი, რომ კარებში მინდია გამოჩნდა. 17. რამდენიმე წუთის შემდეგ კარი ისევ გაიღო და ოთახში ლევანმა შემოაბიჯა, რომელსაც უკან ემზარი მოჰყებოდა. 18. ზურას ჯერ კიდევ ეძინა, როცა ტელეფონმა დარეკა. 19. ამ ზაფხულს შესრულდება ორი წელი, რაც ეს მანქანა დამყავს. 20. მის შესახებ ძალიან ბევრი მსმენია და დიდი ხანია მისი გაცნობა მსურს. 21. ხშირად პატიჟობ მეგობრებს სახლში? – თითქმის ყოველ კვირას. დღესაც მოელენ, საღამოს ხუთ საათზე ჩემი ცოლი სუფრას შლის. 22. გამოაცხადეს, რომ ხვალ 9 საათზე ყველა სტუდენტი შეგროვდეს ინსტიტუტის წინ. 23. ჩემი მშობლები უკვე სამი საათის განმავლობაში მგზავრობდნენ ბათუმის მატარებლით, როდესაც მათ დაეურეკე.

3

1. მანქანას ორი საათი ვრეცხავდი, როდესაც წვიმა დაიწყო. ძალიან შეეწუხდი, რადგან ორი საათი ტყუილად ვიშრომე. 2. როგორც კი ბავშვი გაიღვიძებს, რძეს დავალეინებ. 3. როდესაც უკვე ყველა იმედი გადაგეწურება, მოულოდნელად დეპეშას მიიღებ, ძალიან საინტერესო ამბავს შეიტყობ შენს ახლობლებზე.

4. როდესაც ბინაში შევედი, ტელეფონი რეკავდა. ყურმილი რომ აეიღე, მომესმა ნინოს ხმა, რომელმაც თქვა, რომ ეს-ეს არის დაბრუნდა ქობულეთიდან და ჩემთან მოსელა უნდოდა, რომ მე მენახა, თუ როგორ გაირუჯა ზაფხულში ზღვაზე. 5. როდესაც ხელფასს ავიღებ, შენს ვალს გადავიხდი, მაგრამ არ ვიცი, როდის ავიღებ ხელფასს. 6. თუ ისინი ერთმანეთს დაშორდებიან, ეს ჩემთვის დიდი დარტყმა იქნება. 7. არ ვიცი, რას იზამს ნიკო, როდესაც გაიგებს, რომ მისი შეყვარებული სხვას მიჰყვება. 8. ძალიან ბევრ ყავას ვსვამ, რადგან მაფხიზლებს და მერე კარგად ვმუშაობ დისერტაციაზე. ჩემი ქმარი კი ყავას ვერ იტანს. მას ჩაი ურჩევნია. 9. ნახევარი წელი ხვდებოდნენ ერთმანეთს, როდესაც გადაწყვიტეს, რომ დაქორწინებულიყვნენ. 10. თბილისში ბოლო დროს ძალიან შეიცვალა ამინდი. 11. რა უცნაურად გამოიყურები ულვაშების გარეშე, რატომ გაიპარსე? 12. ჩემი შეილი ავად არის ორშაბათიდან. მან უკვე რამდენიმე ლექცია გააცდინა ამ კვირას. 13. ჩემი ქმარი ახლა ეზოშია, მანქანას რეცხავს. 14. მამა შეაგროვებს ფულს და იმ დროისათვის, როცა მე სკოლას დავამთავრებ, მანქანას მიყიდის. 15. ნიკო საღამოს 7 საათზე დამირეკავს. ამ დროისთვის ყველა ჩემს საქმეებს მოვაგვარებ და მერე ერთად წავალთ დისკოკლუბში.

16. რამდენი ხანი ელოდებოდით ანას გუშინ, როდესაც ავტობუსის გაჩერებაზე გამოჩნდა? 17. ნიკო ბაყშვობიდან ფეხბურთს მისდევს და ოცნებობს პროფესიული მოთამაშე გახდეს. 18. ამ იელისს ნახევარი წელი შესრულდება,

რაც ჩემი შვილი კემბრიჯში სწავლობს. 19. გაიხედე ფანჯარაში, წვიმს? ქოლგა წაიღო? – რა თქმა უნდა წვიმს, მოგებეზრდა ეს წვიმა – ყოველ დღე წვიმს. 20. მამამისი უკვე ორი წელია, რაც უმუშევარია. 21. დედას ჰკითხე, ჩემი ჩანთა სად დადო. 22. ჩემმა ძმამ თქვა, რომ არ მეთანხმება და მას საკუთარი აზრი გააჩნია ამ საკითხთან დაკავშირებით. 23. არ ვიცოდი ისინი რას მოიმოქმედებდნენ, თუ სიმართლეს გაიგებდნენ. 24. მას აინტერესებდა, რამდენი გადავიხადე იმ კაბისათვის, რომელიც იმ საღამოს მეცვა. 25. ექიმმა ავადმყოფს ჰკითხა, თავს როგორ გრძნობო. 26. ანი სოფელში ცხოვრებას ვერ ეგუებოდა, რადგან მთელი თავისი ცხოვრება დიდ ქალაქში გაატარა. 27. როდესაც ინსტიტუტში მივედი, დეკანი უკვე რექტორთან შესულიყო და მდივანმა მითხრა, განცხადება მე დამიტოვეთო. 28. გია გაშტერებული შეჰყურებდა, მისი ნათქვამიდან ვერაფერი გაიგო, გარდა იმისა, რომ სიკვდილით ემუქრებოდნენ.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Alexander L.G. Longman. English Grammar. Longman, 19th impr., 2002.
2. Alexander L.G. Longman. English Grammar for international students. 15th impr., 2003.
3. Azar B.S. Understanding and Using English Grammar. 3rd Ed. Prentice Hall Regents, 2000.
4. Berezina O.A., Shpilyuk Y.M. English for University Students. Grammar Exercises. S-P., 2000.
5. Blokh M.Y. A Course in Theoretical English Grammar. M., 1983.
6. Bryant M.M. The Passive Construction. In: The English Journal, 1960, №1. Brooklyn Coll.
7. Carling M. Grammar Time 6. Pearson Ed. Lim. 4th impr., 2007.
8. Evans V. Round-Up. English Grammar Book. 3rd impr. Pearson Ed. Lim., 2005.
9. Fillmore Ch. J. Toward a Modern Theory of Case. In: Readings in the Theory of Grammar. Diane D. Bornstein. Cambr., 1976.
10. Folley M. and Hall D. Longman Advanced Learners' Grammar., 4th impr., Pearson Ed. Lim., 2005.
11. Ganshina M.A, Vasilevskaya N.M. English Grammar. M., 1964.
12. Gordon E.M., Krylova I.P. Tense and Voice in Modern English. M., 1971.
13. Hagen S.A. Test Bank for Fundamentals of English Grammar. 3rd Ed. Longman, Pearson Ed., 2003.
14. Harrison M. Use of English. Oxf. Univ. Press, 2008.
15. Ilyish B.A. The Structure of Modern English. Moscow-Leningrad, 1965.
16. Korsakov A. The Use of Tenses in English. Lvov Univ. Press, 1969.

17. Krutikov Y.A., Kuzmina I.S., Rabinovich Kh.V. Exercises in Modern English Grammar. M., 1971.
18. Langendren T. Essentials of English Grammar. N.Y., 1970.
19. Lieu M.W. Test Bank for Understanding and Using English Grammar. 3rd Ed, Pearson Ed. Lim., 2001.
20. Prodromova L. Grammar and Vocabulary for First Certificate. 11rd impr., Pearson Ed. Lim., 2006.
21. Thomson A.J., Martinet A.V. A Practical English Grammar. Oxf. Univer. Pr., 1986.
22. Verkhovskaya I.P., Rastorguyeva T.A, Barmina L.A. The English Verb. M., 1987.
23. Vince M. with Sunderland P. English Grammar and Vocabulary. Macmillan, 2003.
24. Walker E., Elsworth S. Grammar Practice for International Students. Longman. Pearson Ed. Lim., 2000.
25. Yule G. Advanced Oxford Practice Grammar. Oxf. Univ. Press, 2006.
26. გოქსაძე ლ., მამაცაშვილი ნ., გიგინეიშვილი მ. თანამედროვე ინგლისური ენის გრამატიკის უმაღლესი კურსი. წ. I, თბ., 1983.
27. გოქსაძე ლ., მამაცაშვილი ნ., ბოლქვაძე ს. თანამედროვე ინგლისური ენის გრამატიკის უმაღლესი კურსი. წ. II, თბ., 1989.
28. იანქოშვილი მ., კირილოვა ე., კეშელავა მ. ინგლისური ენის სახელმძღვანელო. თბ., 1979.
29. Бархударов Л.С., Штелинг Д.А. Грамматика английского языка. М., 1973.
30. Качалова К.Н., Израилевич Е.Е. Практическая грамматика английского языка. М., 2001.
31. Каушанская В.Л., Ковнер Р.Л., Кожевникова О.Н. и др. Грамматика английского языка. Лен., 1963.
32. Киланава Э.В. К вопросу о делимитации пассива в современном английском языке. В сб. "Структура словаря и вопросы словообразования романских и германских языков", Ставр., 1978.
33. Киланава Э.В. Пассивные конструкции в современном английском языке. Тб., 2005.
34. Кобрина Н.А., Корнеева Е.А., Оссовская М.И., Гузеева К.А. Грамматика английского языка. Морфология. Синтаксис. С.-П., 2006.
35. Корнеева Е.А. Грамматика английского глагола в теории и практике. С.-П., 2000.
36. Смирницкий А.И. Морфология английского языка. Москва, 1959.

SOURCES

1. E. Albee. The Zoo Story. Plays of the Modern Theatre. Len., 1970.

2. American Short Stories of Today. Ed. by E. Jones, Peng. B., 1988.
3. Sh. Anderson. Selected Short Stories. Progress Publ., M., 1981.
4. J. Austen. Emma. Peng. B., 1986.
5. S. Bellow. Henderson the Rain King. N.Y., 1963.
6. S. Bellow. The Adventure of Augie March. Peng. B., 1983.
7. A. Bennett. The Card. Peng. B., 1978.
8. The Best British Mysteries. Ed. by M. Yakubowski. Allison and Busby, 2004.
9. Ch. Bronte. Jane Eyre. Peng. B., 1995.
10. T. Caldwell. Tender Victory. N.Y., 1976.
11. R. Chandler. The Long Good-Bye. Peng. B., Lnd, 1973.
12. G.K. Chesterton. Selected Stories. Progr. Publ., M., 1971.
13. A. Christie. The Moving Finger. A Dell Book, N.Y., 1970.
14. A. Christie. The Murder of Roger Ackroyd. Fontana/Collins, 1978.
15. A. Christie. Masterpieces. Stories. N.Y. 2005.
16. A. Cronin. The Green Years. Peng. B., 2002.
17. Ch. Dickens. Oliver Twist. Peng. B., 1994.
18. F.S. Fitzgerald. The Price Was High. Vol. I. Ed. by M.Y. Bruccoli. Pan Books, 1981.
19. F.S. Fitzgerald. The Beautiful and Damned. Peng. B., 1983.
20. K. Follett. Eye of the Needle. A Futura Book. Lnd, 1979.
21. D. Francis. In the Frame. Pan Books, 1981.
22. J. Galsworthy. The Man of Property. M., 1975.
23. M. Gilbert. Smallbone Deceased. Lnd., 1961.
24. G. Greene. The Power and the Glory. N.Y., 1983.
25. J. Heller. Catch-22. N.Y., A Dell Book, 1985.
26. L. Hellman. The Autumn Garden. Three American Plays, M., 1972.
27. O. Henry. Selected Stories. Wordsworth Classics, 1995.
28. J. Joyce. Dubliners. A Portrait of the Artist as a Young Man. Progr. Publ., M., 1982.
29. D.H. Lawrence. The Mortal Coil and Other Stories. Peng. B., 1977.
30. D.H. Lawrence. The White Peacock. Sons and Lovers. Peng. B., 1982, 1986.
31. D. Lessing. Play with a Tiger. Plays of the Sixties. Vol. 1, Pan Books, Lnd, 1966.
32. The Mammoth Book of Great Detective Stories. N.Y., 2001.
33. O. Manning. The Rain Forest. Lnd, 1997.
34. W.S. Maugham. The Razor's Edge. Phil., 1958.
35. W.S. Maugham. Collected Short Stories in Four Volumes. Lnd, 1977.
36. W.S. Maugham. Mrs. Craddock. Pan Books, 1979.

37. W.S. Maugham. The Painted Veil. Progr. Publ., M., 1978.
38. W.S. Maugham. Of Human Bondage. Pan Books, 1983.
39. Ed. McBain. Give the Boys a Great Big Hand. Peng. B., 1987.
40. I. Murdoch. The Black Prince. N.Y., 1974.
41. I. Murdoch. The Sacred and Profane Love Machine. Peng. B., 1986.
42. J. O'Hara. Assembly. Bantam Books, 1963.
43. E. O'Neill. Long Day's Journey into Night. Three American Plays. M., 1972.
44. The Penguin Book of Contemporary Women's Short Stories. Peng. B., 1995.
45. R. Pilcher. Flowers in the Rain and Other Stories. SMP, 1992.
46. J.B. Priestley. Angel Pavement. Progr. Publ., M., 1974.
47. The Second Penguin Book of English Short Stories. Ed. by Chr. Dolley. Peng. B, 1977.
48. Y. Susann. Valley of the Dolls. Pan Books, 1977.
49. Ten Modern Short Stories. Ed. by D.A. Sohn. A Bantam Pathfinder. Ed., 1976.
50. Twenty Grand Great American Short Stories. Bantam Books. N.Y., 1968.
51. L. Waller. The Banker. Panther. Granada Publ., 1984.
52. T. Williams. Baby Doll and other Plays. Peng. Books, 1968.

CONTENTS

წინასიტყვაობა 3

The Use of Tense-Aspect Forms 4

The Present Indefinite Tense *5*

The Past Indefinite Tense *26*

The Future Indefinite Tense *44*

The Present Continuous Tense *55*

The Past Continuous Tense *70*

The Future Continuous Tense *89*

The Present Perfect Tense *95*

The Past Perfect Tense *114*

The Future Perfect Tense *138*

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense *145*

The Past Perfect Continuous Tense *162*

The Future Perfect Continuous Tense *178*

Test Your Knowledge *182*

The Passive Voice **190**

Test Your Knowledge *250*

The Sequence of Tenses **266**

Indirect Speech **279**

Test Your Knowledge *299*

General Revision *307*

BIBLIOGRAPHY **315**

SOURCES **316**

კორექტორი და დამკაბადონებელი: თემურ გოგობია

გამომცემლობა „უნივერსალი“

თბილისი, 0179, ი. ჭავჭავაძის გამზ. 19. ☎: 22 36 09, 8(99) 17 22 30
E-mail: universal@internet.ge